
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



<
rary
er

THE LIBRARY



316.81

G798

1953-56



COLONIAL REPORTS

Echuanaland
Protectorate
1953

ANNUAL REPORT
OF THE
BECHUANALAND
PROTECTORATE
FOR THE YEAR
1953

MAFEKING
CONTROLLER OF STORES
BECHUANALAND
1954

CONTENTS

PART I

General review of the year	3
--------------------------------------	---

PART II

CHAPTER I	Population	7
CHAPTER II	Occupations, Wages and Labour Organization	7
CHAPTER III	Public Finance and Taxation	10
CHAPTER IV	Currency and Banking	20
CHAPTER V	Commerce	20
CHAPTER VI	Production	23
CHAPTER VII	Social Services	32
	1. Education	32
	2. Public Health	36
	3. Housing and Town Planning	39
	4. Social Welfare	40
CHAPTER VIII	Legislation	41
CHAPTER IX	Justice, Police and Prisons	42
CHAPTER X	Public Utilities and Public Works	48
CHAPTER XI	Communications	51
CHAPTER XII	Press, Broadcasting, Films and Government Information Services.	54
CHAPTER XIII	Local Forces	54

PART III

CHAPTER I	Geography and Climate	55
CHAPTER II	History	57
CHAPTER III	Administration	61
CHAPTER IV	Weights and Measures	63
CHAPTER V	Reading List.	63

APPENDICES

I	Colonial Development and Welfare Grants - Financial Statement	65
II	Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Schemes - Notes on Progress	66
III	Imports and Exports	75
IV	Livestock Population	80
V	Crime statistics.	81
VI	Nosological Return	82

MAP OF THE BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE at end

PART I
GENERAL REVIEW
OF THE MOST IMPORTANT EVENTS
AND DEVELOPMENTS
DURING THE YEAR

ON THE 2nd June, the Coronation was celebrated with enthusiasm at every main centre in the Protectorate. The celebration began in most cases with a religious service followed by an address by the District Commissioner and later there were adults' and children's sports, dancing, feasting and fireworks. At Lobatsi, the celebration was attended by the Resident Commissioner and most of the headquarters staff as well as by a large number of local residents, European and African.

The African people in the Protectorate were represented in London at the Coronation by the Chief of the senior tribe, the Bakwena, Chief Kgari Sechele II, O. B. E. who was accompanied by Mr. Michael Seboni, one of the senior members of that tribe. They were much impressed and delighted with their visit and on their return to their home in Molepolole, they gave an account of their experiences to the tribesman at a kgotla meeting. Apart from the coronation ceremony and procession, their outstanding memories were the kindness and friendliness of everyone they met, including the "man in the street", the naval review and the excellence of the crops and cattle.

At the beginning of the year the office of Resident Commissioner was vacant owing to the appointment of Mr. Beetham as Governor of the Windward Islands. The Deputy Resident Commissioner and Government Secretary, Mr. W. F. Mackenzie C. B. E., was appointed to the vacant post and assumed office on the 28th April.

In June, Lord Reith, the Chairman of the Colonial Development Corporation visited the Territory and shortly afterwards it was announced that the abattoir at Lobatsi was expected to open early in August. Unfortunately, serious structural defects were found in the buildings and considerable reconstruction was necessary. This had not been completed by the end of the year and the estimated opening date was postponed until August/September 1954. At the Corporation's Molopo holding ground, the number of cattle increased from 16,500 at the end of 1952 to 18,300. The

Corporation reduced the size of its northern ranches but the number of cattle there increased from 10,000 to about 17,500.

The Territory received a visit during the year from Sir Eric Pridie, K. C. M. G., D. S. O., O. B. E., Chief Medical Officer to the Colonial Office, who made an extensive tour of the Protectorate. He found that taking into consideration the funds available and the size of the Territory, the medical services were very satisfactory and compared favourably with those in many other Colonial dependencies.

In July, the Resident Commissioner opened the new Government European School at Ghanzi, which had been completed and equipped at a cost of £16,000 of which the local community had contributed £2,000. The European residents of the Ghanzi area are almost entirely Afrikaans speaking but, at their request, the medium of instruction is English except in the lowest classes where the teaching is given in the child's home language.

In April an event of considerable local importance took place at Kanye, the headquarters of the Bangwaketse Reserve, when the Chief Bathoen II, O. B. E., celebrated the silver jubilee of his accession to the Chieftainship. The Resident Commissioner and other officers were present and there was a three hour programme of speeches and songs.

Following suggestions made in 1952 by the Secretary of State for the Colonies that representatives from the High Commission Territories should visit other dependencies, a party of three Chiefs and three Chiefs' representatives from the Protectorate, accompanied by an Administrative Officer, paid a visit to Tanganyika and Uganda in October and November. Their object was to study, so far as was possible in the time available, the evolution and progress of local Government in those countries during the past thirty years. On return to the Territory the party submitted a report on their tour with suggestions as to how the lessons learned in East Africa must be applied in the Protectorate. The report is being considered by Government.

Eighteen Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Schemes were in operation during the year. A statement showing the year's working of each scheme will be found in Appendix I. Notes on the progress of the schemes are in Appendix II. The total amount of grants which have been approved for the Territory is £1,193,111 of which £664,060 had been spent at the close of the financial year on the 31st March, 1953. The 1945 Colonial Development and Welfare Act provided funds until March, 1956, but during the year the Territory was invited to state its probable needs from Colonial Development and Welfare sources for the five year period from the 1st April, 1955, to the 31st March 1960. To assist in this task, two committees were formed, one for the Northern Protectorate and one for the Southern, under the chairmanship, in each case, of the Divisional Commissioner. Europeans and Africans served on the committees, which toured their areas and had consultations with the local people. Their reports will be of value in formulating the development plans.

At the beginning of the year it was evident that the attitude of the

Bamangwato tribe towards Government was improving. Relations between the two opposing factions of the tribe also eased but a petition for the return of Seretse which was sponsored by a member of Parliament caused much speculation and revived rumours of Seretse's return. Contrary to popular expectation, the news of the birth of Seretse's son caused little interest.

In May a full kgotla meeting was held and it was hoped that the people would nominate a Chief but it soon became clear that the vast majority were unwilling to do so and the meeting was indecisive.

In the same month the period of direct rule in the Reserve ended with the appointment of Rasebolai Kgamane, a second cousin of Seretse's, as Native Authority. This appointment does not make him Chief of the Bamangwato but it empowers him to administer the tribe and to relieve the District Commissioner of the difficult dual role of Native Authority and District Commissioner. The announcement of Rasebolai's appointment was made by the Resident Commissioner in Serowe on the 13th May and was announced simultaneously in all outside kgotlas and tribal centres throughout the Protectorate. There were no demonstrations but the news was not well received and it was apparent that Rasebolai's task would be a difficult one. In general, his authority which is backed by Government has been accepted reluctantly. He has since made new appointments to the vacant posts of Tribal Representatives in all District centres and in Serowe. Recently the kgotla at Serowe has resumed its position as the centre of tribal activities and more and more people are bringing their cases for trial by the Native Authority.

In general, excellent climatic conditions were experienced during the year and the rainfall was well above the average as the following table shows :

<i>Place</i>	<i>Mean rainfall (millimetres)</i>	<i>Rainfall 1953</i>
Lobatsi	556	538
Mochudi	477	560
Serowe	430	780
Maun	437	510
Ghanzi	454	521
Kasane (Chobe)	676	823

These favourable conditions are reflected in the marked reduction in grain imports, particularly maize, and the increased quantities of butter, sorghum, beans and pulses exported. Figures will be found in Appendix III. The good harvests emphasise the need for better grain storage facilities and the question of the establishment of a central granary is being pursued. Grazing was abundant and seasonal water supplies, replenished by the rains, lasted until the higher spring temperatures but the heavy rainfall was not an unmixed blessing in riverside areas as it resulted in overgrazing of riparian land. In the Botletle River area, in particular, the

floods were exceptionally heavy and the large numbers of cattle attracted to that region caused the land along the river to become almost entirely denuded of grass and incipient dune formations were seen. By November, the stock in that area were in poor condition and deaths from poverty were much above the average for the rest of the Protectorate.

The revenue during the financial year 1952-53 was £951,796 and expenditure £948,009 (both inclusive of Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Schemes), an excess of £3,787. The surplus balance on the 31st March 1953, was £415,437 which includes appreciation on investments amounting to £644.

PART II

CHAPTER I

POPULATION

The last census was taken in 1946. The figures were Europeans 2,379, Africans 292,755, Coloured persons and Asiatics 1,176 giving an average density of 1·07 per square mile. There has been little change in the population since the census.

Vital statistics are maintained for Europeans only. There were 65 births and 14 deaths during the year which gives birth and death rates of 28·2 and 6·1 per thousand respectively.

The great majority of the people live in the eastern and north-western parts of the Territory ; about one half of the population lives in villages of 1,000 or more inhabitants though many of these spend a large part of their time at outlying cattle posts.

CHAPTER II

OCCUPATIONS

WAGES AND LABOUR ORGANIZATIONS

Over ninety-five per cent of the population is engaged in stock raising. A few Africans are employed as herds and drovers by European farmers, but the great majority are themselves the owners of the livestock, which are cared for on a family or tribal basis. Native law and custom make it the duty of every male member of the tribe to do his part in the tending of the family livestock, and, in consequence, there is little paid employment in the Protectorate. The principal occupations of the small number of wage earners are :

	<i>Approximate number</i>	<i>Average wages per mensem</i>
Government Service	1,500	£5 to £56
Agriculture	3,000	£3
Building	300	£6
Trade and Industry	1,800	£6
Domestic Service	2,000	£2 15s. 0d.

Agricultural and domestic workers receive free rations and domestic servants are usually supplied with quarters. The majority of Government African employees are unskilled or semi skilled but there are also some clerks, policemen, teachers, nurses, dispensers, artisans, etc.

The normal working week is 45 hours but there is some variation, chiefly among agricultural workers, and the hours for domestic servants are usually somewhat longer.

EMPLOYMENT AND WAGES

Government salaries for Europeans vary from £275 to £1,900 a year. There is a cost of living allowance which averages sixteen to nineteen per cent of salaries for married men and half those rates for single men. A few Europeans are employed as farm managers and stores assistants.

There is no immigrant labour and little or no unemployment. About 23,000 persons (nearly all men) left the Territory during the year for work in neighbouring territories. Of these 17,000 went on contract to the Union mines and the remainder went independently to various other forms of employment. Recruitment of labour for the mines is strictly controlled under Cap. 64 of the Laws and is mainly in the hands of two well established firms, the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association and the Native Recruiting Corporation, with headquarters in Johannesburg. The usual period of a contract is nine months, after which most recruits return home. Many return to the mines for second or third periods. Cost of living.

Price indices are not kept. The average prices of the principal commodities, compared with 1939 are as follows :

Commodity	1939			1953		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Sugar per lb.			4½			7½
Tea per lb.	2	11		7	6	
Coffee per lb.	1	7		5	6	
Salt per lb.			1			2
Tobacco per lb.	2	6		5	9	
Rice per lb.			4½	1	8	
Maize meal per 180 lb.	1	0	7	2	14	0
Maize per 200 lb.	17	7		2	16	0
Sorghum per 200 lb.	14	9		2	1	0
Paraffin per 8 gallons	1	3	9	1	12	6
Soap per bar.			3½	1	8	
Beef per lb.			3	1	1	
Mutton per lb.				1	8	
Butter per lb.	1	7		3	5	
Eggs per dozen			10½	2	0	
Wheat flour per 200 lb.	1	8	0	4	18	0
Brandy per bottle		6	6	13	0	

LABOUR DEPARTMENT

There is no labour Department. The care of labour and the administration of the laws relating to labour are in the hands of the District Commissioners.

INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS

There are no employers' organizations. Indeed, the only industries which can be described as such are the Chobe Concessions' sawmill at Serondella, a gold mine and a kyanite mine in the Francistown district and an asbestos mine at Moshaneng, a creamery in Francistown and the Colonial Development Corporation's abattoir at Lobatsi, not yet in production. There is one workers' organization, the Francistown African Employees Union. Membership is open to all, irrespective of calling, except Government and Railway employees. It has a nominal membership of 200 but has not hitherto been active.

LABOUR LEGISLATION

The following labour legislation was enacted during the year :

The Departmental Offences (Repeal) Proclamation (No. 71 of 1953).

The Proclamation was repealed and power to impose fines in certain circumstances was vested in the Resident Commissioner by a General Order.

The Works and Machinery Regulations, Dust Control (High Commissioner's Notice No. 182 of 1953).

These regulations were made in the interests of the safety and health of mine workers.

The Shop Hours Regulations (Government Notice No. 45 of 1953).

These provide for different working hours for summer and winter in shops in N'gamiland.

SAFETY, HEALTH AND WELFARE

This is covered by the previous paragraph.

INDUSTRIAL TRAINING

As the country is almost entirely pastoral there is little demand for industrial training. The Public Works Department trains a few mechanics and artisans and some agricultural teaching is undertaken in the schools.

CHAPTER III

PUBLIC FINANCE AND TAXATION

The financial position of the Protectorate is as follows :

General Revenue Balance on 1.4.1952			£ 411,006
	<i>Approved Estimates</i>	<i>Actual Figures</i>	
	£	£	
Ordinary Expenditure	768,889	765,311	
Ordinary Revenue	699,352	772,089	
(Surplus +)			
(Deficit —)	£—69,537	£+6,778	6,778
			417,784
Colonial Development and Welfare Deficit			2,991
			414,793
Appreciation of Investments			644
General Revenue Balance on 1.4.1953			415,437
Under-issues from C.D. and W. Fund on 1.4.1953			3,226
			418,663

REVENUE AND EXPENDITURE

Revenue for 1952–53, including receipts from the Colonial Development and Welfare Fund, amounted to £951,796 and expenditure including that on Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes was £948,009. Details are as follows :

REVENUE		EXPENDITURE	
<i>Head</i>	<i>Amount</i>	<i>Head</i>	<i>Amount</i>
	£		£
Native Tax	104,684	Resident Commissioner	4,688
Customs and Excise	141,731	Administration of Justice	13,226
Posts and Telephones	77,731	Agriculture	19,271
Licences	28,512	Air Service	5,133
Fees of Court or Office	4,718	Allowances to Chiefs	472
Judicial Fines	7,390	Audit	3,220
Non-Native Poll Tax	2,816	Contributions to	
Income Tax	141,874	Tribal Treasuries	37,348

Transfer Duty	9,841	District Administration	47,202
Mining Revenue	-	Education	38,883
Forest Revenue	2,809	Forests	2,777
Cattle Export Tax	37,433	Medical	79,933
Rent from Government Property	25,813	Miscellaneous	82,088
Subvention from Rhodesia Railways	140,000	Pensions & Gratuities	30,550
Miscellaneous	46,737	Police	95,579
		Posts & Telegraphs	18,208
		Public Works Department	55,921
		Public Works Recurrent	40,403
		Public Works Extraordinary	45,867
		Secretariat	23,589
		Stores Department	6,222
		Treasury	9,185
		Veterinary	63,201
		Cost of Living Allowance	42,345
Total ordinary Revenue	772,089	Total ordinary Expenditure	765,311
Colonial Development and Welfare Fund	179,707	Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes	182,698
	£951,796		£948,009

Surplus £3,787

The following table reflects the total Ordinary Revenue and Expenditure for the past ten years :

REVENUE

<i>Year</i>	<i>Revenue £</i>	<i>Grant-in-aid United Kingdom Treasury</i>	<i>Total £</i>
1943-44	344,807	-	344,807
1944-45	384,648	-	384,648
1945-46	416,080	-	416,080
1946-47	466,757	-	466,757
1947-48	483,029	-	483,029
1948-49	501,344	-	501,344
1949-50	568,438	-	568,438
1950-51	554,161	-	554,161
1951-52	770,043	-	770,043
1952-53	772,089	-	772,089

EXPENDITURE		
<i>Year</i>		<i>Expenditure</i> £
1943-44		277,810
1944-45		334,838
1945-46		350,179
1946-47		404,779
1947-48		475,503
1948-49		575,683
1949-50		570,646
1950-51		569,309
1951-52		620,087
1952-53		765,311

Expenditure on Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes during the past ten years was as follows :

<i>Year</i>	<i>Amount</i> £
1943-44	15,680
1944-45	49,148
1945-46	28,241
1946-47	60,098
1947-48	47,589
1948-49	65,563
1949-50	105,399
1950-51	117,413
1951-52	137,065
1952-53	182,698

MAIN HEADS OF REVENUE

The main heads of revenue in 1952-53 were Native Tax £104,684 ; Customs and Excise £141,731 ; Licences £28,512 ; Fees of Court or Office £4,718 ; Cattle Export Tax £37,433 ; Subvention from Rhodesia Railways £140,000 and Miscellaneous £46,737. All Telegraph revenue accrues to the Southern Rhodesia Post Office, who operate the telegraph in the Protectorate.

PUBLIC DEBT

The public debt amounted to £12,016 on 31st March, 1953.

ASSETS AND LIABILITIES

The Statement of Assets and Liabilities as at 31st March 1953 is as follows :

MAIN HEADS OF TAXATION

Native Tax

(a) *Ordinary* £102,702. Proclamation No. 31 of 1949 provides for a tax of £1. 8s. 0d. per annum payable by every male native of 18 or more years of age. The excess of £8,702 over the estimate was accounted for by an all round increase in collections.

The following table shows the total collections for the last ten years :

<i>Year</i>	<i>Arrear Tax</i> £	<i>Current Tax</i> £	<i>Total</i> £
1943-44	17,441	58,479	75,920
1944-45	16,860	62,312	79,172
1945-46	17,228	61,436	78,664
1946-47	12,823	66,980	79,803
1947-48	15,805	66,759	82,564
1948-49	22,535	60,686	83,221
1949-50	17,995	68,430	86,425
1950-51	23,361	72,572	95,933
1951-52	27,955	75,576	103,531
1952-53	26,649	76,053	102,702

(b) *Graded* £1,982. Proclamation No. 16 of 1949 provides for a graduated tax payable by all natives and varying from 5s. per annum (for a taxpayer owning up to 9 head of stock or earning up to £48 per annum) to £10 per annum (for a taxpayer owning over 300 head of stock or earning over £500 per annum.) Females and minors owning stock are not liable for the tax unless they own at least 20 head. A stock owner who is also a wage earner is taxed in accordance with the number of stock he owns or the wages he earns, whichever yields the greater amount of tax. Government only receives the tax collected in respect of districts in which there is no Tribal Authority. In other areas the tax accrues to the Native Administration.

Customs and Excise £141,731

In accordance with the agreement concluded between the Government of the Union of South Africa and the Bechuanaland Protectorate the latter receives 0.27622 per cent of the total import and excise duty collected by the former. Import duty on Union-manufactured spirits, beer and fortified and sparkling wines is collected by the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government. The total collections for 1952-53 exceed the estimate by £9,273 owing to increased rates of import duty on Union-manufactured beer, spirits and fortified and sparkling wines and increased rates of excise duty on cigars, cigarettes and tobacco.

Posts and Telephones £77,731

The following table shows the revenue and expenditure of the Posts and Telegraphs Department for the last seven years :

<i>Year</i>	<i>Revenue</i> £	<i>Expenditure</i> £	<i>Surplus</i> £
1946-47	30,084	11,958	18,126
1947-48	76,428	11,904	64,524
1948-49	59,220	13,785	45,435
1949-50	64,572	17,477	47,095
1950-51	69,110	14,707	54,403
1951-52	70,395	14,911	55,484
1952-53	77,731	18,208	59,523

Licences £28,512

The excess of £4,212 over the estimate was mainly accounted for by increased collections of Trades and Business, Motor Drivers' and Vehicle and Game Licences.

Fees of Court or Office £4,718

Stamp Duties. These are imposed by the Stamp Duties and Fees Proclamation (Cap. 76) and the tariff follows closely those of the Union of South Africa.

Deeds Office. The Stamp Duties and Transfer Duties and other fees are imposed by the Land Registration and Transfer Proclamation (Cap. 89) and the Transfer Duty (Surcharge) Proclamation (Cap. 74.) The tariff for the most part is based on the appropriate part of the Second Schedule of the Cape Colony Stamp and Office Fees Act of 1884, and the Stamp Duty on Deeds of Transfer of immovable property has been increased to bring it into line with recent amendments in the Union of South Africa.

Fees of Court. These are governed by the Rules of the High Court and the Rules of the Subordinate Court and have all recently been increased to keep pace with increased expenses.

Master's Fees and Death Duties. These are governed by the Insolvency Proclamation (Cap. 69), the Administration of Estates Proclamation (Cap. 70) and the Death Duties Proclamation (Cap. 71) and are almost identical with those appertaining in the Union of South Africa.

Non-Native Poll Tax £2,816

The rate laid down by Cap. 75 of the Laws is £3 p.a. payable half-yearly on 1st January and 1st July by all males who have attained the age of 21 years and are not liable to pay Native Tax.

Income Tax £141,874

The collections were £16,874 in excess of the estimate on account of continued buoyant trading conditions.

The following were the rates of tax, rebates and surcharges on taxable income for the year ended 30th June, 1952 as amended by Proclamation No. 31 of 1952.

(a) *Normal Tax:*

Public Companies. Five shillings and sixpence per £.

Private Companies and Unmarried Persons. Eighteen pence for each pound increased by one-thousandth of a penny for each pound of the taxable income in excess of one pound. If the taxable income exceeds £10,000 the rate is 2s. 4d. per £.

Married Persons. Fifteen pence for each pound increased by one-thousandth of a penny for each pound of the taxable income in excess of one pound. If the taxable income exceeds £10,000 the rate is 2s. 1d. per £.

<i>Rebates:</i>	£	s.	d.
Married Person	26	0	0
Unmarried Person	20	0	0
Child under 18 years.	10	0	0
Child 18-21 years (depend- ent)	10	0	0
Dependant	2	10	0
Insurance	1s. 3d. per £ of premium with maxi- mum of £7. 10s. 0d. (or £4 in the case of a contributor to a Provident or Pension Fund).		

S U R C H A R G E S

Married Persons 40 per cent of the tax.

Private Companies and unmarried persons 50 per cent of the tax. A deduction of Poll Tax paid is made from the tax assessed.

(b) *Super Tax*

Private Companies and Individuals. Two shillings in the pound plus one four-hundredth of one penny for each pound of the income subject to super tax in excess of one pound less a rebate of £210 from the tax payable. There is a surcharge of 45 per cent. in the case of married persons and 50 per cent in the case of unmarried persons. If the income subject to super tax exceeds £10,000 the rate is 4s. 1d. per £.

Public Companies. These are not liable to super tax.

The following table shows the incidence of Income Tax in the Protectorate :

NORMAL TAX

Classification of Assessments Issued in respect of Incomes for the year ended 30th June, 1952 and prior years during the year ended 30th June, 1953

Income Category £ p.a.	Number of Taxpayers Individuals			Totals	Amount of Taxable Income Individuals			Total	Amount of Tax payable Individuals			Total
	Married	Single	Compa- nies		Married	Single	Compa- nies		Married	Single	Compa- nies	
Not exceed- ing 300	-	11	-	11	£ -	£ 2972	£ -	£ 2972	£ -	£ 22	£ -	£ 22
301-400	-	56	-	56	-	19468	-	19468	-	473	-	473
401-500	16	31	1	48	7347	14070	416	21833	89	618	18	725
501-600	14	43	2	59	7765	23519	1129	32413	123	1125	250	1498
601-700	31	21	1	53	20998	13629	675	35302	448	877	79	1404
701-800	39	15	-	54	29456	11195	-	40651	698	805	-	1503
801-900	31	5	1	37	26303	4335	899	31537	618	320	247	1185
901-1000	28	6	1	35	26729	5706	958	33393	843	474	114	1431
1001-1250	72	7	2	81	80864	7949	2158	90971	2687	710	323	3720
1251-1500	34	8	1	43	46303	11083	1443	58829	2008	1061	175	3244
1501-1775	21	1	3	25	33626	1761	4978	40365	1912	187	582	2681
1776-2000	10	3	3	16	18361	5495	5784	29640	971	577	1308	2856
2001-3000	33	2	5	40	82302	4632	11071	98005	5879	525	1399	7803
3001-4000	12	6	3	21	43561	20380	9808	73749	3525	1775	1187	6487
4001-7000	15	2	4	21	78727	9434	22861	111022	7306	1277	3405	11988
Over 7000	8	2	3	13	77598	16944	62543	157085	10115	2753	13607	26475
Total	364	219	30	613	579940	172572	124723	877235	37222	13579	22694	73495

SUPER TAX

*Classification of Assessments Issued in respect of Incomes for the year ended
30th June, 1952 and prior years during the year ended 30th June, 1953*

Income Category £ per a.	Number of taxpayers			Amount of Super Taxable Incomes				Amount of Super Tax Payable		
	Individuals		Total	Individuals		Companies	Total	Individuals		Total
	Married	Single		Married	Single			Married	Single	
Not exceed- ing 2000	8	2	11	£ 14909	£ 3606	£ 1874	£ 20389	£ 146	£ 13	£ 177
2001-3000	33	2	40	82175	4632	11071	97878	5035	233	471
3001-4000	14	7	24	43561	23801	9808	77170	4808	1948	816
4001-7000	15	2	21	79313	9434	22881	111628	10954	1494	4256
Over 7000	9	2	13	87831	17954	47653	153438	21292	4540	9406
Total	79	15	109	307789	59427	93287	460503	42235	8228	15126
										65589

Subvention from Rhodesia Railways £140,000

An agreement has now been concluded with Rhodesia Railways whereby the former guarantee to pay the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government £140,000 per annum for 6 years with effect from 1952-53 in respect of wayleave for their line which runs through the Protectorate.

Death Duties

The rates are laid down in Cap. 71 of the Laws and are as follows :

(a) Estate Duty:

Upon the first £2,000 of dutiable amount $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.

Upon so much of the dutiable amount as exceeds :

£2,000 and does not exceed £3,000 . . .	1%
£3,000 " " " " " £7,500 . . .	2%
£7,500 " " " " " £10,000 . . .	3%

Thereafter that rate of estate duty upon each pound of the dutiable amount in excess of £10,000 shall be three ten-thousandths of a pound for every completed one hundred pounds or part thereof contained in the dutiable amount, subject to a maximum rate of six shillings and eight pence upon each pound.

(b) Succession Duty:

*Degree of Relationship of Successor
to Predecessor*

*Rate of Duty upon Dutiable
Amount of Succession*

- | | |
|--|-----|
| (1) Where the successor is the direct descendant or ascendant of the predecessor | 3% |
| (2) Where the successor is the brother or sister of the predecessor | 5% |
| (3) Where the successor is the descendant of the brother or sister of the predecessor | 8% |
| (4) Where the successor is otherwise related to the predecessor or is a stranger in blood or is an institution | 12% |

Provided that :

- so much of any dutiable succession as exceeds ten thousand pounds in value shall be subject to an additional duty of one per cent on the amount of such excess ;
- where a successor is married to a person related by blood to the predecessor, the rate of duty chargeable shall be determined by the relationship of whichever of the two spouses is more nearly related to the predecessor ;
- where the predecessor was married to a person related by blood to the successor, the rate of duty chargeable shall be determined by the relationship of the successor to whichever of the predecessor and his or her spouse was more nearly related to the successor.

An agreement (High Commissioner's Notice No. 139 of 1944) for the prevention of the levying of death duties by both parties on the same

assets has been concluded between the Governments of the Union of South Africa and the Bechuanaland Protectorate.

Native Treasuries – Revenue and Expenditure

	1951–52		1952–53	
	<i>Revenue</i>	<i>Expenditure</i>	<i>Revenue</i>	<i>Expenditure</i>
Bamangwato . . .	56,312	28,744	42,000	38,317
Bakwena . . .	12,823	11,923	14,418	13,965
Bakgatla . . .	8,168	7,680	6,809	7,055
Tati . . .	6,396	6,003	4,400	4,921
Bangwaketse . . .	21,499	12,586	17,252	14,428
Batlokwa . . .	1,059	1,032	2,195	2,195
Batawana . . .	7,406	7,609	8,123	8,006
Barolong . . .	5,585	1,865	3,304	2,529
Bamalete . . .	5,867	3,628	2,598	2,566

CHAPTER IV

CURRENCY AND BANKING

Union of South Africa currency is used throughout the Protectorate. In the Northern Protectorate Southern Rhodesian currency is also used and accepted at par. The Standard Bank of South Africa, Ltd., and Barclays Bank (D.C. & O.) have branches at Francistown and both those banks operate once a week at Lobatsi by sending representatives from their Mafeking branches.

CHAPTER V

COMMERCE

A statement of Imports and Exports is at Appendix III.

The total exports show an increase of 5 per cent over the figure for 1952, and although the chief item of export (cattle) shows a drop in numbers of about 2,000 head, higher prices caused the value of this export to rise by approximately £45,000.

The decline in the exports of cattle to the Union was caused by a restriction on quotas during the first six months of the year, while during the latter half of the year prices favoured exports to the north. For example, in 1952 exports to the north from the Gaberones Veterinary District accounted for only 234 head but rose to 2,600 head in 1953, despite the difficulty of arranging for additional unloading and resting of the cattle at Francistown. 174 head of cattle were exported from the Tuli Block by Railway motor transport service, this being a departure from the only method previously acceptable, i.e. by rail. It is clear that the Congo market is becoming of increasing importance.

The long-standing method of export from N'gamiland, i.e. sale of cattle by the traders to the Northern Rhodesian buyers at Kazungula, was altered to conform with the arrangements for the export of cattle made with the Colonial Development Corporation. Instead, N'gamiland cattle were bought by the Colonial Development Corporation at Makalamabedi; those fit for export were drafted through the Corporation's ground to Matetse and thence to Kazungula, where the Corporation sold the cattle to Northern Rhodesia. This method of supply to Northern Rhodesia proved, in the event, to be unsatisfactory, as only 2,265 head were supplied compared with 9,878 in 1952. For the 1954 season the old system is being resumed in as far as the drafting of the cattle to Kazungula is concerned and the cattle are purchased by the Colonial Development Corporation at Kazungula before export to Northern Rhodesia.

Average prices realized were :

Union £22. 4s. 3d.

North (ex Railway Line) Oxen and Bulls 1,000 lb. and over : 41s. 11d. per 100 lb.

Oxen and bulls under 1,000 lb. : 36s. 11d. per 100 lb.

Cows : 35s. 5d. per 100 lb.

North (via Kazungula) £15. 12s. 6d.

The Union average was about 8s. per head better than in 1952. Average figures for the 1952 exports from the Railway line area to the North are not available for comparative purposes. The increase in average value for exports via Kazungula was £4. 12s. 6d. a head. This is accounted for by the imposition of an embargo weight above that usually applied, while the 1952 embargo weight was well below normal.

In an attempt to improve control over the export of cows, it was at first decided that no consignment of cattle might include more than 20 per cent of cows but owing to the considerable opposition which this aroused the previous method of control had soon to be resumed. It is not thought that any significant proportion of cows fit for breeding was in fact presented for export. Towards the end of the year difficulties arose concerning the export of tick-infested cattle to and through Southern Rhodesia. This arose in part from a general relaxation of the standards of inspection which must be ascribed to inexperienced staff.

Up to late in February the Union was prepared to accept only two truck loads of goats a week from the Territory. The number was then increased to five truck loads of sheep and goats and from June 1,000 sheep only per week were accepted. Demand from the north for sheep was good but goats were not wanted. The average price received in the Union was £2. 8s. 6d. for sheep and slightly more for goats. In the north the prices offered were 11d. and 6d. a pound liveweight for sheep and goats respectively.

Africans are taking an increasing part in the direct export of stock. In June 80 per cent of the sheep and goats and 40 per cent of the cattle exported from Francistown were handled by Africans and there are now 7 Africans regularly exporting from that centre.

The number and weight of hides exported rose but, owing to a world-wide drop in prices, the value was lower than last year. The increase in the quantity exported is accounted for in part by the large numbers of hides which came on to the market in 1953 following the serious drought conditions during the second half of 1952.

The very big increase in the export of game skins is notable. This is attributable to the increasing commercialization of the killing of game. Measures to control this have now been introduced.

A bonemeal factory was completed at Francistown early in 1954. This will relieve the shortage of bonemeal in the Territory (where aphosphorosis is a very real problem), which is due to the fact that only 240,000 lb. of bonemeal is returned to the Territory from the Union to which the Territory exports between one and two million lb. of bones a year.

The substantial increases in the exports of butter, grain and beans and pulses is due to the very good rains last year.

Asbestos exports are increasing as the mining firm is now "getting into its stride".

The marked reduction in grain imports is due to the excellent harvests reaped after a good rainy season. Increased import figures for general merchandise, vehicles and textiles are chiefly due to the fact that, for the first time, the values of Government stores, amounting to £341,118, have been included.

CHAPTER VI

PRODUCTION

LAND UTILIZATION AND TENURE

(a) *Crown Lands (approximate area 165,175 square miles)*

All Crown Lands are vested in the High Commissioner by Orders-in-Council of the 16th May, 1904, and the 10th January, 1910 which are printed on pages 8 and 10 of Volume I of the Laws of the Bechuanaland Protectorate. They are unalienated with the exception of a number of farms in the Ghanzi District and two areas, one at Matetsi and one on the Molopo River, which have been leased to the Colonial Development Corporation

(b) *The Native Reserves established as follows*

Barolong Farms (approximately 450 square miles) defined in Cap. 29 of the Laws.

Bamangwato Reserve (approximately 42,080 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Batawana Reserve (approximately 34,500 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Bakgatla Reserve (approximately 3,600 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Bakwena Reserve (approximately 15,000 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Bangwaketse Reserve (approximately 9,000 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Bamalete Reserve (approximately 178 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Batlokwa Reserve (approximately 56 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

All land in the Reserve is vested in the Chief and Tribe and is allocated by the Chief in his discretion. Land does not pass automatically from father to son and cannot be said to be owned by any one person, though in practice, on the death of a person to whom an area has been allocated by the Chief, his heirs usually continue to occupy the same area. No land may be alienated by a Chief or tribe.

An exception to this system has occurred in the Barolong Farms. Although this Block of farms is reserved to the Barolong tribe, it was

parcelled out and allocated by a former Chief to various tribesmen for occupation and the farms pass, on the death of the owners to their heirs on a similar basis. Nevertheless the farms are deemed to be the property of the whole tribe.

(c) *The European Farms*

Certain areas of land, known as the Lobatsi Block (approximately 214 square miles), the Gaberones Block (approximately 260 square miles) and the Tuli Block (approximately 1,930 square miles) were granted in perpetuity to the British South Africa Company, with power to sell or lease the land. The boundaries of the blocks are defined in Cap. 92 of the Laws. The blocks have been divided into farms and many of them sold with freehold titles.

(d) *The Tati District*

The Tati District (approximately 2,074 square miles) is owned by the Tati Company Limited, who have full power to sell or lease any portion. Right is reserved to Government to acquire sites for public buildings. Within the Tati District, an area of approximately 320 square miles is set aside as a native reserve for which Government pays to the Company £1,000 a year. No rent is payable by natives living within the reserve. The grant to the Company is governed by Cap. 90 of the Laws.

•
A G R I C U L T U R E

The volume of production of food grains, beans, and groundnuts was the highest for some years. In the case of food grains and beans, this must be attributed more to the favourable season than to any general increase in skill on the part of the African farmers. It is, however, gratifying to record that very satisfactory yields were obtained by African farmers who have adopted improved cultural practices.

Crops in the N'gamiland and Chobe areas, although damaged by floods, were sufficient to satisfy local requirements. The Colonial Development Corporation at Matetsi made available some two hundred tons of maize which was distributed to traders in the Francistown district after being milled in Bulawayo.

The utilization of locally produced food grains is being made very difficult by the absence of adequate storage and milling facilities which is also restricting the production of maize by European farmers in the Tuli Block where irrigation is possible from the Limpopo river. An arrangement with the Union authorities whereby millers in that country were permitted to process maize from the Protectorate and to exchange yellow maize for white maize meal facilitated the utilization of locally produced maize. The meal so obtained was not subject to the Union levy.

The export of grain sorghum was permitted in view of the large stocks, the low internal demand, and the inadequate storage facilities available. A comparatively small quantity of millet (*Pennisetum typhoideum*) was exported as was also the groundnut crop produced mainly by European farmers in the Gaberones and Lobatsi districts.

The production of butterfat and the quantity of butter manufactured (540,564 lb.) reached a new record figure. This was due to the very favourable rainfall experienced in the main cream producing areas.

Investigational work on the main problems confronting the agriculturist were continued and good progress was made. This work included variety trials, fertilizers and manurial experiments, espacement and cultural experiments, plant breeding and selection projects, and grazing experiments. Thanks to the exceptional season, yields from all crops under trial were of a high order. Excellent yields up to 19 bags per acre (200 lb. each) were recorded in a maize variety trial in which the late maturing varieties significantly outyielded the early maturing drought resistant varieties.

Grain sorghum variety trials were continued at both Mahalapye and Lobatsi and were supplemented by an additional trial conducted at Mogo-bane. The yields obtained demonstrated that the dwarf and double dwarf varieties are very suitable and capable of producing satisfactory yields under the variable climatic conditions encountered in the territory.

At Lobatsi very significant responses of over 100 per cent were obtained following applications of superphosphate and kraal manure. Cultural experiments again showed the importance of moisture conservation by early ploughing and clean cultivation. Yields of over 11 bags per acre were recorded for the locally bred "Kalahari" maize. Dwarf sorghums were grown for seed at Morale and considerable quantities of seed became available for distribution. Selection and breeding work with pearl millet (*Pennisetum typhoideum*) was continued and particular attention was paid to awned types which are less prone to bird damage. At Morale grazing experiments which included three different systems of veld management were continued at a stocking rate of 1 animal unit to 13½ acres.

Extension work in the Bakgatla, Bamalete, Bangwaketse and Tati Reserves made good progress and yields of up to 10 bags per acre were recorded from individual demonstration plots sited in African owned lands. The new red dwarf sorghum variety was well received. The number of demonstrators available for this work was insufficient to satisfy all the requests for assistance received.

Following the provision of further funds under Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Scheme D 680 a unit project was commenced in the Ranaka area of the Bangwaketse reserve. The object of this project is the general improvement of agricultural production in the selected area through the co-operative efforts of the inhabitants and departmental officers. More specifically it aims at the introduction of improved cultural practices and more adapted crop varieties, the improvement of soil fertility, veld management and animal husbandry, the reclamation of areas damaged by

misuse, the development of water points and the introduction of other practices to improve the general level of productivity.

There was no shortage of water in the Mogobane irrigation dam and the full programme of work was conducted. Approximately 1,200 bags of summer crops, maize, sorghum and cowpeas and 300 bags of wheat and peas were produced. A citrus orchard was established during the year. In April the water supply in the Bathoen dam became sufficient to permit the recommencement of vegetable production on a limited acreage. The remainder of the area was planted to dryland crops.

VETERINARY

In practically all areas the rainfall was exceptionally good and there was no general shortage of grazing. Local shortages were, however, reported, mainly arising from overstocking. Water supplies gave little trouble. In restricted areas heavy game concentrations and veld fires seriously reduced the grazing.

Good co-operation was established in the Bamangwato Reserve between the District Administration, the Public Works Department, African cattle owners and the Veterinary Department in the siting of dams and boreholes. The co-operation of the African owners was obtained to limit numbers of stock at the new bore holes in the Lephepe area and in the siting of the cattle posts. Very limited anti-erosion schemes were started in Kanye, using prison labour.

The methods of animal husbandry practised by the people remain essentially what they have been for a hundred years; stock are left to breed like game and their care goes little beyond the survival of the fittest. Owners are frequently not seen for years at their cattle posts. There are individual exceptions to the general picture and husbandry methods and interest in stock is of a relatively high standard among the Bokalaka and the Damara, non-Bechuana peoples, and the Bakgatla.

Many of the European farmers are adopting progressive methods of farming in general and of stock farming in particular. The feeding of oxen for early beef production is gaining ground.

The Veterinary Department has laid stress on the desirable practice of running calves with their mothers, but this is likely to succeed only in areas where the risks of losses from carnivora are small as few African owners will provide for the herding of their stock. Some progress was made with tick control, particularly with a view to the protection of cows' udders, mainly by the handdressing method. The collection of cattle for dipping or spraying is regarded generally by African owners as being too arduous an undertaking, not warranted, and too expensive. Instruction was also given and propaganda made in connection with aphosphorosis, the control of disease by the adequate use of vaccines, breeding methods and soil and veld conservation.

At Ramathlabama much basic work in connection with the proposed Veterinary School and Experimental Farm, fencing, paddocking, bush clearing etc., was done and a few cattle were bought. The improved management of the Goodhope Livestock Improvement Centre was continued. 4,000 additional morgen were enclosed and an additional bore hole was sunk.

The Masama Livestock Improvement Centre continued under the control of the Agricultural Department.

In August the direction of operations at Leupane Livestock Improvement Centre in the Bamangwato Reserve was taken over from the Tribal administration. Some progress has been made in correcting the state of decay into which this centre had fallen. Bulls were bought and a firm breeding policy laid down.

The livestock population is shown in Appendix IV. The census cannot be taken to be more than moderately accurate. Difficulties arose through staff shortages, seasonal migrations and large scale movements of stock for disease control and political reasons. A new method of taking the census has not proved an unqualified success and has resulted in separate figures for European and African owned stock not being presented. It may be taken that the number of bulls is substantially higher than the numbers recorded because of the African view that only mature bulls are to be considered as being bulls. The increase in the cattle population is about 43,000.

From Ghanzi 3,303 cattle were removed for sale to the Colonial Development Corporation Molopo River Ranch (1,773 head) and to the Railway Line area. It was a good season for trekking. From N'gamiland the Colonial Development Corporation Northern Ranch bought 8,942 cattle, almost entirely from the traders. Despite widespread propaganda among the Africans only 13 owners brought forward 146 head for sale. These cattle were bought over a weighbridge at Makalamabedi at 44 per cent of Johannesburg grade 2 price, i.e. 33s. 3d. per 100 lb., less a deduction of £1 (Government export tax) in the case of cattle weighing over 900 lb. This price was later reduced to 32s. The Colonial Development Corporation report that only 301 of the 1,736 N'gamiland cattle bought in July could be classed as being fit for immediate sale for slaughter. Thus, after many years, cattle were again, following on the establishment of the Makalamabedi Quarantine camp, allowed to move into the eastern areas from N'gamiland. In all, 10,408 cattle passed through this quarantine during the year.

153 cattle and 42 small stock illegally imported from Southern Rhodesia were confiscated and sold by public auction.

Progress was made with schemes to improve the hides and skins produced in the Territory. Two exporters erected warehouses at Francistown and Lobatsi respectively with the necessary equipment for dealing efficiently with hides and skins.

Regulations dealing with the manner in which hides and skins should be produced, stored, transported and graded were published but had not

been brought into operation by the end of the year. A Hide Improvement Officer toured the Territory explaining the objectives of the new scheme and influencing the traders in particular to adopt improved methods. Provision was made for an extension of this service by additional European and African staff in 1954. Some improvement in the quality of hides and skins exported can be reported but a vast amount remains to be done. Africans are now bringing fresh or green hides to the traders to an increasing extent.

The animal disease position was not exceptional in any particular respect during the year, except that a provisional cordon was maintained for some months along the Shashi River when it seemed that the extensive foot and mouth outbreak in Southern Rhodesia might get out of hand. Fortunately, such extensions of the disease as did occur, were in a direction away from the Territory's border.

The general inoculation against anthrax was disappointing this year as only 85 per cent of the cattle population was inoculated.

General inoculations were carried out against quarter evil and contagious abortion in the Southern Protectorate excluding the Bakwena Reserve. In the Territory as a whole, 93,344 animals were inoculated by officers of the Veterinary Department against quarter evil and 27,728 against contagious abortion.

In addition small numbers were inoculated against anaplasmosis, fowl typhoid, heartwater, bovine botulism and horsesickness. Vaccination against the last mentioned disease is very popular in many areas, particularly in Serowe and Ghanzi. In the Ghanzi District, the use of vaccines has become very popular in recent years. Unknown numbers were inoculated by owners themselves but vaccines supplied through the Department for official and private use, were as follows :

Anthrax	950,280
Quarter Evil	122,295
Bovine Botulism	18,035
Anaplasmosis	2,916
Paratyphoid	8,710
Contagious Abortion	34,131
Fowl Typhoid	1,125
Horsesickness	1,083
Fowl Pox	100
Bluetongue	300
Heartwater	174
Enterotoxaemia	800
Distemper	9

With regard to trypanosomiasis in stock, the existing system of treating fly-struck animals brought forward at so-called treatment centres was discontinued and treatment on a block system under the direct supervision of European staff was substituted. The use of dimidium bromide was continued for the purpose. For export from N'gamiland, anttrycide was used and 11,140 head were treated.

Scab control continued in the Lobatsi Veterinary District border areas in the South-east but could not be carried out in the Gaberones Veterinary District border areas.

It may now be assumed that rabies is endemic in the whole of the Territory excluding the Southern Protectorate, Ghanzi and the Kgalagadi, although there is reason to believe that the disease has appeared in the Gaberones area. It was chiefly active in the Rakops, Serowe, and Palapye areas during the year. Experience has taught the Africans in the Rakops area the dangers of the disease and they are now anxious that their dogs should be inoculated and are prepared to go to hospital when bitten. Relatively small numbers of stray dogs were destroyed but additional fire arms were ordered to enable better control in this direction to be undertaken.

It is now realized that bovine botulism (lamsiekte) is widespread and the people are slowly being taught the nature of this disease. Deaths from this disease were previously ascribed to wells suddenly becoming poisonous or to malicious poisoning.

Heartwater continues to cause considerable losses. It has been found possible to obtain and use the vaccine produced at Onderstepoort in some of the European areas.

Wild carnivora continue to take a big toll. One pair of lions in the Nata area accounted for 53 cattle in 1952, 26 in January, 1953, 11 in February and 9 in two days in March as well as wounding the Police horses. The danger of losses from lions, etc. is part of the cause of overgrazing, the owners being afraid to allow their stock to graze too far afield.

The usual losses were recorded from a wide range of other diseases including paratyphoid, enterotoxaemia, ephemeral fever, pasteurellosis, streptothricosis, anaplasmosis, piroplasmosis, heartwater, horsesickness, malignant catarrh and thirst. Bovine mange was reported in quantity in N'gamiland. Lumpy skin disease also occurred. The extent of the losses suffered through mastitis caused by ticks is becoming more evident and is clearly one of the main problems of the cattle industry. Losses caused by internal parasites, which increased greatly following on the good rains, were also considerable, particularly in sheep and goats.

Good progress was made during the year with cordon fences and quarantines. The Debeeti fence had reached a point 35 miles north-west of Lwala on the border of the Bamangwato Reserve. The Debeeti quarantine was fenced and boreholes equipped and by the end of the year about 800 head of stock had passed through. A quarantine of 32 square miles was constructed at Makalamabedi including a reception centre and spraying crushes. 11,000 head passed through the quarantine during the year of which 9,000 were purchased by the Colonial Development Corporation. The Kuki quarantine was also completed. Fifty miles of the Makalamabedi cordon fence were completed and the pegging and clearing of the line for the Central Bamangwato cordon, which will cut off the Botletle River, Makarikari and the Nata River areas of the Reserve from the rest of the Reserve, began in October.

In the Northern Ranching Project of the Colonial Development Corpo-

ration cattle held at the end of December numbered 17,500 compared with 10,278 at the end of 1952. The stock are reported to have been in good condition throughout the year. The calf crop varied widely between various sections, viz. 83 per cent, 40 per cent (on a section with a bull power of only 0·9 per cent), 21 per cent (in Southern Rhodesian corridor) and 55 per cent.

On the Molopo Holding Grounds 18,330 cattle were held at the end of the year. Purchases from Ghanzi were 1,773 head compared with 3,975 in 1952. The camps are in the region of 80 square miles which makes control and enumeration of the cattle very difficult.

The Corporation constructed an all-weather road from Panda Matenga to Kasane.

Publication of a monthly Veterinary Bulletin in English, containing articles designed to promote the improvement of the livestock industry, was started in March and was followed in January, 1954 by a simpler Bulletin in Tswana. Both are widely distributed, the former mainly by subscription, and the latter without charge.

F I S H E R I E S

There is no fishing industry though the people living on the Okovango and Chobe rivers catch a certain amount of fish, which is netted from canoes, for local consumption.

M I N I N G

The Geological Survey, which consists of six professional officers and a small subordinate staff, is responsible for the geological survey of the Territory. There is no department of mines but inspections are carried out from time to time by a mining engineer whose services are lent by the Government of Southern Rhodesia.

The function of the survey is primarily mineral finding and geological mapping in areas likely to be mineralized. The selection of sites for water boreholes by geophysical means has lesser priority.

Mineral production during the year was :

Gold	1,109 oz.	Value £14,008
Silver. . . .	464 oz.	142
Kyanite	1,960 tons	16,210
Asbestos	548 tons	61,862

The gold, silver and kyanite produced are in the Tati Concession, the mineral rights in which are owned by the Tati Company. The asbestos mine at Moshaneng belongs to the Bangwaketse Tribe and is operated by

a mining company on a royalty basis. The royalty accrues to the Tribal Treasury.

Geological work is organized on the basis of a field season of approximately 6 months during the dry period of the year. Field work is then carried out by the four geologists and concomitant laboratory work by the Chemist-Petrologist. Map drafting and report-writing work are undertaken during the non-field season when smaller-scale field work is also done.

Study was made of the results in the territory of (a) boreholes selected by geophysical and geological means (b) boreholes selected by other means. It was shown that a higher success rate prevailed in the former case.

Discussions with the Geological Survey of the Union of South Africa gave the Department a good deal of valuable information concerning recently developed methods and instruments. Grateful acknowledgment is made to the geophysical section of the Union survey for making freely available the results of their considerable experience. The Survey has thus been able considerably to improve the techniques used in water-finding. The new instrument mentioned in the introduction is one developed and manufactured especially for the Union Survey. The Protectorate Survey has obtained a similar model and work with it has been commenced at the Bushman Mine.

During October the drilling programme in the area west of Foley siding was completed. Work was started with the "Seco Induna" diamond drill at Dikgatlong. The borehole forms the first of a series planned for the investigation of the extension of the Waterberg Coalfield into this Territory. Geological mapping of the area was undertaken during 1951. The first borehole is now at a depth of 414 feet and is expected to reach the coal bearing strata at about a thousand feet.

During the period under review two major undertakings in respect of mineral exploration have been the examination of the copper prospects at Magogaphate in the Eastern Bamangwato Reserve and the recommencement of investigations at the Bushman Mine north-west of Francistown.

Magogaphate was one of the more promising copper occurrences reported by the geologists of the Victoria Prospecting Company, who examined a large area of the Territory during the nineteen thirties. This survey had made preliminary investigations there during 1950. Detailed work was commenced during the year under review. Subsequent to this some diamond drilling was carried out and an unexpected result of the drilling was the discovery of an horizon of nickeliferous pyrrhotite and pentlandite. The percentage nickel in the drill core ranged from 26 to 71.

Of importance is the detailed work now being carried on at the Bushman Mine. Fairly complete particulars of the early history of the mine have been obtained as a result of a search initiated by the Department, though mine plans are still lacking. It is nevertheless clear that some high copper percentages occur in the richer parts of the ore body. In the early days only these portions were of workable grade. With modern mining

practice and methods of recovery the average copper content of the ore body (including the disseminated copper outside the rich zones) does not appear to fall below the limits of workability.

While the mine looks promising at present an unknown factor is the continuation of the ore body in depth. One aspect of the present survey is designed to investigate this, and to gain an idea of possible ore reserves.

MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES

There are none.

CO-OPERATIVE SOCIETIES

There are no established societies.

CHAPTER VII SOCIAL SERVICES

1. EDUCATION

The problems of administration and control of education in Bechuanaland present unusual difficulties resulting from a number of factors, the chief of which are:

- (1) the territory's great size and extraordinary difficulties of communication and travel ;
- (2) the limited financial resources and
- (3) the very small part played by mission societies and other voluntary agencies in education.

EDUCATION DEPARTMENT

The European professional staff of the Education Department in 1947 was 6. For reasons of economy the establishment was later reduced to 5 and the effective strength became 4 when in July 1952 the Homecrafts

Education officer resigned. Subsequent advertisements have not produced a suitable replacement. Similarly of an African inspectorate comprising 1 Assistant Education Officer and 6 Supervisors of Schools only five of the posts were filled.

AFRICAN EDUCATION

The schools of the Protectorate consist of one Teacher Training College conducted by Government : 2 Junior Secondary Boarding Schools, of which one is the Roman Catholic Mission College at Khale and the other the Bamangwato College at Moeng, built by the Bamangwato tribe ; 2 tribal day secondary schools : 142 primary schools, of which 115 were conducted by tribal school Committees, 24 by Government in the Crown Lands, and 3 by Missions. The total numbers of pupils were : at the Training College 56 : in secondary schools 152 : in primary schools 18,184. 11,487 of the pupils were girls and 6,849 boys.

The Dutch Reformed Church also conducts a small Homecrafts Centre which offers a three-years course for girls, and a one-year course for teachers already qualified who wish to specialize in the-teaching of home-crafts.

The average school-going age is difficult to assess with accuracy, varying as it does between 6 and at least 12 years. Many children do not know their ages. However, an average admission age of $8\frac{1}{2}$ years might be approximately correct. The average school life is not more than 4 years.

The Education Department exercises professional control and direction of all education in the Protectorate and is directly responsible for the administration of the Teacher Training College and of schools in the Crown Lands. Tribal schools are tribally financed with the exception of the Bamangwato College which, like the Mission schools, is Government aided.

The present temporary Teacher Training College, whose accommodation is approximately 50 pupils, will be replaced by a new training school of double that capacity for which a Colonial Development and Welfare building grant of almost £39,000 is available. From this college and from extra-territorial institutions an annual average number of 30 qualified teachers is recruited to meet wastage through resignation and gradually to replace the unqualified teachers, now rather less than 50 per cent of the total of over 500 African teachers.

Until 1953 the Bechuanaland Protectorate was dependent on neighbouring territories, particularly on the Union of South Africa, for a great deal of secondary education, practically all vocational education and all higher education but the Union will not accept any new extra-territorial secondary and vocational students into its schools in 1954 : the universities will continue to take High Commission Territories students until 1958 and before that date it is hoped that the Central African University should

be in operation. Meantime preparations are being made to deal with the situation by extending educational facilities in the Protectorate and by increased co-operation with Basutoland and Swaziland.

The number of Protectorate African students attending University is small. In 1953 one completed a medical course, one was taking a science course and one an arts course, and a fourth was reading for a degree in Basuto languages. The first three held Protectorate bursaries while the fourth was a Colonial Development and Welfare scholar.

EUROPEAN EDUCATION

For the small European community, 9 primary schools are conducted, 2 by Government and 7 by local Committees. At Ghanzi, the most remote European settlement in Southern Africa, a boarding school capable of accommodating 60 pupils was opened in July. The total cost of the school was almost £16,000 of which the community contributed £2,000. This school will be run on farm-school lines, offering practical rural training as well as the usual academic subjects. Statistics of pupils attending European schools in the Protectorate show a total number of about 250, with a slight majority of boys and 3 out of every 5 coming from Afrikaans-speaking homes.

Older children, and those for whom no local primary education exists, attend schools in the Union of South Africa and in Southern Rhodesia. Exact figures are not available but the number is about 170, most of whom receive Government grants or bursaries.

COLOURED EDUCATION

The Eurafrikan community in Bechuanaland is small and most of their children attend African Tribal schools. There are however, 5 small Protectorate Coloured schools of which 232 pupils were enrolled during 1953. Of the 9 teachers employed, only 2 were qualified

COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE FUND

Under Scheme D.10+5 (Improvement of Education) a sum of £90,090 has been made available for capital and recurrent expenditure in the Protectorate in the period 1st April, 1948 to 31st March, 1956. Of this sum £3,500 capital expenditure was provided for the Lobatsi European school and £14,590 for the Ghanzi European Boarding School. £38,000 is earmarked for the erection and equipment of an African Teacher Training College.

The balance of £34,000 is being devoted to recurrent expenditure in encouraging Agricultural Education, Homecrafts Education, Youth Movements and Welfare, including the running of a mobile cinema. Under a separate scheme D.1930 a grant-in-aid of £1,000 was made to St. Joseph's College, Khale to assist towards costs of additional buildings necessitated by increased enrolments.

FURTHER EDUCATION

ADULT EDUCATION LIBRARY, FILMS

Funds available for education are so limited that little can be done beyond providing ordinary schooling for the children who wish, or who are able to attend school, i.e. approximately one third of the estimated number of school-going age. Later in this chapter an account will be found of the use of films and the encouragement of local libraries.

IMPROVEMENT IN CONDITIONS OF SERVICE AND WAGES OF TEACHERS

A revision of teachers' salaries was made in April, 1953, all scales being improved. A few of the Tribal School Committees were not able immediately to introduce the new scales so that the previous policy of maintaining uniformity of teachers' salaries throughout the Protectorate had to be abandoned.

FINANCE

Expenditure on education in the Protectorate for the calendar year 1953 was as follows :

From Government sources	£41,174
„ Tribal „	39,471
„ Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes	11,320
„ Missions (approximately).	5,000
Total :	£96,965

2. PUBLIC HEALTH

During 1953, 257,709 out-patients were dealt with at various centres, a reduction of 90,627 as compared with 1952. The chief reason for this was the great reduction in numbers from Kazangula, one of the chief recruiting centres of the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association. Further, one mission station was without a doctor during the year. Of the total number, 91,432 were first attendances and the proportion of males to females was roughly 2 : 3.

8,751 in-patients were admitted, with 235 deaths, as against 8,318 and 293 respectively in 1952.

The nosological return at Appendix VI indicates the types of disease encountered ; figures are for first attendances only.

17,819 recruits were examined during the year chiefly for the Rand and Orange Free State gold mines and Cape manganese mines. Of these, 4,164 were from tropical areas.

HOSPITALS AND DISPENSARIES

There are Government Hospitals at the following centres :

Lobatsi	94	beds
Lobatsi Mental Home	21	„
Serowe	111	„
Francistown	52	„
Maun	34	„
Total	312	„

There are Government Dispensaries at :

Mahalapye (8 beds for emergencies)	
Gaberones	Moeng *
Tsau	Shoshong
Sephopo *	Kalamari *
Shakawe	Machaneng
Palapye	Sefhare *
Good Hope *	Tonota
Ramoutsa *	Gabane
Makopo's	Kalkfontein
Kraal *	Tshane

* No Government buildings available, but accommodation improvised for visits which take place at least monthly, usually weekly.

In addition, there are the following mission hospitals and dispensaries.

Kanye - Seventh Day Adventist Mission	68	beds
Molepolole - United Free Church of Scotland	56	"
Mochudi - Dutch Reformed Church Mission	21	"
Maun - London Missionary Society Maternity Centre	10	"
Ramoutsa - Hermannsburg Lutheran Mission	13	"
Khale - Roman Catholic Mission	5	"
Kazangula - Witwatersrand Native Labour Association for employees	6	"
Pitsani - Molopo (Dispensary Only).	-	
Total	212	"

The total number of beds, therefore, is 532 as compared with 459 in 1952, that is one bed for every 560 of the population.

The professional staff of the Medical Department consists of the Director, 10 Medical Officers, 4 Matrons and 13 Nursing Sisters. There are also three Health Inspectors and auxiliary and clerical staff. There are 5 medical missionaries and subsidiary mission staff, both European and African. One European dentist is registered in the territory but he has almost completely retired from practice.

The training of African Nurses remains a 3-year course in general medical and surgical nursing and a 1-year course in midwifery, at the end of which they receive a local certificate and are recognized as staff nurses.

African Pupil Dispensers and Pupil Sanitary Inspectors receive training under the direction of Medical Officers and Health Inspectors, and are required to pass local examinations.

EPIDEMIC AND GENERAL DISEASES

Yellow Fever

The position regarding Yellow Fever remains unchanged. Air transport of mine recruits to Francistown from Nyasaland and the North-west Protectorate is carried out with precautions which are rigidly enforced.

Tuberculosis

Notified cases of tuberculosis numbered 1,579 (1,391).^{*} There were 33 deaths (22).^{*}

Trypanosomiasis

4 cases (13) were reported during the year, with one death (3) all from the N'gamiland area. 521 prophylactic injections of pentamidine were

^{*} Figures in brackets are for 1952.

administered to personnel employed in the Tsetse Fly Control scheme. A Tsetse Fly Control Officer was appointed in June, 1953.

Diphtheria

170 (112) cases were reported with 29 deaths (9). The areas chiefly affected were Serowe, Maun, Tshane and Mahalapye. 4,133 prophylactic inoculations were given.

Small pox

20 (73) cases only were reported with no deaths.

Malaria

1,865 (2,044) cases were notified with 3 (4) deaths. Anti-malarial drugs are distributed through the traders at sub-economic rates, and in many instances free of cost. School children in malarial areas are supplied with paludrine free of charge.

Miscellaneous Infectious Disease

1,006 (1,210) cases of pertussis, 486 (728) of measles, 25 (28) meningitis with three deaths and 4 (4) of acute anterior poliomyelitis were recorded.

CONFERENCE

The Director of Medical Services attended the World Health Organization Seminar on Yellow Fever at Kampala in September, and also visited the Sudan.

BUILDINGS

Extensions to Lobatsi Mental Home were completed during the year.

LEGISLATION

High Commissioner's Notice 257 of 1952. Cancellation of Medical Service Regulations.

Government Notice 79 of 1952. In- and Out-Patient charges in Government Hospitals.

High Commissioner's Notice No. 78 of 1953. Amendment to Medical Service Regulations published under High Commissioners's Notice No. 54 of 1930.

High Commissioner's Notice 97 of 1953 - Amendment to Public Health Regulations page 182 of Volume III of the Laws. (Amendment by High Commissioner's Notice 160 of 1953).

Proclamation 61 of 18.9.1953 - Bechuanaland Protectorate Regulation of Advertisements.

Proclamation 67 of 2.10.1953 (Item 6) Bechuanaland Protectorate Trading Proclamation (Chemist Licences).

PUBLICATIONS

Laufer, W. E. and Freedman M. L. "Camoquin in Malaria." *S. Afr. M.J.* 1953. 27.

Squires, B. T. "Human Salivary Amylase in Relation to Diet." *J. Physiol.* 1953. 119-153.

Squires, B. T. "Tongue Patterns of African Children in Health and Malnutrition." *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. & Hyg.* 1953. 47. 329.

Squires, B. T. "Ultra-Violet Fluorescence of the Tongue in African Children." *S. Afr. Med. J.* 1953. 27. 759.

3. HOUSING AND TOWN PLANNING

The majority of the people live in the traditional type of hut with mud walls and a thatched roof. The type and soundness of construction vary considerably, but on the whole the huts are maintained in good condition. They are usually constructed by the owner and his family, sometimes with help from friends, on land allocated by the Chief or local headmen. Even in the towns there is little or no overcrowding and there are no slums.

A few of the wealthier Africans have had European type houses built. Europeans usually live in detached houses of brick or concrete.

Public Health Regulations made under Cap. 49 of the Laws, are administered by the Medical Officer of Health and Health Inspectors in the major centres of population. It is not always possible for the smaller centres to be inspected regularly but the absence of overcrowding makes rigid enforcement of many of the regulations unnecessary.

Fourteen European and twelve African Government houses were completed during the year.

4. SOCIAL WELFARE

The Bechuana mode of life being largely communal, many social problems are effectively solved within the framework of Tribal Law and Custom. The sense of communal obligation is very real and the care of orphans, the aged and infirm is voluntarily undertaken by relatives according to an established order of responsibility.

An annual Government provision of £500 is available, if required, for the relief of destitution, and Government or Mission Hospitals and Clinics are established at strategic points to deal with serious illness or disease.

Throughout the whole sphere of social welfare official schemes are designed to augment, rather than to replace, those operating within the Tribal social structure.

REHABILITATION OF AFRICAN EX-SOLDIERS

The Bechuanaland Soldiers Benefit Fund has been closed by the National Council of the African Advisory Council to all but Bamangwato applicants, who for political reasons have been without a District Welfare Board for a few years and so have been unable to submit applications.

YOUTH MOVEMENTS

The Boy Scout and Girl Guide movements are being introduced by agreement in the Bamangwato Reserve in place of the Boys' Brigade and the Girls' Life Brigade. The annual census of scouts and guides shows little change in numbers from the 1952 grand total of 3,484 as the new companies have not yet been enrolled. Week-end courses and model meetings have been held throughout the year and enthusiasm for Scouting continues to increase.

MOBILE CINEMA

A new mobile cinema is now in service fitted with improved projection and sound equipment. For the greater part of the year its activities were confined to the Bamangwato Reserve.

COMMUNITY CENTRES

An African Sports and Social Club is established at Francistown where members can read, write, play games and attend lectures, film and film strip shows and entertainments.

The Serowe Reader's Club has as its object the encouragement of cultural development by means of lectures, debates, discussions, readings and social events.

There is a Literary Club at Sikwani, and at Maun the community is working to raise funds to build a new Community Hall.

BRITISH RED CROSS SOCIETY

The Francistown Group continues to run a highly successful school feeding scheme for African children in the Location.

CHAPTER VIII LEGISLATION

The following were the principal enactments during the year :

- (1) Proclamation No. 16. Subordinate Courts (amendment) Proclamation which empowers Administrative Officers to hold a Subordinate Court according to their rank in any part of the Territory instead of only in their own districts. It also enables the courts to order that a native, who brings an action against another native should begin such action in a Native Court. The proclamation empowers the Chief Justice to order any case to be transferred for hearing to a district other than that in which the offence was committed.
- (2) Proclamation No. 17. Railway (Amendment) : Proclamation, which governs annual payments from the Railways to the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government.
- (3) Proclamation No. 18. Prisons (Amendment) Proclamation, which empowers the Resident Commissioner to establish temporary prisons.
- (4) Proclamation No. 24. Customs (Amendment) Proclamation, governing the disposal of fines and penalties and amending the schedule of duties.
- (5) Proclamation No. 29. Customs (Amendment No. 2) Proclamation, amending the schedule of duties.
- (6) Proclamation No. 37. Excise Duty (Aerated Beverages and Sweets) Proclamation, imposing excise duties on aerated beverages and sweets.
- (7) Proclamation No. 39. Game (Amendment) Proclamation. This Proclamation empowers the Resident Commissioner to fix rates of licence fees for the sale or export of game.

- (8) Proclamation No. 57. Liquor (Amendment) Proclamation, increasing the maximum penalties for the sale of liquor to or the possession of liquor by natives.
- (9) Proclamation No. 61. Regulation of Advertisements Proclamation, which controls advertisements of medicines and medical treatments.
- (10) Proclamation No. 63. Joint Stock Companies (Amendment) Proclamation controlling the reduction of share capital.
Proclamation No. 66. Hides and Skins (Amendment) Proclamation. This Proclamation provides for the making of regulations to govern the licensing of hide and skin dealers and increases penalties for breaches of the law.
- (11) Proclamation No. 67. Trading Proclamation. This consolidates and amends the various laws relating to trading and trades licensing.
- (12) Proclamation No. 71. Departmental Offences (Repeal) Proclamation. Certain disciplinary powers have been placed in the hands of the Resident Commissioner by General Orders and the Departmental Offences Proclamation was therefore repealed.
- (13) Proclamation No. 73. Livestock and Meat Industry Proclamation. This provides for the control and the operation of abattoirs, cold storage, canning plants, slaughter houses and bonemeal factories and provides machinery for the marketing, pricing, grading and inspection of meat and livestock.
- (14) Proclamation No. 81. Native Tax (Amendment) Proclamation.
- (15) Proclamation No. 82. Native Graded Tax (Amendment) Proclamation. These two proclamations alter the tax year from the financial year to the calendar year.
- (16) Proclamation No. 84. Control of Livestock industry (Amendment) Proclamation. This makes a number of alterations in detail to the principal law, including provision for licences for buyers' agents.

CHAPTER IX

JUSTICE, POLICE AND PRISONS

JUSTICE

In criminal matters the High Court and Subordinate Courts are governed by the Criminal Procedure and Evidence Proclamation. This Proclamation follows the statutory law in force in the Union of South Africa.

In civil matters, except where native law and custom is involved, the Roman Dutch Common law in force in the Union of South Africa is followed.

This is so because in the Bechuanaland Protectorate the Cape of Good Hope laws promulgated up to the 10th June, 1891, remain in force, except where repealed or altered by Proclamation by the High Commissioner. The Courts of Law of the Protectorate consist of :

I. HIGH COURT

The High Court is a Superior Court of Record and, in addition to any other jurisdiction conferred by the local law, possesses and exercises all the jurisdiction, power, and authorities vested in the Supreme Court of South Africa.

Although the decision in every case, civil and criminal, is vested exclusively in the presiding Judge, he sits with four Assessors (two Administrative Officers and two Africans) who act in an advisory capacity.

In practice all four Assessors sit in every criminal trial and in every criminal appeal.

In civil cases the practice is for the Judge to sit alone where only law, other than native law and custom, and not fact is involved. Where native law and custom is involved the Judge sits with all four Assessors or with two African Assessors only, depending on the character of each particular case.

There is no local Court of Appeal and appeals go direct to the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council.

2. SUBORDINATE COURTS

OF THE FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CLASS

In the various districts of the Territory there are Subordinate Courts of the First Class presided over by the District Commissioner of each district, and also Subordinate Courts of the Second and Third Class presided over by Assistant District Officers and Cadets, respectively. Appeals lie from all these Subordinate Courts to the High Court.

The powers of these Courts are as follows :

(a) *Criminal*

(i) *First Class*: Can impose sentences up to a maximum of two years imprisonment with or without hard labour, or a fine up to one hundred pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum imprisonment of two years is not exceeded. In certain cases and subject to certain safe-guards a whipping not exceeding fifteen strokes with a cane may be imposed.

(ii) *Second Class*. The maximum sentence is imprisonment with or without hard labour up to one year, or a fine not exceeding fifty pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum sentence of

one year is not exceeded. A whipping not exceeding eight strokes with a cane may be imposed in certain cases and subject to certain safe-guards.

(iii) *Third Class.* The maximum sentence is imprisonment with or without hard labour up to six months, or a fine not exceeding twenty-five pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum sentence of six months is not exceeded. A Third Class Court cannot impose a sentence of whipping.

Subordinate Courts have no power to try a person charged with treason, murder, rape, sedition or an offence relating to coinage or currency, except that the Attorney-General may remit a rape case for trial by a Subordinate Court.

(b) *Increased Criminal jurisdiction*

The Attorney-General may remit a case (not being treason, murder, sedition or an offence relating to coinage or currency) to a Subordinate Court for trial with increased jurisdiction, after the holding of a preparatory examination. When so remitted with increased jurisdiction the powers of punishment are :

- (i) *First Class:* Imprisonment up to four years; fine not exceeding two hundred pounds,
- (ii) *Second Class:* Imprisonment up to two years; fine not exceeding one hundred pounds.

Note: There is no remittal to a Third Class Court and therefore no increased jurisdiction for such a Court.

(c) *Criminal Review*

In criminal cases all sentences by Subordinate Courts of the First Class are subject to review by the High Court when the punishment imposed exceeds six months' imprisonment or a fine exceeding fifty pounds.

As regards the Second and Third Class Subordinate Courts they are also subject to review by the High Court when the punishment imposed exceeds three months' imprisonment or a fine exceeding twenty-five pounds.

(d) *Civil*

In civil cases Subordinate Courts of the First Class have jurisdiction in all actions where the amount in dispute does not exceed five hundred pounds, subject to the right of such Courts to transfer cases to the Native Courts for hearing, and of the Second Class where the matter in dispute does not exceed two hundred and fifty pounds. Third Class Subordinate Courts have jurisdiction where either party is a European and the amount in dispute does not exceed ten pounds.

3. NATIVE COURTS

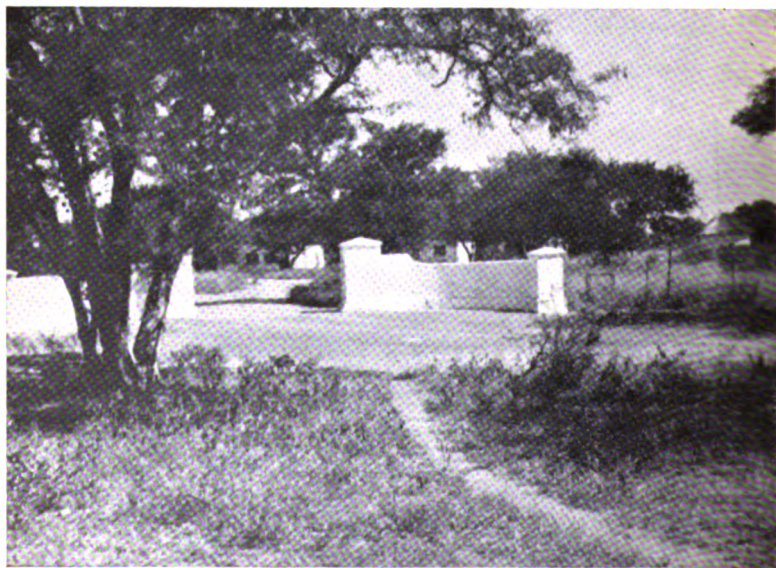
These are governed by Cap. 5 of the Laws.



Elephants, on Zvezizue Flats, Chobe District



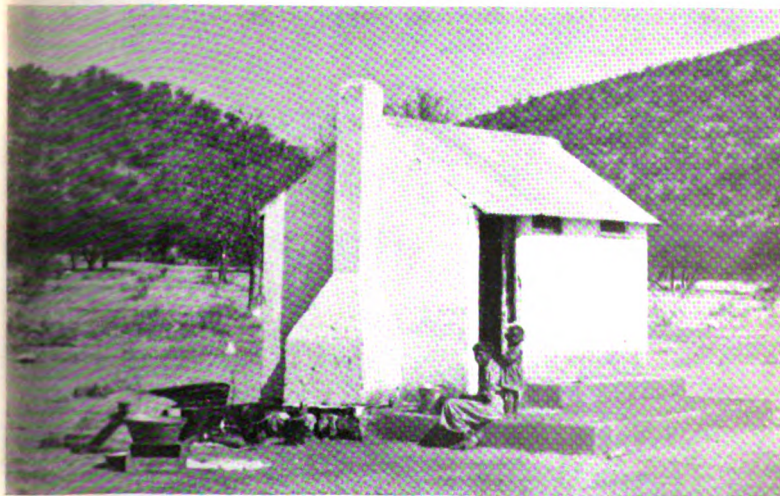
Animal group in a Grazing Experiment at the Morale Experimental Station



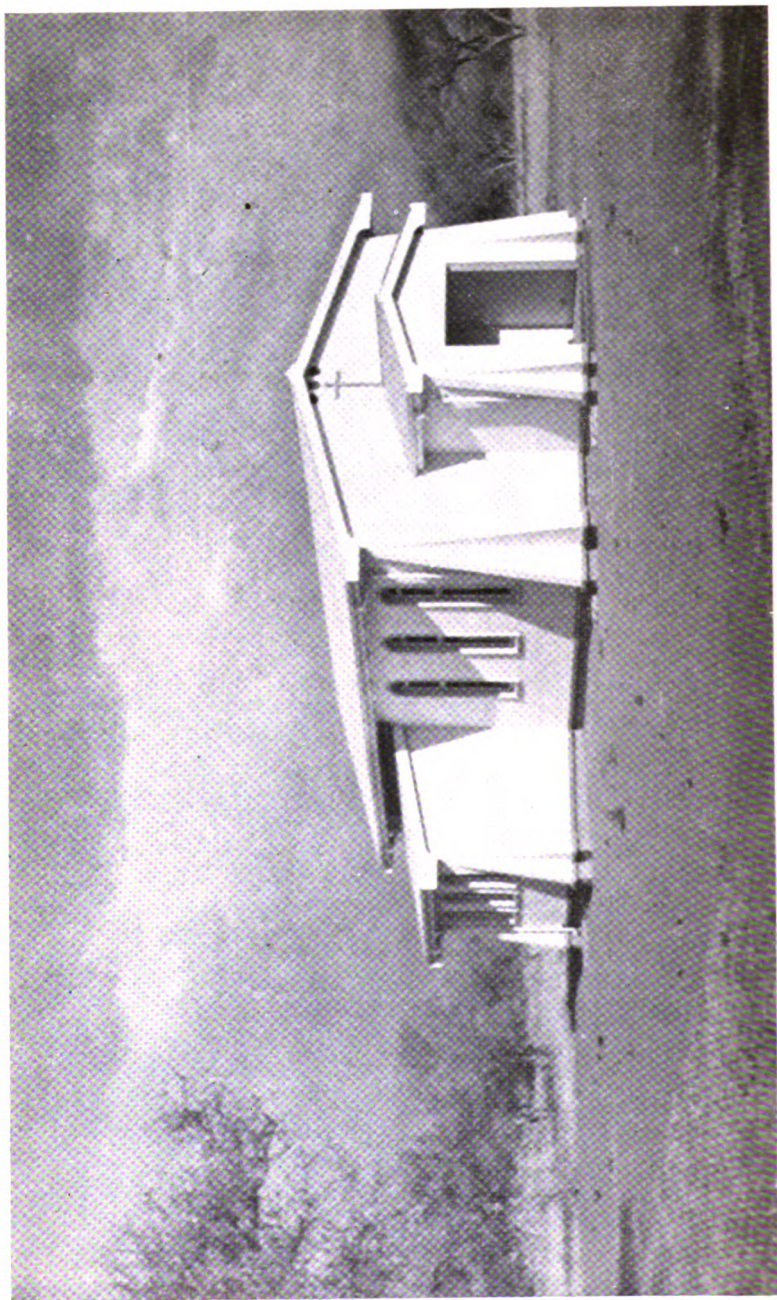
Entrance to Agricultural Department Offices and Experimental Station, Mahalapye



New African Quarters, Lobatsi



Old African Quarters, Lobatsi



Anglican Church, Gaberones

JUDICIAL AND LEGAL DEPARTMENTS**I. JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT**

This department is headed by the Chief Justice, who is also Chief Justice of Basutoland and of Swaziland. He is resident at Maseru in Basutoland and holds Sessions in the Protectorate when necessary.

Under the Chief Justice there are the Registrar, High Court, and the various Presiding Officers of the Subordinate Courts – that is the District Officers and Assistant District Officers in their judicial capacity.

During the year under review the following statistics are of interest :

(a) High Court

In criminal trials twelve persons were indicted of whom all were eighteen years or over. There were twelve charges against those persons on which there were eleven convictions and one acquittal ; five of those convictions were for murder.

Criminal review cases from Subordinate Courts totalled one hundred and three.

There were twenty-five criminal appeals of which two were dismissed, twenty were allowed, one was sent back for re-hearing and two were pending at the end of the year.

There were twenty-two civil cases of which sixteen were disposed of and six were pending at the end of year.

Civil appeals from Subordinate Courts totalled four of which one was dismissed, and three were pending at the end of the year.

(b) Subordinate Courts

In criminal cases 2,668 persons were tried of whom three hundred and forty-three were under eighteen years of age. There were convictions of 3,204 charges and acquittals on 162 charges. Most of the charges were in respect of offences against the person, stock theft, offences other than stock theft against property, liquor and drug offences.

Including those pending at the end of 1952, and those registered in 1953, there were six hundred and forty-three civil cases of which five hundred and fifty-one were heard. The reason the remainder were not heard is because the parties did not set them down for hearing.

Detailed statistics will be found in Appendix V.

2. LEGAL DEPARTMENT

The work of the Legal Department comprises of the work of the Master of the High Court, the Sheriff of the Bechuanaland Protectorate, the Registrar of Deeds, the Registrar of United Kingdom Trade Marks,

the registration of Union Trade Marks and Patents, the Registrar of Births and Deaths, the Registrar of Marriages, the Registrar of Brands and the control of Crown Leases etc. etc. During 1953 the work done was as follows :

(a) *Master's Office*

19 new Estates were filed and numerous old Estates were dealt with or completed.

(b) *Sheriff's Office*

Arrangements were made for the execution of 2 death sentences and for the service or execution of 40 processes of different kinds.

(c) *Deeds Registry*

- (i) 49 transfers of immovable property were registered ; the purchase prices or valuations of such property amounting to £137,403.
- (ii) 30 bonds were registered involving loans amounting to £115,663. In addition, bonds were cancelled or ceded.
- (iii) various companies etc. were registered.
- (iv) In addition, numerous searches were made at the instance of the banks and attorneys and considerable research was conducted to establish the balances of land held by the British South Africa Company.

(d) *Trade Marks and Patents*

3 Patents, 61 Union Trade Marks and 23 United Kingdom Trade Marks were registered and many assignments and renewals were also recorded.

(e) *Births, Marriages and Deaths*

90 births were registered, of which 70 (60 Europeans, 10 Asiatics and Coloureds) actually took place in 1953 ; 20 deaths were registered, of which 17 (14 Europeans and 3 Asiatics or Coloureds) actually took place in 1953 ; and 249 marriages (all races) were registered.

(f) *Brands*

242 Brands were registered.

(g) *Crown Leases*

Control was maintained over 81 Crown Leases.

II. POLICE

The crime statistics for 1953 reveal that the total number of cases handled by the Police was 5,230, representing an increase of 1,602 cases over the figure for 1952, which was itself the highest figure then on record.

At the end of 1952 the number of cases still under investigation was 492 – almost 10% of the total number of cases reported. This high figure was due very largely to the shortage of police officers and to lack of training and experience in many of the members of the Force.

The number of Stock Theft cases investigated increased from 278 in 1952 to 327 in 1953. In all 880 head of stock were reported stolen and 508 head were recovered. Of the latter number, arrests were effected and the culprits were convicted in respect of 186 animals.

Of 327 Stock theft cases investigated in 1953, 186 were sent for trial and convictions were obtained in 179 cases resulting in the punishment of 219 African males and 1 African female. 25 cases were found false on enquiry, 12 were undetected, 30 were withdrawn before issue of process and 2 were closed upon the issuing of warrants of arrest.

An analysis of serious crime handled during the year reveals that of the total of 1,379 cases 860 were disposed of by the Courts and 872 persons were convicted. 234 of the cases remained under investigation, 72 were found false on enquiry, 95 were closed as undetected, 76 were withdrawn by the police before issue of process and 19 were closed upon issue of warrants of arrest, the accused persons still being at large.

Three African N.C.O's were sent to Maseru during the last quarter of 1953 to be trained as prosecutors. The results were promising and more Africans will undergo similar courses later on in the year.

III. PRISONS

There are two gaols in the Territory at Gaberones and Francistown and there are lock-ups at Lobatsi, Mochudi, Tshabong, Maun, Kasane, Serowe, Palapye, Mahalapye, Machaneng, Kanye, Molepolole, and Ghanzi. The prisons and lock-ups are in charge of the District Commissioner in each district; at Francistown and Gaberones gaols there is a European gaoler but all the lock-ups are staffed with African warders. There is a permanent wardress at Francistown and another at Gaberones and if a female prisoner is admitted to one of the lock-ups, temporary wardresses are engaged. At Maun, Serowe and Gaberones there is a gaol cook; at the other prisons and lock-ups the cooking is satisfactorily done by prisoners. The average daily prison population, for all gaols was 246.72.

45 offences, not including escapes, were committed. 29 prisoners escaped, all from working parties outside the prisons; 19 of them were recaptured.

The health of the prisoners during the year was good, the daily average on the sick list being 9.5 only. There are no facilities for the education of prisoners though elementary peasant agriculture is taught on the gaol plot at Gaberones gaol.

Remission of sentences is governed by paragraphs 153–158 of the Prison Regulations (Cap. 54 of the Laws), which provide that every prisoner

serving a sentence for a period exceeding one month shall, according to his conduct and industry, be allowed an ordinary remission not exceeding one-third of his sentence. Remission can be forfeited for prison offences or generally bad behaviour.

Power is also vested in the High Commissioner to allow special remissions.

There are no approved schools or similar institutions in the Territory nor are there any arrangements for the aftercare of discharged prisoners but District Commissioners are very ready to render them any assistance possible.

CHAPTER X

PUBLIC UTILITIES AND PUBLIC WORKS

At Francistown there is an electricity supply owned and operated by the Tati Company. The Colonial Development Corporation at Lobatsi has installed a power station and supplies its own works and buildings, the hotel and a few private persons. It is hoped that it will be possible to extend the system so as to give a supply to the general public. Each Government hospital in the Territory generates its own electricity (all have X-ray apparatus) and a few residents and hotels have installed private electric plants. The Government workshop at Gaberones also has its own plant. At each district headquarters and at Palapye, Mahalapye and Ramathlabama Government provides a water supply for its own use and for its employees but it is not generally available for the public.

Apart from these services, and from the railway, telegraph and telephone system, there are no public utilities.

The work of the Public Works Department covers and includes all activities connected with :

- (a) Construction and maintenance of roads and bridges,
- (b) Construction and maintenance of buildings,
- (c) Provision and maintenance of water supplies,
- (d) Maintenance of Waterways,
- (e) Maintenance of Mechanical Transport and running of garage and central workshops,
- (f) Construction and maintenance of Aerodromes and emergency landing grounds.
- (g) Geodetic and topographical Surveys,
- (h) Town planning and development.

WATER SUPPLIES

Under Colonial Development and Welfare fund scheme D.990 the following progress is reported :

Surface Water Development consists of the construction of small stock dams and larger observation works for the supply of water to towns and the Rhodesia Railways.

During the year 1953 a total of eight stock dams were constructed, one in the Bamalete Reserve, one in the Batlokwa Reserve and six in the Bamangwato Reserve. These eight dams have a total capacity of 120 acre feet, are capable of watering 5,325 head of cattle for about half the year and a smaller number permanently. They have enabled some 350 square miles of grazing to be developed which was previously unused or only partially used. The total number of dams now constructed under this scheme amounts to 54.

Only one foreman with six tractors and ancilliary equipment was used on this work during the year to build the dams described and also to repair a dam which is an important water supply at Molepolole.

Further the construction of a water supply for the Rhodesia Railways and the Government officials at Mahalapye is now nearing completion. It has supplied several million gallons to the Rhodesia Railways since it came into partial operation at the end of September.

The above mentioned schemes were financed from Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Scheme D.990 and D.1,409 A, the latter being used to provide funds required for the Mahalapye Water Works.

A scheme financed from "Advances Railway Water Supplies" was started at Notwani in June and a considerable sum was spent on plant and wages in clearing the site and stock-piling crushed stone and sand. Unfortunately an appeal was lodged by a riparian owner on the river on which the works were being constructed and as the result of a judgment adverse to Government being given by the High Court last December, this work has had to be discontinued.

Preparations and surveys have been made for a water supply on the Inchwe River near Francistown intended to serve both the Rhodesia Railways and the town of Francistown.

COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE

SCHEME D. 678

A total of 61 boreholes were drilled during the year, of which 27 are productive. The footage drilled amounted to 14,019 feet and the yield developed amounted to 32,640 gallons an hour.

Work on underground water was continued mainly in the tribal reserves and quarantine camps but much attention was also given to the development of water along the stock export route from Ghanzi to Lobatsi.

WATERWAYS

In the N'gamiland Waterways Survey Scheme reconnaissance surveys and levelling in the field were continued during the 1953 working season and the extent of these operations, as visualized in the scheme, were completed a little ahead of schedule.

Work connected with the delivery and erection of machinery for papyrus clearing was delayed owing to the great distance involved in transport and the necessity to replace certain mechanical parts that were found to require strengthening. It also became necessary to break off from work on the machinery in order to enter the internal swamp regions to take levels during the only time of the year when access to that area is possible.

Tests on the operation of the papyrus clearing machinery were undertaken later in the year – viz. October, when it was found that although the machine was capable of performing the functions for which it was designed further modifications would be required to enable it to cope properly with some of the conditions met in N'gamiland.

As funds in addition to those provided in the scheme would be required to undertake any further alterations to the papyrus clearing machinery, the survey party returned to Mafeking in November in order to undertake work connected with the compilation of maps, drawings, etc. for the general report on the scheme. It is considered that work on the report will not be completed before March, 1954 when the scheme is scheduled to end.

BUILDINGS

Funds to a total value of £115,853 were approved for buildings during the year.

The following buildings were completed :

- Post Office, Gaberones
- New Store Accommodation, Medical Department, Mafeking
- European School at Ghanzi
- Five houses for Veterinary staff, Lobatsi
- Two houses at Gaberones
- African Housing Francistown (10 Junior type) (2 Senior type)
- Extension of 13 rooms to Mental Quarters, Lobatsi
- Three Houses at Mahalapye
- Construction of strong room for Police, Mafeking
- Extension to telephone exchange, Francistown

The following work is under construction :

- Two Houses at Gaberones
- One House at Palapye
- One House at Werda
- Abattoir, Francistown
- Veterinary Office, Serowe

Work is still proceeding on the Francistown Abattoir, which has now reached the plastering stage.

The Architect proceeded to Swaziland to assist the Administration in the preparation of plans for new public offices in Mbabane comprising Courtroom, retiring rooms and chambers for Counsel, complete new offices for the District Commissioner including Tax offices and conference room at an estimated cost of approximately £14,000. He also prepared plans for new buildings in Bremersdorp comprising a new post office, District Commissioner's offices and court at an estimated cost of £16,000 and sketch schemes for proposed alteration to Hlatikulu Hospital at an estimated cost of £20,000.

Working drawings have been prepared for :

- Additions to Residency, Ghanzi
- Additions to Post Office, Serowe
- Ante-natal Clinic, Serowe
- New Police Camp, Sandfontein
- Additions to Residency, Maun
- Additions to Administrative Office
- Additions to Veterinary Department
- Alterations at Hospital, Lobatsi
- Veterinary Office, Lobatsi.

Nine prefabricated houses have been ordered. Work on the Teachers' Training Centre under Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Scheme D.1045 has been held up owing to failure to locate an adequate borehole water supply and inability to procure an alternative surface water supply. Working drawings are complete.

CHAPTER XI

COMMUNICATIONS

RAILWAYS

The main railway line from Cape Town to the Rhodesias passes through the Protectorate entering at Ramathlabama 886 miles from Cape Town and leaving at Ramaquabane 394 miles further north. The single track line runs roughly parallel to the eastern boundary of the Protectorate at an average distance from it of about 50 miles. The railway within the Protectorate formed part of the undertakings owned and operated by the Rhodesia Railways Limited which have been transferred to a statutory body established under the laws of Southern Rhodesia and operating under the laws of the three territories of Southern Rhodesia, Northern Rhodesia and the Bechuanaland Protectorate.

ROADS, BRIDGES AND VEHICLES

The roads in the Protectorate are of earth or sand formed to shape and camber, the only exceptions being where they pass through townships and have been gravelled (and in one case tarred) for short lengths. The aggregate length of gravelling is a fraction of one per cent of the total road mileage and the roads must therefore be classified as dirt roads only. Motor vehicle registrations during the year were 477 cars, 667 commercial vehicles, 16 tractors, 11 trailers and 5 motor cycles.

The most important main roads, totalling approximately 550 miles in length are maintained by the Public Works Department. In the north of the Protectorate the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association maintains approximately 950 miles of road towards the cost of which Government contributes. District and by-roads are given as much attention as possible by District Commissioners who receive small allocations of funds to carry out essential maintenance and minor repairs.

The sum of £18,000 was voted for road maintenance for the financial year 1953-54. The first new road grader arrived in Gaberones on the 22nd October, a second has since arrived with two others due early in 1954. Unprecedented heavy summer rains caused extensive damage to the main roads throughout the Protectorate. Further late rains in April and May caused additional extensive damage.

Five stone and concrete pipe culverts have been completed between the border and Ramaquabane. Nine concrete pipe and tank culverts have been built between Jonyane and Serowe, by-passing the bad road at Kga-shwe Pan and the new road has been completed. Two culverts were completed at Mankwenyane and on the Molepolole road.

Two culverts have been widened on the Kanye road. One new culvert has been constructed in the Mahalapye area. A new low level bridge has been completed at Mogopitsane and another over the Monoka river on the Molepolole road. Work on the new bridge across the Mahalapye river will commence early in 1954.

RIVER AND LAKE TRANSPORT

There is no public service but canoe transport is used to some extent on the Okovango and Chobe Rivers.

AIR

There is a fortnightly air service between Francistown and Maun, leaving Francistown on alternate Wednesdays and returning the following day.

There are airfields at Gaberones, Mahalapye, Francistown and Maun. There are also landing grounds at Tshabong, Ghanzi and Shakawe and

emergency landing strips at Palapye, Makalamabedi, Mosetse, Odiakwe, Nata (Madsara), Kanyu, and Nokaneng. These were maintained during the year but no new construction was undertaken.

Work on the maintenance of existing aerodromes and landing grounds has continued. The new aerodrome at Serowe with one mile of clear runway has been fenced in and relief drains have been dug. The flightway to the north-east has been cleared to make the drome' suitable for any type of aircraft. A landing strip at Molepolole has been completed and the Lobatsi strip will be fenced in early in 1954. Mahalapye and Gaberones aerodromes are in good condition and a portion of the Maun aerodrome is being gravelled to accommodate Dakotas.

POSTS AND TELEGRAPHS AND WIRELESS COMMUNICATIONS

The main centres of population adjacent to the railway line are connected to the South African and Southern Rhodesian telegraph system. Lines north of Lobatsi are operated by the Southern Rhodesia Government and those south of that town by the Union Government.

There is an extensive wireless service in the Protectorate. The first installations were erected in 1935 and the system was originally intended only for official administrative communication with stations remote from the telegraph line. Public demand, however, soon made it necessary to accept telegrams from the public for transmission over the system, which is now linked with the telegraph services of the Union and Southern Rhodesia through the Government wireless network controlled from Mafeking. Some years later a Police wireless system was established and though this is primarily for the transmission of Police and other official messages, telegrams from the public are accepted at those stations at which there is no other form of telegraphic communication. Altogether there are 34 stations 21 of which are owned by Government and are controlled by the Commissioner of Police, 6 are owned by the Colonial Development Corporation, 5 by the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association, 1 by the Bamangwato College at Moeng and 1 by the Chobe Timber Concessions at Serondella.

There are 8 post offices in the Territory at Francistown, Palapye, Serowe, Mahalapye, Gaberones, Lobatsi, Kanye and Maun at which money order and saving bank business is transacted. In addition there are 27 postal agencies at the smaller centres.

CHAPTER XII

PRESS, BROADCASTING FILMS AND GOVERNMENT INFORMATION SERVICES

No newspapers are published in the Protectorate. South African newspapers circulate and there is an African paper "Naledi ya Batswana" published in Johannesburg in Tswana which enjoys a limited circulation among the better educated Africans. Government articles on matters of general interest appear regularly in this publication.

The Government wireless station in Mafeking in addition to providing the link between the Protectorate wireless system and the South Africa and Southern Rhodesian telegraphs systems, broadcasts light musical programmes twice a day by arrangement with the South African Broadcasting Corporation.

There are no cinemas in the Protectorate though in the larger centres an occasional film is shown in a local hall or hotel. There is a Government owned mobile cinema van which makes tours approximately every two months during which it gives from 20 to 25 entertainments to audiences which average 1,000 people. The films are mainly educational and of general interest with a certain amount of fiction.

There is no information service but the Government Secretary and Heads of Departments issue monthly news letters to officials suitable portions of which are conveyed to the public.

CHAPTER XIII

LOCAL FORCES

There are none.

PART III

CHAPTER I

GEOGRAPHY AND CLIMATE

The Territory of the Bechuanaland Protectorate is bounded on the south and east by the western boundary of the Union of South Africa, which follows the Notwani, Marico and Crocodile or Limpopo rivers, on the north-east by Southern Rhodesia and on the north and on the west by the Caprivi Zipfel and by the Territory of South West Africa, with the Kalahari desert extending over most of the western areas west and south of N'gamiland as far as latitude 27 degrees. This is not a desert in the commonly accepted sense of the word, but consists of vast expanses of undulating sand-belts with out-crops of lime-stone here and there. Large areas are wooded like park lands studded with camelthorn and other indigenous trees. In the limestone belts water is sometimes found at depths from 30 to 100 feet so that it is possible that under the deep over-burden of sand there may exist untapped reservoirs of water. The northern and south-western corners of the Kalahari have the least vegetation and most sand dunes but elsewhere the grasses are excellent, and this is the natural habitat of the true aboriginal bushmen who lead a primitive nomadic existence, living chiefly on the flesh of game shot with poisoned arrows, supplementing this with wild fruits and roots.

The Protectorate has not been surveyed as a whole but its area is estimated at 275,000 square miles. The mean altitude is about 3,300 feet.

There is beautiful scenery in the north-western part of the Protectorate, in the Okovango delta into which the great Okovango River, flowing inland from the north-west, benevolently pours its flood waters, which, in seasons of heavy rainfall, flow as far south-east as the Makarikari salt lake and south and south-west into Lake Ngami. The Chobe area is also notable for its scenic beauty especially along the Chobe river, which flows into the Zambesi 60 miles west of the Victoria Falls.

The eastern portion of the country also has some fine hill scenery. The remainder, though it appears at first sight to be very flat, is in reality undulating and is rich in grasses, shrubs and trees. The south-eastern half is similar to the bushveld of the northern Transvaal. There are occasional outcrops of limestone and the surface is generally sandy and, except where boreholes and dams have been established, waterless. Old and well defined river courses which now-a-days flow only during the annual rains, indicate,

however, that at one time the country was well watered, as is still the case north and north-east of Lake Ngami. In certain areas elsewhere good underground waters exist and are being developed as funds permit.

The Protectorate as a whole is a natural game reserve for most species of the fauna and Government policy is aimed at their preservation.

CLIMATE

The climate of the country, on the whole, is sub-tropical, but varies with latitude and altitude.

Latitude 22 degrees South passes through the centre of the country, and the northern areas of the Protectorate accordingly lie within the tropics.

The average rainfall in the Territory is 18 inches, but this varies from 25 inches in the north to 9 inches or less in the western Kalahari.

By far the greatest area of the more populated portion of the Protectorate lies within an extensive saucerlike depression having an altitude of 3,000 feet bounded by higher ground at the extreme south (Hildavale) and the north-east (Southern Rhodesia) where the altitudes are over 4,000 feet. There are also elevations at Kanye, Serowe and Ghanzi of 4,000 to 5000 feet.

The climate of the higher parts of the Territory is sub-tropical, varying to temperate. During the winter the days are pleasantly warm and the nights cold, with occasional frosts. The summer is hot but relief is sometimes obtained by a prevailing north-east breeze which generally springs up in the early part of the night. In the more lowlying parts during the winter, lasting from the beginning of May to the middle of August, it is pleasantly warm by day and comfortably cool at night, but in summer, which commences properly in October, the days are very hot and the nights uncomfortably warm. In August, as a rule, the annual seasonal winds from the west coast commence and, dessicated by the sand of the Kalahari, they resemble a "Simoon" and often continue until the equinox in September, sweeping across the whole country and carrying volumes of sand and dust.

The atmosphere throughout the year is very dry and this helps to mitigate the high temperatures, though to Europeans this dryness and strong sunlight week after week, without clouds to soften it, has the effect of producing nervous irritability, particularly in Europeans whose occupation is sedentary and does not permit of enough outdoor life.

If the necessary precautions are taken to guard against malaria, which is universal in the low-lying areas of the Territory, and provided sufficient outdoor exercise is taken, the climate is well suited to Europeans and their families.

Only four towns have a population of over 10,000; they are Kanye 23,000; Serowe 16,000; Molepolole 15,000; and Mochudi 12,000.

CHAPTER II

HISTORY

The picture presented by Southern Africa in the first quarter of the 19th century, north of the narrow strip which then comprised the extent of the European settlement, was a dismal one of savage tribal wars, pillage and bloodshed. The primary cause of these conditions was the expansion of the Zulus who, under Chaka, a military genius who had created out of a comparatively insignificant people a disciplined and warlike nation, waged incessant and merciless war on those people unfortunate enough to be within their reach. These activities, like a stone thrown into a pond, created waves far beyond the impact of Zulu warriors. In order to escape the Zulus, tribes on their borders fled to all points of the compass, despoiling on their way the tribes in their path and thereby setting up a general movement of destructive migration.

The most ferocious of these predatory bands were the followers of an amazon called Mma-Ntatisi and her son Sekonyela. These marauders – part refugees and part banditti – came from tribes living in the neighbourhood of what is now Basutoland. They banded themselves together into some sort of cohesive army and advanced northwards and westwards, harrying and destroying everything that stood in their way.

In a different category were the Matebele. These were originally a group of Chaka's people under Mzilikazi, one of Chaka's principal captains. On one of his raids Mzilikazi embezzled the booty and deemed it prudent not to return home. He moved north-westwards and, after a destructive march, established himself in the neighbourhood of what is now Zeerust, where he conducted bloody and profitable raids in systematic fashion on the tribes within his reach. The forays of Chaka's disciplined and merciless impis, the wholesale pillage of the hordes of Mma-Ntatisi, the murderous exodus of the Matebele as well as endless migrations by other less important tribes, themselves torn by internecine quarrels, had reduced the country to a pitiable state of misery and confusion. Yet it was at this time, in 1820, that Robert Moffat of London Missionary Society, undaunted by the dangers of such an undertaking, established his mission at Kuruman in the country later to become British Bechuana land, and now incorporated in the Cape Province of the Union of South Africa.

Among the people most conveniently situated to receive Mzilikazi's onslaughts were those known as Bechuana, of Sotho stock – and hence related to the people of what is now Basutoland, and to several other tribes – who lived in the western Transvaal and westwards towards the

Kalahari. Like other Basuto people their early history is shrouded in legend.

As regards the principal tribes of the group the generally accepted tradition is that they are descended from a people ruled by a chief named Masilo who may have lived about the middle of the 17th century. Masilo had two sons, Mohurutshe and Malope. The former founded the line of the chiefs of the Bahurutshe¹, while the latter had three sons, Kwena, Ngwato and Ngwaketse. Ngwato and Ngwaketse at different times broke away from Kwena's tribe and went with their followers to live at a distance from each other. The Bahurutshe were set upon first by Mma-Ntatisi's horde and then by the Matebele. The home of this tribe is in the western Transvaal but scattered elements have attached themselves to the present ruling tribes of the Protectorate. A small group maintains some sort of independent existence near Francistown. The Bangwaketse, after several migrations, finally settled in their present country around Kanyo while the Bamangwato founded a colony in the vicinity of Shoshong in the country occupied by the tribe to-day. The descendants of the Kwena section now live around Molepolole. Among the Bamangwato a further split occurred : Tawana, one of Chief Mathiba's sons, seceded at the end of the eighteenth century, and formed a new settlement in N'gamiland. The Batawana are still the ruling community in that area. Other important tribes of the Bechuana are the Bakgatla, the Bamalete and the Batlokwa. These are fairly recent immigrants into the Protectorate from the western Transvaal having arrived here in the nineteenth century. The Barolong, the greater number of whom to-day live in the Union, trace the genealogy of their chiefs to one Rolong, who lived at a time even more remote than did Masilo. The Barolong are settled along the southern border of the Protectorate and round Mafeking.

Soon after Moffat's arrival the existence of the tribe and of the mission was threatened by a horde of Bahlakwana and Maphuting, Sotho marauders from the east like the followers of Mma-Ntatisi, and set in motion by the same causes. Moffat acted with much vigour and enlisted the help of the Griqua half-casts who lived about 100 miles to the south of his station. These came to his aid and inflicted much execution on the invaders who had by then outrun their supplies and were not used to firearms. In the following year Moffat obtained an extraordinary ascendancy over Mzilikazi and, though the Matebele ceaselessly and mercilessly raided the unhappy Bechuana tribes to the north, (among the worst sufferers being the Bakwena) the Mission at Kuruman and the peoples in its immediate surroundings remained inviolate.

The 50 years between 1820 and 1870 were periods of chaos and anarchy, of internecine quarrels and struggles which it would be tedious to recapitulate in detail. Internal and inter-tribal difficulties were complicated by the impact on these borders of the Boer trekkers. To the latter, however, belongs the credit of ridding the immediate neighbourhood of the Mate-

¹ It will be noted that each tribe takes the name of its titular founder with a suitable modification of the prefix.

bele; after several engagements with the Boer, disastrous for his tribe, Mzilikazi removed himself northwards in 1838, preying whenever he got the chance on the weaker people on the way, Bechuanaland and Makalanga. To these tactics few of the Bechuana chiefs made effective resistance with the exception of chief Sekgoma of the Bamangwato who was made of sterner stuff than the rest, and who in 1840 inflicted several minor reverses on Matebele raiding parties. In the meantime David Livingstone who had married Robert Moffat's daughter, Mary, established a mission among the Bakwena where he stayed until the early fifties.

In 1872 there acceded to the chieftainship of the Bamangwato (descendants, it will be remembered, of the adherents of Ngwato, son of Malope) the most remarkable African of his time and possibly one of the most remarkable of any time. This was Khama III, the son of Sekgoma I. His youth had been troubled by dissensions within the tribe and by the ever present peril of the Matebele. During the first few years of his reign he much enhanced the standing of his tribe until the Bamangwato were amongst the most prominent of the people of this part of Africa. He was no mean strategist, had a well trained and well equipped little army and earned the respect of Lobengula, son of Mzilikazi, and with it some assurance of immunity from the depredations of that potentate. A lifelong and rigid adherent of Christianity, he introduced numbers of reforms into the life of the tribe, one of the most important, and the one on which Khama himself set most store, being the total prohibition of alcoholic liquor. No detail of tribal administration escaped his attention and he devoted himself with energy and singleness of purpose to the uplifting of his people. Though the weaker tribes still had to submit to the ravages of Lobengula's Matebele, by the middle 'seventies' there was some stability and order in the life of these regions, and the Bamangwato, under Khama's domination, and for that matter the other Bechuana tribes, enjoyed conditions less turbulent and chaotic than at any other time earlier in the century.

It was at this time, however, that the Bechuana began to feel the effect of forces that were entirely to alter their lives and to remould their destinies. Hitherto they had seen little of the white man. A few traders and hunters had indeed penetrated into their territories but these expeditions had been few and far between and, except at large centres like Shoshong, no permanent relations had been established. The only Europeans who had lived among them were the missionaries, men like Moffat and Livingstone and that remarkable missionary-administrator, MacKenzie. Now began the exploration of Africa, the division of the continent among the nations and the exploitation of its resources. Embittered relations between the Boers from the Transvaal and the Bechuana tribesmen (particularly the Barolong and the Bathaping) prompted the latter to address appeals for assistance to the Cape authorities while Khama, shortly after his accession, made representations to the High Commissioner that his country be taken under British protection. These appeals were powerfully seconded by Cecil Rhodes, who appreciated the importance of Bechuanaland as the "Suez Canal to the North" and was determined to keep it open

for the furtherance of his plans for the occupation and development of the land beyond the Limpopo. But the British Government showed no anxiety to assume such new responsibilities and it was not until 1884 that the Home Government sent the Missionary John MacKenzie to these territories as Deputy Commissioner. Finally in 1885 Sir Charles Warren, with the concurrence of Khama and the other principal chiefs, proclaimed the whole of Bechuanaland to be under the protection of Her Majesty the Queen. The southern part of the Territory, which included Mafeking, Vryburg and Kuruman, was later constituted a Crown Colony and eventually became part of the Cape Colony. It is now in the Cape Province of the Union of South Africa and is known as Bechuanaland and some times as British Bechuanaland. The northern part, thenceforward known as the Bechuanaland Protectorate, which stretches as far north as the Zambesi river, has remained to this day under the protection of the British Crown.

Meanwhile British expansion northwards continued and, with the occupation of what is now Southern Rhodesia, Rhodes' description of Bechuanaland as the "Suez Canal to the North" was fully justified.

In 1895 the British Government showed itself in favour of handing over the Administration of the Protectorate to the British South Africa Company. Chiefs Khama of the Bamangwato, Bathoen of the Bangwaketse and Sebele of the Bakwena went to England to protest against the suggested transfer and an agreement was reached that if they gave up a strip of land on the eastern side of the Protectorate for the construction of a railway (through which the railway runs to-day) they should remain, as they desired, under the protection of the British Crown.

So began the modern era in the Protectorate. The country is administered by a Resident Commissioner who lives in Mafeking and is responsible to the High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland (formerly styled the High Commissioner for South Africa). In the areas reserved for the occupation of their tribes the chiefs exercise a large measure of independent administration, with the advice of District Commissioners and technical officers of the Central Government.

Khama died in 1923. The Native Authority of the tribe is Rasebolai, the grandson of Khama's younger brother, Kgamane. The tribal capital is at Serowe. Bathoen of the Bangwaketse and Kgari of the Bakwena are grandsons respectively of chiefs Bathoen and Sebele who visited England in 1895.

Of the other descendants of Masilo, Moremi III, chief of the Batawana of N'gamiland and descendant of Tawana, son of Mathiba, died in 1946, while the chiefly line of the Bahurutshe, if indeed it is represented at all, has no political importance in the Protectorate though this tribe is generally respected as the senior among the tribes of the Bechuana.

CHAPTER III

ADMINISTRATION

The constitutional position in the Bechuanaland Protectorate is governed by various Orders in Council and Proclamations, of which the most important is the Order in Council of Her Majesty Queen Victoria dated the 9th May, 1891. That Order in Council empowered the High Commissioner to exercise on Her Majesty's behalf all the powers and jurisdiction which Her Majesty at any time before or after the date of the Order had or might have within the Protectorate and to that end empowered him further to take or cause to be taken such measures and to do or cause to be done all such matters and things within the Protectorate as are lawful and as in the interest of Her Majesty's Service he might think expedient, subject to such instructions as he might from time to time receive from Her Majesty or through a Secretary of State.

Other provisions of the Order in Council empowered the High Commissioner :

- (1) to appoint administrative and judicial officers and to assign their functions to them subject to the preservation of his own powers and authorities in their entirety ; and
- (2) to provide by proclamation from time to time for the administration of justice, the raising of revenue and generally for the peace, order and good government of all persons within the Protectorate including the prohibition and punishment of acts tending to disturb the public peace.

In issuing this proclamation the High Commissioner was instructed by the Order in Council to respect any native laws and customs by which the civil relations of any native Chiefs, tribes or population under Her Majesty's protection were at that time (*viz.* in May, 1891) regulated, except in so far as the same might be incompatible with the due exercise of Her Majesty's power and jurisdiction or which were repugnant to humanity.

The Order in Council required the High Commissioner to publish his proclamations in the Gazette and reserved to Her Majesty the right to disallow any such Proclamations. The Order in Council provided also that, subject to any proclamation lawfully issued by the High Commissioner, any jurisdiction exercisable otherwise than under this Order in Council of 1891, whether by virtue of any Statute or Order in Council or of any treaty, or otherwise, should remain in full force.

Her Majesty reserved the power to revoke, alter, add to or amend this Order in Council at any time.

All references to Her Majesty in the Order in Council were declared by it to include Her Majesty's Heirs and Successors.

The Protectorate is administered by a Resident Commissioner under the direction of the High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland (formerly styled the High Commissioner for South Africa).

The Territory comprises Crown Lands, European Blocks of farms, and Native Reserves and is divided, for administrative purposes, into the following districts, under District Commissioners who are assisted by a force of police :

N'gamiland (including the Batawana Reserve) Headquarters at Maun.
Ngwato (including the Bamangwato Reserve and some Crown Lands)
and the Tuli Block – Headquarters at Serowe.

Gaberones (including the Gaberones Block and the Batlokwa and Bamalete Reserves) Headquarters at Gaberones.

Francistown (including the Tati Concession and some Crown Lands)
Headquarters at Francistown.

Kgatlang (Bakgatla Reserve) Headquarters at Mochudi.

Kweneng (Bakwena Reserve) Headquarters at Molepolole.

Ngwaketse (Bangwaketse Reserve) Headquarters at Kanye.

Lobatsi (including the Lobatsi Block, the Barolong Farms Native Reserve
and some Crown Lands) Headquarters at Lobatsi.

Kgalagadi (Crown Lands) Headquarters at Tshabong.

Ghanzi (Ghanzi Farms and Crown Lands) Headquarters at Ghanzi.

Kasane (Crown Lands) Headquarters at Kasane.

In the native areas the method of administration is that generally known as "indirect rule". Native Administrations were formerly established and the powers and rights of Native Authorities were defined in the Native Administration and Native Courts Proclamations, Chapters 56 and 5 of the Laws of the Bechuanaland Protectorate. In 1938 Native Treasuries were successfully established in 8 out of 9 Native Reserves, and a Treasury was established in the ninth in 1951. Government pays 35 per cent of each Native Administration's collection of Native Tax to the Tribal Treasury concerned ; other sources of revenue are tribal levies, rates and stand-rents in addition to graded tax.

In the preparation of estimates and the general management of their treasuries the chiefs and finance committees, under the guidance of District Commissioners, display an intelligent and keen appreciation of their responsibilities.

There is an African Advisory Council which meets once a year under the presidency of the Resident Commissioner, and this is attended by the Chief and tribal representatives from the various Native Reserves and non-tribal areas.

A European Advisory Council meets under the presidency of the Resident Commissioner, usually twice a year. There are eight members who are elected to represent the interests of the European residents in the eight electoral areas into which the Protectorate is divided.

A Joint Advisory Council, consisting of the eight members of the European Advisory Council and eight members from the African Advisory Council meets twice a year.

CHAPTER IV

WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

The weights and measures in use in the Bechuanaland Protectorate are those which are in use in the Union of South Africa.

CHAPTER V

READING LIST

- DORNAN, S. S. *Pygmies and Bushmen of the Kalahari*. Seeley Service, London : 1925.
- LIVINGSTONE, D. *Missionary Travels and Researches*. 1895.
- MOLEMA, S. M. *The Bantu Past and Present*. An Ethnological and Historical Study of the Native Races of South Africa. W. Green and Sons, Ltd.
- *Chief Moroka*. His Life, His Times, His Country and His People. Methodist Publishing House, Cape Town.
- POLE EVANS, I. B. *A Reconnaissance Trip through the Eastern Portion of the Bechuanaland Protectorate and an Expedition to N'gamiland*. Government Printer, Pretoria : 1948.
- PERHAM, M. & CURTIS L. *The Protectorates of South Africa*. (The question of their transfer to the Union.) Oxford University Press, Humphrey Milford : 1953.
- SCHAPER, I. *The Bantu Speaking Tribes of South Africa*. George Routledge & Sons, Ltd., London. Maskew Miller Ltd., Cape Town : 1937.
- *A Handbook of Tswana Law and Custom*. Oxford University Press : 1939.

- *Migrant Labour and Tribal Life*. Oxford University Press: 1947.
- *Married Life in an African Tribe*. Faber and Faber, London : 1940. 364 pp.
- *Native Land Tenure in the Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Loveday Press : 1943. xiv + 283 pp.

SILLERY, A. *The Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Oxford University Press : 1952.

Statement of Colonial Development and Welfare Grants as at 31st March, 1963

COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE GRANTS

65

Scheme	II		III		IV		V		VI		VII		VIII		IX	
	Due to C. D. & W. Fund at 1.1.1952		Due from C. D. & W. Fund at 1.1.1952		Receipts 1952-1953		Repayments to C. D. & W. Fund 1952-53		Credited to C. D. & W. Revenue 1952-1953		Debited to C. D. & W. Expenditure 1952-1953		Due to C. D. & W. Fund at 31.3.1953		Due from C. D. & W. Fund at 31.3.1953	
	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.
D.678 Water Development	1590	15 8			32747	0 0			29315	13 0	5022	2 8				
D.679 Extension of Livestock and Agricultural Services	1430	0 2			3233	0 0			4225	17 2	437	3 0				
D.680 and 680A Development of African Agriculture			4 3 6						1799	13 2	380	6 10				
D.681 and 681A Control of Tsetse Fly	2116	7 4			6555	0 0	360 3 3		8622	16 9	48	10 7				
D.682 Experimental Projects in African Agriculture	172	10 1							58	19 11	113	10 2				
D.940C Geological Survey	7839	10 7			8985	0 0			16824	10 7	17391	15 3			567	4 8
D.990 Surface Water Development			215 13 1		24128	0 0	9 10 0		22312	12 9	22096	19 8	1824	17 3		
D.1036 Erection of Bridges	1856	1 0			2044	0 0			3900	1 0	4228	0 10			327	19 10
D.1037 Development of Medical Services	1511	8 10			5843	0 0			6724	0 4	6724	0 4	630	8 6		
D.1044 Equipment Workshops	536	7 5							126	1 3	126	1 3	410	6 2		
D.1045, 1045A and 1045B Development of Education	1969	11 4			12090	0 0	17 5 8		13881	17 1	13951	19 10	177	14 3		
D.1180 and 1180A Topographical Survey		5 7			1700	0 0	#		1700	5 7	1996	4 9			295	19 2
D.1409 and 1409A Water Development	1617	9 4			5413	0 0			5317	18 7	5317	18 7	1712	10 9		
D.1412 Ngamiland Waterways	1374	5 8			10801	0 0			12175	5 8	13126	10 2			951	4 6
D.1463 Water Development	401	4 2					1 1 8						402	5 10		
D.1539 and 1539A Aerial Survey			14 9 2				28 11 1		14	9 2			14	1 1		
D.1679 Scholarship S. Mo-dise					250	0 0			250	0 0	250	0 0				
D.1805 Foot and Mouth Disease Control					52457	0 0	18209 8 0		52457	0 0	71750	1 3			1083	13 3
	22415	17 2	2234 5 9		168426	0 0	18679 19 8		179707	2 0	201338	11 8	11173	17 11	3226	1 5

APPENDIX II

REPORT ON THE PROGRESS OF
COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND
WELFARE FUND SCHEMES

TO 30TH SEPTEMBER, 1953

1. *Schemes D. 940, 940A and 940B - Geological Survey*

Staff: One appointment to the post of Geologist has been made recently, but vacancies still exist for a Director and another Geologist. Two extra Drill Foremen have been engaged and the Department has now three drilling rigs in operation as compared with only one in previous years.

Underground Water: Extensive resistivity surveys have been carried out on behalf of the South African Railways in connection with a boring programme along the railway line. Requests for assistance in the choice of borehole sites from the Public Works Department have been met wherever possible. Work was done on the south-central and western Kalahari region, where water supplies are required for a proposed cattle route from Ghanzi. Geophysical investigations and chemical analyses showed that the electrical resistivity method could be used to differentiate areas likely to yield saline waters from those in which fresh water supplies can be expected.

In connection with the chemical analysis of water supplies, a special sampling device was designed and constructed by means of which a water-sample can be taken from any desired level in a borehole. Its use showed that there may be considerable variation of salinity through the length of a column of water standing in a borehole.

Waters found in Kalahari formations, Karroo and marginal Karroo strata, have been classified on the basis of their chemical composition.

Further extensive water investigations were made in the granite area at Gaberones where location of water supplies has always presented difficulties.

Other investigations using geophysical methods: "Depth probe" measurements were carried out along the line selected for boring in the Foley-

Mookane coal area, with the object of finding the depth to the Middle Ecca sandstones below the coal-bearing beds. It was found in this case that the results were incompatible with the subsequent borehole logs.

Self-potential methods were used in the investigation of reported copper occurrences at Magogaphate in the eastern Bamangwato Reserve.

A magnetometer and an electromagnetic instrument are to be added to the Department's geophysical equipment. They will primarily be used in the further investigation of the old Bushman Copper mine northwest of Francistown, of which intensive examination has lately been re-commenced.

Radiometric Survey: The radiometric survey of the Territory arranged by the Atomic Energy Division of the Geological Survey of Great Britain was begun during June.

Coal: Exploratory drilling was continued during the year. In the area west of Foley Siding, four core-boreholes, totalling 1,541 feet were completed and logged in detail. Coal seam sampling was carried out according to standard practice and thirteen proximate analyses were made for the Department by the Fuel Research Institute, Pretoria. The seams intersected are relatively thin, and the analyses indicate that they are of low grade non-coking gas coal. The above drilling was preceded by the sinking of a water borehole to supply the drilling machine.

It is of interest to note that a semi-artesian supply was encountered at 300 ft. in the Ecca grits below the coals and mudstones. The water was decidedly brackish, but suitable for drilling purposes.

The Foley coals proved to be of quality inferior to what had been expected from general considerations.

Mineral Prospects Examined: Four discrete mineral prospects were examined and reported on during the year.

At Tshukutswane in the Bamangwato Reserve a fluorspar occurrence was investigated. Fluorite-galena-chalcopryrite-sphalerite mineralization was found. It was concluded that the occurrence was of sub-economic importance in view of the limited ore reserves and the necessity of treatment of produce material conforming to specification. The presence of cadmium in the zinc sulphide is of interest.

Hydromuscovite discovered during water-boring operations in the Kanye district and found on investigation to be the product of decomposition in situ of Dominion Reef tuffs, was shown to be too impure to warrant further work.

The copper occurrences at Magogaphate in the eastern Bamangwato Reserve are being investigated. They were previously mapped and examined during the 1950 field season. The mineralization is disseminated secondary copper ores, chiefly malachite, in rocks belonging to the Basement Complex. Extensive ancient workings are to be found in the area. Samples have been taken from exposures and drilling on the basis of geophysical results is to be commenced shortly.

The iron ore occurrence at Maipithlwane is still under investigation. Two trenches have been dug across the narrow, ridge-like outcrop of the ore and samples taken. Preliminary work has included an astrofix and azimuth determination. As mentioned earlier, intensive investigations are being made at the old Bushman Copper mine. As a basis for these operations the area has been aerielly photographed by the Aircraft Operating Company. Photographs at the enlargement scale of 10,000 are now available. Magnetic and electromagnetic geophysical methods are to be employed, and two drilling machines are currently commencing boring operations.

Laboratory work: Borehole sample identification has been continued during the period under review, the information gained therefrom being of invaluable use in the assessment of the distribution of the various geological formations where these are concealed by surface cover. Information on water yields will ultimately permit a statistical comparison of the different formations in this respect.

Samples have been identified for members of the public and others. This has included assays and chemical analyses of boiler feed water and boiler sludge for local concerns.

An interim Report of the potentialities of the Kalahari sands as glass making material has been prepared.

The following qualitative chemical analyses were made in connection with mineral and water investigations :

Mineral analyses	1
Ore analyses	7
Water analyses	25
Assays	2

In connection with the examination of mineral prospects microscopical work both on thin sections and polished surfaces has been undertaken.

Rhodes Exhibition: The Department provided an exhibit of drawing and specimens, for the Rhodes Centenary Exhibition at Bulawayo in Southern Rhodesia. This was designed to emphasise the economic features of the geology of the Protectorate.

Publications: The following papers were presented¹ at the meeting of the Association of African Geological Surveys during the Algiers Session of the International Geological Congress :

“An Outline of the Geology of the Bechuanaland Protectorate”, by A. Poldervaart and D. Green.

“The Gaberones Granite”, by A. Poldervaart.

“Coal in the Bechuanaland Protectorate,” by D. Green and A. Poldervaart

¹ By Dr. Frank Dixey on behalf of the authors. (*Vide La Chronique des Mines Coloniales*, No. 197, November, 1952.)

The last of these, by courtesy of the Secretary (M. F. Blondel) is published in Vol. 3, No. 4 of 1953 of Colonial Geology and Mineral Resources.

2. Scheme D. 678: Underground Water Development:

48 boreholes were completed, of which 14 proved productive. The total footage drilled was 13,044 feet and the number of gallons of water developed per hour was 16,360. Throughout a large portion of the year two of the rigs have been working in very arid regions at a considerable distance from their headquarters, and this explains the rather disappointing results obtained. On comparing this year's figures with last year's records it is found that although a reduced number of holes was drilled, the footage penetrated was appreciably more. Unfortunately the yield has proved less. Eight boreholes were equipped with Bezuidenhout Animal Gear Pumps, 22 with close-coupled Steyn pumpheads and pump cylinder and foot valve, includes Makalamabedi Quarantine Camp, 6 with hand pumps and 3 with windmills.

3. Scheme D. 1037: Development of Medical Services

Buildings. No work was done during the year under review but it is hoped to complete a new dispensary unit at Gaberones during the coming year at a cost of £3,500 under the revised scheme.

Ambulances. A new ambulance was purchased during the year at a cost of £1,111 as compared with the original estimate of £600 per vehicle. This ambulance is in use at the Lobatsi Hospital.

Tuberculosis Survey. This survey began early in September 1952 and was completed in December 1952. Technical assistance and a Mobile X-Ray Unit were loaned by the Union Department of Health.

The total number of x-rays taken was 21,270. In addition tuberculin testing of approximately the same number of people was done. A full report on the results of the survey is being included in the 1952 departmental annual report.

Government has accepted financial responsibility for the provision of modern drugs and antibiotics for the treatment of tuberculosis in Missions as well as in Government hospitals. Every endeavour is being made to admit to hospital for treatment as many patients as bed accommodation will permit and to treat others in their homes.

Bilharzia. Apart from the purchase of drugs for the treatment of cases, no other work was done during the year.

Mosquito and insect control. This allocation was used for the purchase of insecticides used in the prevention of malaria, plague and relapsing fever.

Public Health Propaganda. One still film projector was purchased for each of the four Government hospitals. In addition a library of educational films is being built up for the teaching of African auxiliary medical staff. This method of visual training has proved a great success, and at present the library consists of forty films.

Staff. The salaries of one European Health Inspector, one African Sanitary Inspector and casual labour in connection with the tuberculosis survey were paid from Colonial Development and Welfare funds.

Travelling expenses. This money was used for the maintenance of ambulances and other vehicles originally purchased from Colonial Development and Welfare funds.

The scheme at present in force is as revised in S. of S.'s savingram 250 of 24.7.53. Recently – savingram 11864 II of 11th August 1953 – £1,800 has been diverted from Bilharzia towards assistance with a new Extra-venereal Treponematoses Campaign to be organized in conjunction with World Health Organization, UNICEF and the South African Institute of Medical Research. This scheme is now Colonial Development and Welfare Scheme D. 2014.

Schemes D.1045 and D.1045B: Development of Education

Lobatsi European School (Buildings and equipment) £3,500. This school was completed almost three years ago at a cost of over £8,500, the balance of expenditure being met by Government and community. It is an excellent school.

Ghanzi European School, £12,450. The small isolated community provided £2,000 for equipment. This boarding school is completed and occupied. Government meets recurrent costs. Parents pay fees and the local residents contribute generously in kind. (As a result partly of increased railage costs there was an over spending of £2,140 on this project which was sanctioned in S. of S.'s savingram 14 of 14.1.54.)

Kanye Teacher Training College. As a result of delay in building this College estimated costs have increased by a further £5,500 to a total of £36,000. Delay resulted from a variety of causes, chiefly failure to find water at selected sites.

Application has been made for a free grant of an additional sum of £6,640 to cover part of £2,140 over-spending on the Ghanzi European School and the increased estimated cost of £5,500 under Kanye Teacher Training College. The remaining £1,000 will be found from savings under the recurrent items.

Agricultural and Homecrafts Education. The Agricultural Education Officer retired in 1951 and was replaced in September 1952 by an Educa-

tion officer. The Homecrafts Education Officer resigned in October 1952, and no replacement has been found. The distribution of garden seeds and tools and the issue of sewing materials has continued from Headquarters. A saving of £1,000 resultant on the curtailment of these activities may be transferred to Capital Expenditure.

Welfare. Youth movements have profited considerably by the impetus given by the employment of a Welfare Officer part of whose duties it is to organize such activities. The mobile cinema financed under this item has proved of both educational and vocational value. A new unit has been purchased from Government funds. The Welfare Officer and the Cinema Unit are now paid by Government, this item under the Scheme having terminated in March, 1953.

African Vocational Bursaries. Approximately 150 Bechuanaland Protectorate students received vocational training under this scheme which also terminated in March, 1953.

Scheme D.1036 – Erection of Bridges

During the period under review, good progress has been made on the erection of bridges, culverts, cement and stone causeways.

Two tank and pipe culverts at Nojane, six stone and pipe and concrete and pipe culverts have been completed on the Serowe – Palapye main road.

Two stone packed causeways and one pipe culvert were completed near Seruli and 4 concrete pipe and stone bridges on the main road between Tsesebe and the Southern Rhodesian border on the main road have been completed.

On the Molepolole – Gaberones road, a low level bridge over the Monoka river, and a drum culvert bridge over the Mankwenyane drift has been completed and work is in progress on the low level bridge over the Mogopitsane river.

Work on widening bridges on the Kanye – Lobatsi road is in progress.

Schemes D. 990, D.1409 and 1409A Part B – Surface Water Development

Scheme D.990 consists essentially of two operations, the construction of stock watering dams and the construction of various schemes. During the period under review one unit with mechanical plant and a force of between fifteen and twenty labourers, under one foreman has been constructing dams, while another foreman with assistant foremen, artisans, and from 70 to 120 labourers has been constructing the water supply at Mahalapye. The foreman and plant engaged under Scheme D.1409 and 1409 Part B, has been assisting on the Mahalapye scheme.

The dam construction unit built six dams during the year, one in the Bamaletse Reserve, one in the Batlokwa Reserve and four in the Bama-ngwato Reserve. A total of 17,000 cubic yards of earth was moved, to form

a total storage capacity of 90 acre feet, and capable of watering 4,000 head of large stock. These dams in most instances are constructed in areas remote from existing water supplies where grazing is good.

The Mahalapye Water Supply is progressing favourably and started supplying water to the Railways and the government houses at the end of September. The delay in operating the scheme was caused by the late delivery of an essential part of the pumping plant.

Scheme D.679: Livestock and Agricultural Development

A. Veterinary. The school has been designed and is on order. It is a prefabricated building. The plan includes two dormitories sufficiently large to take 12 beds, a dining/recreation room, kitchen, classroom and ablutions and latrines.

The posts of Veterinary Officer and Livestock Officer remained filled. These officers continue to work as part of the departmental staff. There is no provision for African Staff in the revised estimates.

The farm at Ramathlabama has been fenced and paddocks made. Plans are being drawn up for buildings. Ploughing of arable land is now being carried out. Six government Afrikaner cattle are at present on the farm. A Livestock Officer was posted to the farm after the house had been renovated.

B. Agriculture. This Scheme which began in 1946, provides £74,215 for the improvement of field and animal husbandry by the provision of additional staff.

Difficulty was experienced in filling the vacancy caused by the resignation of the Agricultural Officer on the 31st August, 1952. The vacant post was filled in August, 1953, by an appointment from England.

The two Agricultural and Livestock Officers appointed under this Scheme operated in the Bakgatla and Bamalete reserves mainly in conjunction with the work of the African staff under Scheme D. 680.

The staff provided for, namely one Agricultural Officer, two Agricultural and Livestock Officers, one African Clerk and three African Messengers is now up to full strength.

An application for the use of the unexpended balance of this Scheme for extension of Scheme D.680 was approved in July, 1953.

Scheme D.680: Development of African Agriculture

This Scheme which started in 1946, provides for the expenditure of £26,995 for the development of African Agriculture.

The Scheme which is used for the employment of African Agricultural Demonstrators continues to operate satisfactorily and more co-operators could be enrolled than it would be possible to deal with. As a result of successful extension work in the Kgatleng and Bamalete reserves a demand for co-operative demonstration work has come from other reserves.

This work has been supported by agronomic investigations which have provided the necessary basic information for crop improvement. The introduction of two new grain-sorghum varieties has done much to ensure the success of the Scheme.

The Ranaka Unit Extension Project and appointment of additional Agricultural Demonstrators, for which provision is made under extension of Scheme D.680 and utilization of unexpended balance of Scheme D. 679, is progressing satisfactorily.

D.1412: N'gamiland waterways

Reconnaissance surveys and levelling in the field were continued during the 1953 working season and the extent of these operations, as visualized in the scheme, were completed a little ahead of schedule.

■ Work connected with the delivery and erection of machinery for Papyrus clearing had been delayed owing to the great distance involved in transport and the necessity of replacing certain parts that were found to require strengthening. It also became necessary to break off from work on the machinery in order to enter the internal swamp regions to take levels during the only time of the year when access to that area is possible.

Tests on the operation of the papyrus clearing machinery were undertaken later in the year – October. It was found that although the machine was capable of performing the functions for which it was designed it was considered that further modifications would be required in order to cope properly with some of the conditions met with.

As funds in addition to that provided in the scheme would be required to undertake any further alterations to the papyrus clearing machinery, the survey party returned to Mafeking in November in order to undertake work connected with the compilation of maps, drawings etc. for the general report on the scheme. It is considered that work on the report will not be completed before March 1954 when the scheme is scheduled to end.

Scheme D.681/A. Control of Tsetse Fly

From October 1952 to June 1953 when the new Control Officer arrived this Scheme was under the control of the District Commissioner. In June 1953 Mr. I. J. Lewis took over as Tsetse Fly Control Officer.

Bush clearing was continued on the Maun side of the inner fence and by June 1953 a 600 yards clearing had been effected from Makola to Marophe. When the clearing reached Marophe this work was discontinued on the advice of Mr. Ford of the E. A. T. T. R. O. who pointed out that sheer barrier clearing less than 3 miles in width does not constitute a real obstacle to Fly.

Fences were maintained and repaired by a gang of fence boys in charge of a Ranger. The south-west flank fence has been shortened and now runs from Makwelele on the inside fence to a point just under a mile south-west of the Matsebe on the outer fence. The new fence will be eight

miles long instead of 25 miles and maintenance will be easier. The country released from protection is not a suitable habitat for Fly.

No Fly rounds were instituted by the new Control Officer as to do so was considered unprofitable until a proper policy had been formulated after a study of East African methods.

The Tsau-Nokaneng bulge was surveyed by the District Commissioner on a grid basis with fly-boys operating on regular overlapping paths.

Mr. Ford, Deputy Director of E. A. T. T. R. O. visited N'gamiland in February 1953. In his report he stressed the need for the Tsetse Fly Control Officer to visit East Africa for training and thereafter for the preparation of a constructive policy in which all the departments concerned would be associated.

APPENDIX III

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE. IMPORTS - 1951, 1952, 1953

U. From Union of South Africa N. From Northern Rhodesia S. From Southern Rhodesia O. From other countries

Commodity	From	1951		1952		1953	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Sorghum (Bags)	U S Total	642 — 642	1,161 — 1,161	13,280 — 13,280	33,200 — 33,200	5,501 28 5,529	12,524 45 12,569
	U Total	52,651 52,651	109,102 109,102	122,133 122,133	259,094 259,094	36,016 36,016	72,690 72,690
Maize and Maize meal (bags)	U S O Total	22,003 768 — 22,771	39,035 4,145 — 43,180	35,808 — 5) 35,853	79,137 — 1 35 79,275	16,887 635 — 17,522	61,369 1,128 — 62,497
	U S O Total	134 — — 134	1,737 — — 1,737	Figures not available		350 7 1,175 1,532	6,791 55 8,641 15,487
Horses, mules and donkeys	U S O Total	134 — — 134	1,737 — — 1,737	Figures not available		2,162 448 12 2,622	33,540 8,130 360 42,030
	U S O Total	Figures not available		Figures not available		2,309 20 2,329	6,897 48 6,945
Sheep and Goats	U S Total	Figures not available		Figures not available		Figures not available	
	U Total	Figures not available		Figures not available		15 15	15 15
Pigs	U Total	Figures not available		Figures not available		Figures not available	

IMPORTS (Cont.)

Dogs		Figures not available		Figures not available		Figures not available	
		Figures not available		Figures not available		Figures not available	
Poultry							
Vehicles	U	77	71,222	59	62,806	—	75,003
	S	7	15,395	6	5,593	—	6,588
	N	—	—	—	—	—	38
	O	2	1,102	—	—	—	3,928
	Total	86	87,719	65	68,399	—	85,557
General Merchandise	U	—	494,658	—	565,017	—	830,895
	S	—	211,423	—	231,221	—	243,147
	N	—	6,026	—	10,042	—	8,956
	O	—	6,628	—	2,243	—	18,451
	Total	—	718,735	—	808,523	—	1,101,449
Other foodstuffs	U	—	169,382	—	178,156	—	482,707
	S	—	42,327	—	105,196	—	26,895
	N	—	752	—	2,302	—	473
	O	—	67	—	—	—	470
	Total	—	212,528	—	285,654	—	510,555
Textiles	U	—	422,259	—	319,343	—	341,938
	S	—	147,312	—	158,399	—	148,967
	N	—	11,247	—	7,999	—	4,094
	O	—	7,410	—	1,977	—	9,738
	Total	—	588,248	—	487,718	—	504,737
Fertilisers (tons)	U	171	1,732	180	2,050	—	1,627
	S	21	230	—	—	—	245
	Total	192	1,962	180	2,050	—	1,873
GRAND TOTAL			1,767,065		2,023,913		2,416,404

Note: The 1953 total includes Government stores valued at £341,118.

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE. EXPORTS - 1951, 1952, 1953.

U. To Union of South Africa N. To Northern Rhodesia S. To Southern Rhodesia O. To other countries.

Commodity	To	1951		1952		1953	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Sorghum (Bags)	U	12,506	21,395	8,463	21,831	23,800	34,224
	S	18,422	50,977	—	—	4,213	6,125
	N	450	1,028	—	—	187	562
	Total	31,378	73,400	8,463	21,831	28,200	40,911
Maize and Maize Meal (Bags)	U	—	—	—	—	312	388
	S	1,000	2,500	—	—	—	—
	Total	1,000	2,500	—	—	312	388
Beans and pulses (Bags)	U	3,802	9,013	1,354	5,080	12,190	21,320
	S	23,001	64,434	—	—	4,475	8,389
	N	325	995	—	—	1,720	3,762
	O	—	—	—	—	9,823	17,784
	Total	27,128	74,442	1,354	5,080	28,208	51,245
Groundnuts (Bags)	U	—	—	3,775	6,134	—	1,262
	Total	—	—	3,775	6,134	—	1,262
Wheat (Bags)	U	—	—	—	—	—	—
Tobacco (Bags)	U	—	361	976	126	—	32
	Total	—	361	976	126	—	32
Butter (lb.)	U	276,858	39,114	227,108	25,934	478,576	74,378
	O	15,000	2,120	—	—	—	—
	Total	291,858	41,234	227,108	25,934	478,576	74,378
Cream (lb.)	U	241,279	25,111	151,009	23,443	185,354	26,427
	Total	241,279	25,111	151,009	23,443	185,354	26,427

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Eggs (doz.)	U Total	1,988 1,988	250 250	483 483	60 60	1,607 1,607	161 161
Cattle	U S N O Total	33,880 1,509 30,545 12,061 77,995	711,480 25,653 497,169 205,037 1,439,339	38,289 737 25,612 8,530 73,168	834,862 15,234 436,084 176,294 1,462,474	33,008 1,046 25,712 11,356 71,116	733,190 21,776 518,349 234,526 1,507,841
Sheep and Goats	U S N O Total	26,629 4,540 7,630 937 39,736	67,903 13,630 22,890 2,389 106,812	17,806 7,756 10,110 — 35,672	57,870 25,157 32,857 — 115,884	6,806 18,435 2,547 233 28,021	17,356 47,008 6,495 594 71,453
Pigs	U S N Total	521 197 47 765	1,459 788 188 2,435	724 402 36 1,162	5,068 2,814 252 8,134	513 384 — 897	4,104 2,688 — 6,792
Poultry	U S Total	9,972 — 9,972	2,693 — 2,693	14,678 — 14,678	3,668 — 3,668	8,019 210 8,229	2,005 52 2,057
Hides (lb.)	U S N O Total	1,162 1,787,653 139,083 74,680 2,002,578	85 223,445 17,386 5,351 246,267	9,743 51,948 1,404 3,384 66,479	10,455 100,319 2,808 2,030 115,612	471,003 923,919 11,421 90,262 1,496,605	32,382 63,519 785 6,206 102,892
Skins (sheep and Goats) (Pieces)	U S N O Total	20,235 78,923 1,781 7,420 108,359	5,059 21,204 490 2,040 28,793	20,950 23,062 218 9,683 53,913	4,190 4,612 44 1,937 10,783	28,818 9,547 — 3,610 41,975	6,634 2,199 — 827 9,660

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Kyanite (tons)	O		2,056	19,355	2,385	22,449	1,960	16,210
	Total							
Other articles	U	—	—	4,281	—	2,073	—	3,873
	S	—	—	1,310	—	—	—	—
	N	—	—	3,727	—	—	—	—
	O	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Total	—	—	6,318	—	2,073	—	3,873
GRAND TOTAL		—	—	2,153,365	—	2,058,702	—	2,168,155

APPENDIX IV
LIVESTOCK POPULATION 1953

Year	Bulls	Cows and Heifers	Oxen and Totties	Calves	Total Cattle	Sheep	Goats	Horses	Mules	Donkeys	Pigs	Poultry
1944.	22,688	448,536	237,386	188,292	896,902	—	568,276	4,102	142	22,566	4,508	—
1945.	22,509	446,157	244,464	190,045	920,175	—	555,778	4,126	111	17,912	3,536	—
1946.	22,715	463,101	274,327	198,646	958,789	—	—	3,999	147	20,670	3,487	96,601
1947.	22,187	472,936	272,312	199,505	966,940	187,728	426,738	3,399	139	21,157	3,140	84,783
1948.	24,000	478,875	283,625	192,000	978,500	198,569	440,000	4,154	154	22,000	2,497	88,569
1949.	25,012	468,786	273,145	216,008	982,951	214,229	443,993	4,329	138	18,292	3,445	107,764
1950.	25,543	515,698	282,556	266,169	1,049,966	217,288	477,277	5,053	133	19,938	3,457	96,040
1951.	22,841	526,108	288,108	189,033	1,026,845	197,798	475,271	6,618	269	19,915	2,731	74,390
1952.	26,891	532,057	287,886	207,462	1,054,296	216,000	509,015	7,048	285	22,488	3,676	148,710
1953.	42,757	544,439	289,196	221,289	1,097,681	227,941	497,654	6,674	308	24,812	4,029	156,044

APPENDIX V

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE - SUBORDINATE COURTS 1st January - 31st December, 1953

Charges brought and convictions or acquittals recorded together with committals and remittals by main classes of offences.

District	Committed for trial or sentence by High Court	Committed for trial and remitted back	Murder	Offences other than murder against the person	Stock Theft	Offences other than stock theft against property	Liquor Offences	Drug Offences	Other Offences
Chobe (Headquarters)	4	1	1	27	1	21	20	3	361
(Headquarters Kasane)									
Francistown	37	3	8	167	16	84	12	9	566
Gaborones	18	-	-	25	29	24	35	-	78
Ghanzi	155	1	1	15	35	14	30	2	71
Kgalagadi	59	-	-	10	-	4	-	4	41
(Headquarters Tshabong)									
Kgateng	8	-	-	17	-	12	27	2	141
(Headquarters Mochudi)									
Kweneng	14	1	-	16	11	24	11	1	60
(Headquarters Molepolole)									
Lobatsi	9	1	4	16	8	27	40	6	61
Ngamiland	10	1	1	34	6	33	-	1	116
(Headquarters Maun)									
Ngwato	47	-	-	147	66	93	44	16	476
(Headquarters Serowe)									
Ngwaketse	4	-	1	6	4	24	1	7	26
(Headquarters Kanye)									
Tuli Block	-	-	-	-	6	-	4	-	109
(Headquarters Machaneng)									
Total	3204	8	16	480	182	360	224	51	2106

3419

3419

APPENDIX VI

RETURN OF DISEASES, INJURIES AND CAUSES OF DEATH FOR
THE YEAR 1953*

DISEASES	¹ Remain- ing in Hospital at end of 1952	IN-PATIENTS		² Total cases Treat- ed	³ Remain- ing in Hospital at end of 1953	OUT-PATIENTS	
		Admissions	Deaths			Male	Female
A.							
1. Tuberculosis of respiratory system	26	224	26	250	52	329	401
2. Tuberculosis of meninges and central nervous system		4	2	4		3	
3. Tuberculosis of intestines, peritoneum and mesenteric glands		15	1	15		20	22
4. Tuberculosis of bones and joints	6	36	1	42	8	48	43
5. Tuberculosis, all other forms	8	41	1	49	1	167	186
6. Congenital syphilis		14	1	14		627	721
7. Early syphilis		29		29	1	1116	1598
8. Tabes dorsalis							1
9. General paralysis of insane							
10. All other syphilis	4	59		63	4	1487	2004
11. Gonococcal infections	1	100		101	1	1923	1792
12. Typhoid fever		5		5		2	2
13. Paratyphoid fever and other Salmonella infections							
14. Cholera							
15. Brucellosis (undulant fever)							
16. (a) Bacillary dysentery	1	33	4	34		195	257
(b) Amoebiasis	2	23	2	25		70	59

* This form is adapted in accordance with the "Manual of the International Statistical Classification of Diseases, Injuries and Causes of Death. World Health Organisation, Geneva, 1948.

¹ i.e. the year previous to that for which the return is made.

² "Total cases treated" will, of course, include those remaining in Hospital at the end of the previous year.

³ The figures in this column to be carried on to the next year's Return.

(c) Other unspecified forms of dysentery	36	2	36		132	209
17. Scarlet fever	2		2			
18. Streptococcal sore throat	21		21		331	524
19. Erysipelas						
20. Septicaemia and pyaemia	6	1	6		5	1
21. Diphtheria	60	11	60		47	63
22. Whooping cough	25	2	25	1	434	547
23. Meningococcal infections	10	3	10		8	17
24. Plague						
25. Leprosy	1	2	3	1	12	9
26. Tetanus	1	3	4		1	
27. Anthrax					1	
28. Acute poliomyelitis	2		2			2
29. Acute infectious encephalitis	1	1	1		1	
30. Late effects of acute poliomyelitis and acute infectious encephalitis						
31. Smallpox	1		1		2	1
32. Measles	2	14	14		9	11
33. Yellow fever		75	77	1	246	250
34. Infectious hepatitis	10	1	10		9	11
35. Rabies						
36. (a) Louse-borne epidemic typhus						
(b) Flea-borne epidemic typhus (murine)						
(c) Tick-borne epidemic typhus	1		1		9	5
(d) Mite-borne typhus						
(e) Other and unspecified typhus						
37. (a) Vivax Malaria (benign tert.)	1		1		3	2
(b) Malariae malaria (quartan)					6	1
(c) Falciparum malaria (malignant tertian)	3	162	3	165	709	488
(d) Blackwater fever		1		1		
(e) Other and unspecified forms of malaria	19		19		241	230
38. (a) Schistosomiasis vesical (S. Laematobium)	11		11	1	29	10
(b) Schistosomiasis intestinal (S. mansoni)	2		2			1
(c) Schistosomiasis pulmonary (S. japonicum)						
(d) Other and unspecified schistosomiasis						1
39. Hydatid disease						
40. (a) Onchocerciasis						
(b) Loiasis						
(c) Filariasis (bancrofti)						1
(d) Other filariasis	2		2		2	
41. Ankylostomiasis						
42. (a) Tapeworm infestation and other cestode infestations	15		15		83	108
(b) Ascariasis	6		6		53	77
(c) Guinea worm (dracunculosis)						

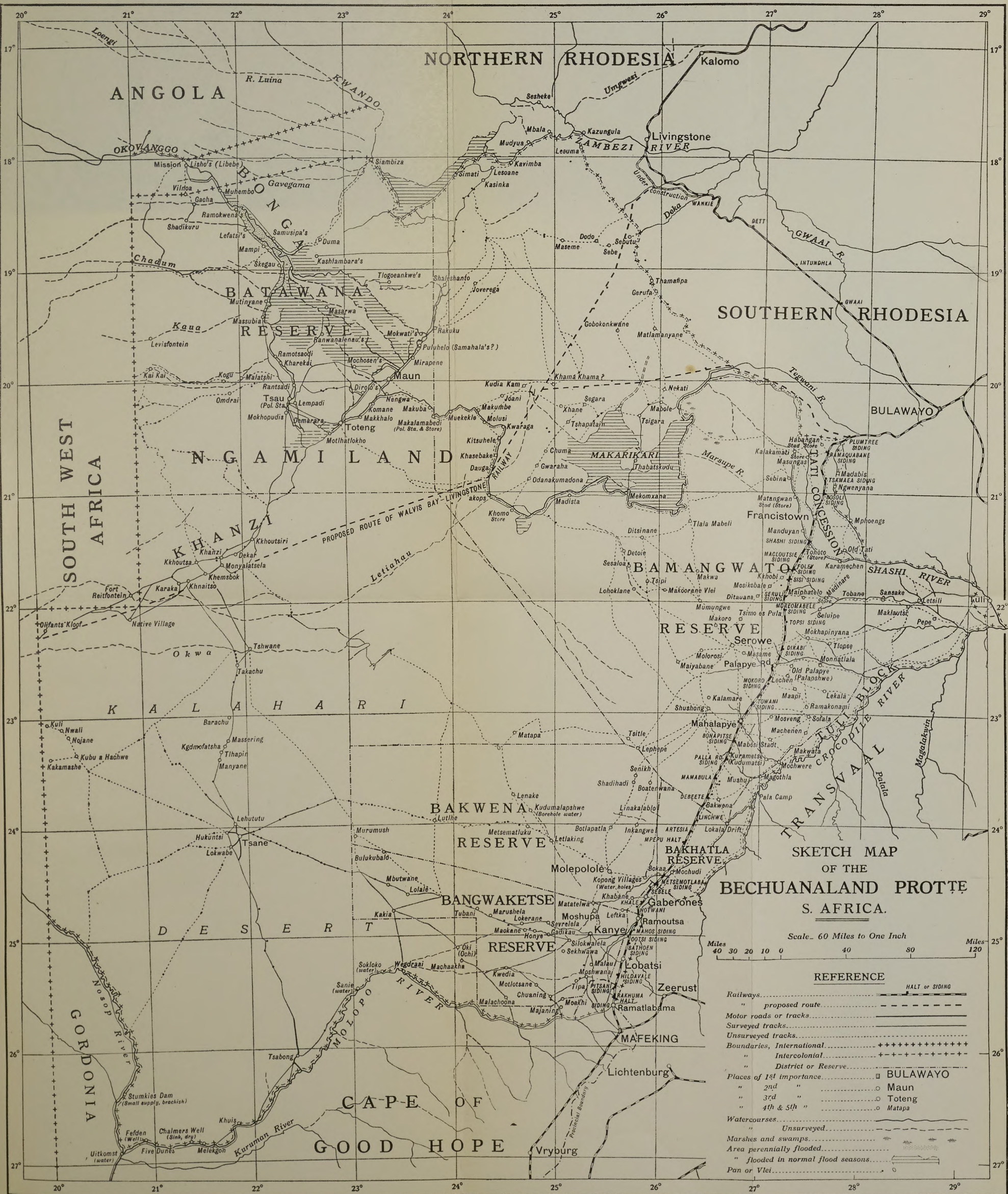
(d) Other disease due to helminths		1		1		35	40
43. (a) Lymphogranuloma venereum	1	5		6	2	33	2
(b) Granuloma inguinale, venereal		1		1		6	1
43. (c) Other and unspecified venereal diseases	1	8		9		45	212
(d) Foodpoisoning infection and intoxication		3	1	3	1	11	6
(e) Relapsing fever		6		6		4	2
(f) Leptospirosis icterohaemorrhagica (Weil's disease)							
(g) Yaws		3		3		15	18
(h) Chickenpox	1	18		19		50	69
(i) Dengue							
(j) Trachoma		13		13		39	66
(k) Sandfly fever						8	16
(l) Leishmaniasis							
(m)a Trypanosomiasis gambiensi							
b Trypanosomiasis rhodesiensi	1	4	1	5			
c Other and unspecified Trypanosomiasis							
(n) Dermatophytosis		2		2		9	14
(o) Scabies	1	24		25		1444	1522
(p) All other diseases classified as infective and parasitic	1	4		5		58	40
44. Malignant neoplasm of buccal cavity and pharynx	1	2	1	3		4	2
45. Malignant neoplasm of oesophagus						2	3
46. Malignant neoplasm of stomach		3	1	3		4	2
47. Malignant neoplasm of intestine, except rectum		3		3		3	5
48. Malignant neoplasm of rectum		1		1		3	1
49. Malignant neoplasm of larynx							1
50. Malignant neoplasm of trachea, and of bronchus and lung not specified as secondary						4	2
51. Malignant neoplasm of breast		5		5			10
52. Malignant neoplasm of cervix uteri		14	4	14			20
53. Malignant neoplasm of other and unspecified parts of uterus		2	1	2		1	12
54. Malignant neoplasm of prostate		1		1		1	
55. Malignant neoplasm of skin		3		3		158	208
56. Malignant neoplasm of bone and connective tissue	1	2		3		5	2
57. Malignant neoplasm of all other and unspecified sites	1	27	2	28	1	38	50
58. Leukaemia and aleukaemia		1	1	1		1	
59. Lymphosarcoma and other neoplasms of lymphatic and haematopoietic system		1		1		5	7

60. Benign neoplasms and neoplasms of unspecified nature	2	70	2	72	3	65	314
61. Nontoxic goitre		1		1		1	8
62. Thyrotoxicosis with or without goitre		2		2			3
63. Diabetes mellitus							
64. (a) Beriberi		3		3		30	40
(b) Pellagra	1	7		8		109	139
(c) Scurvy	1	5		6		103	123
(d) Other deficiency states	7	55	8	62	2	484	598
65. (a) Pernicious and other hyperchromic anaemias		1		1		2	1
(b) Iron deficiency anaemias (hypochromic)	1	15	1	16		142	503
(c) Other specified and unspecified anaemias		22	3	22	1	146	282
66. (a) Asthma	1	31	1	32		244	267
(b) All other allergic disorder, endocrine, metabolic and blood diseases		33	1	33	2	196	258
67. Psychoses	14	13		27	14	24	49
68. Psychoneuroses and disorders of personality		14		14	1	22	38
69. Mental deficiency						9	6
70. Vascular lesions affecting central nervous system	1	21	5	22	1	14	15
71. Nonmeningococcal meningitis		4	2	4		4	2
72. Multiple sclerosis						1	
73. Epilepsy	1	11		12		54	48
74. Inflammatory diseases of eye		97		97	4	975	1099
75. Cataract	1	20		21	2	54	43
76. Glaucoma	3	9		12		5	9
77. (a) Otitis externa	1	10		11		159	145
(b) Otitis media and mastoiditis	2	26		28		248	228
(c) Other inflammatory diseases of ear		3		3		217	207
78. (a) All other diseases and conditions of eye	3	41		44	3	411	436
(b) All other diseases of the nervous system and sense organs	2	41	3	43		233	250
79. Rheumatic fever		35		35	3	107	141
80. Chronic rheumatic heart disease		39	11	39		49	74
81. Arteriosclerotic and degenerative heart disease	2	23	11	25		18	21
82. Other disease of heart	6	36	2	42		163	313
83. Hypertension with heart disease	1	2		3	1	7	8
84. Hypertension without mention of heart		4		4		28	47
85. Diseases of arteries		5		5	1	25	24
86. Other diseases of circulatory system	3	63	3	66	2	130	153
87. Acute upper respiratory infections		151	3	151	2	1744	1596
88. Influenza		204	3	204	1	772	1045

89. Lobar pneumonia	1	111	3	112	1	131	154
90. Bronchopneumonia	1	228	9	229	4	193	220
91. Primary atypical, other and unspecified pneumonia		112	2	112	1	69	100
92. Acute bronchitis		97		97	1	905	855
93. Bronchitis, chronic and unqualified		51		51		1228	1194
94. Hypertrophy of tonsils and adenoids	1	156		157		331	560
95. Empyema and abscess of lung	1	2		3		5	8
96. Pleurisy	3	41	1	44	2	78	87
97. (a) Pneumoconiosis							
(b) All other respiratory diseases		57	1	57		947	590
98. (a) Dental caries		16		16		848	1014
(b) All other diseases of teeth and supporting structures		45		45	2	371	441
99. Ulcer of stomach		2		2		16	20
100. Ulcer of duodenum		2		2		7	3
101. Gastritis and duodenitis		16		16	2	450	404
102. Appendicitis	2	64		66	2	38	57
103. Intestinal obstruction and hernia		35	3	35	1	232	202
104. (a) Gastro-enteritis and colitis between 4 weeks and 2 years		31	3	31	1	772	880
(b) Gastro-enteritis and colitis, ages 2 years and over	2	42		44	4	499	590
(c) Chronic enteritis and ulcerative colitis		3		3		119	221
105. Cirrhosis of liver	1	11	2	12		54	103
106. Cholelithiasis & cholecystitis		3		3		9	10
107. Other diseases of digestive system	1	108	3	109	3	2067	2775
108. Acute nephritis		8	1	8		152	58
109. Chronic, other and unspecified nephritis		17	6	17	1	85	58
110. Infections of kidney	1	24	4	25		102	161
111. Calculi of urinary system		7	1	7		18	6
112. Hyperplasia of prostate		10		10	2	36	
113. Diseases of breast	1	32		33			108
114. (a) Hydrocele	1	16		17		33	
(b) Disorders of menstruation	1	47		48			3685
(c) All other disease of the genito-urinary system	6	390	3	396	5	561	2686
115. Sepsis of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium	3	21	3	24	1		18
116. Toxaemias of pregnancy and the puerperium	1	20		21			77
117. Haemorrhage of pregnancy and childbirth		16		16	3		77
118. Abortion without mention of sepsis or toxæmia	2	103		105	2		172
119. Abortion with sepsis		21		21			52
120. (a) Other complications of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium	9	314	7	323	5		349

(b) Delivery without complications	10	1181		1191	15		1726
121. Infections of skin and subcutaneous tissue	7	197	1	204	7	1256	1548
122. Arthritis and spondylitis	1	31		32	2	274	299
123. Muscular rheumatism and rheumatism, unspecified	4	118		122	1	1919	1811
124. Osteomyelitis and periostitis	2	46		48	3	75	90
125. Ankylosis and acquired musculoskeletal deformities	1	31		32	1	24	31
126. (a) Chronic Ulcer of Skin (including tropical ulcer)	1	21		22		301	434
(b) All other diseases of skin	2	96		98	1	1207	1614
(c) All other diseases of musculoskeletal system	1	101	1	102		155	173
127. Spina bifida and meningocele		2		2		2	3
128. Congenital malformations of circulatory system		1		1		3	5
129. All other congenital malformations		11	3	11		18	21
130. Birth injuries		6	3	6		1	2
131. Postnatal asphyxia and atelectasis		7	4	7			
132. (a) Diarrhoea of newborn (under 4 weeks)		9	1	9		60	81
(b) Ophthalmia neonatorum		2		2			
(c) Other infections of newborn		1		1		3	4
133. Haemolytic disease of newborn		14	10	14			
134. All other defined diseases of early infancy	2	2	1	4	1	115	157
135. Ill-defined diseases peculiar to early infancy and immaturity, unqualified		2	1	2		73	83
136. Senility without mention of psychosis		4		4		9	14
137. (a) Pyrexia of unknown origin	2	53	1	55	6	77	49
(b) Observation, without need for further medical care	18	1145		1163	30	674	4997
(c) All other ill-defined causes of morbidity		69	2	69	1	618	767
Accidents, Poisoning, and Violence (External Cause)							
A. E.							
138. Motor vehicle accidents	1	14	2	15		27	16
139. Other transport accidents		42	1	42	8	62	13
140. Accidental poisoning	1	8		9		14	10
141. Accidental falls	1	103	1	104	9	581	313
142. Accident caused by machinery	2	24		26	2	40	8
143. Accident caused by fire and explosion of combustible material	2	60	5	62	1	294	261
144. Accident caused by hot substance, corrosive liquid, steam and radiation		68	4	68	5	103	102

145. Accident caused by firearm		5	1	5		7	2
146. Accidental drowning and submersion							
147. Foreign body entering eye and adnexa	1	19		20		69	25
Foreign body entering other orifice	1	32		33		77	79
Accidents caused by bites and stings of venomous animals and insects		35	3	35		145	118
Other accidents caused by animals	1	74		75	4	144	60
All other accidental causes ..	6	188		194	4	1139	392
148. Suicide and self inflicted injury	2			2		13	8
149. Homicide and injury purposely inflicted by other persons (not in war)	1	80	5	81	2	189	13
150. Injury resulting from operations of war							



145. Accident caused by firearm		5	1	5		7	2
146. Accidental drowning and submersion							
147. Foreign body entering eye and adnexa	1	19		20		69	25
Foreign body entering other							

COLONIAL REPORTS

ANNUAL REPORTS

BASUTOLAND	GOLD COAST	N. RHODESIA
BECHUANALAND	HONG KONG	NYASALAND
PROTECTORATE	JAMAICA	SARAWAK
BRITISH GUIANA	KENYA	SIERRA LEONE
BR. HONDURAS	FED. OF MALAYA	SINGAPORE
BRUNEI	MAURITIUS	SWAZILAND
CYPRUS	NIGERIA	TRINIDAD
FIJI	NORTH BORNEO	UGANDA

BIENNIAL REPORTS

ADEN	GIBRALTAR	*ST. VINCENT
*BAHAMAS	*GILBERT AND	SEYCHELLES
*BARBADOS	ELLICE IS.	SOLOMON IS.
BERMUDA	*GRENADA	*SOMALILAND
CAYMAN IS.	LEEWARD IS.	*TONGA
DOMINICA	NEW HEBRIDES	TURKS AND
*FALKLAND IS.	*ST. HELENA	CAICOS IS.
*GAMBIA	ST. LUCIA	ZANZIBAR

*These territories will produce a Report for 1952-53 and the remainder for 1953-54.

A standing order for selected Reports or for the complete series will be accepted by any one of the Sales Offices of H. M. Stationery Office at the following addresses :
†York House, Kingsway, London, W. C. 2 ; †423 Oxford Street, London, W. 1. ; 13a Castle Street, Edinburgh, 2 ; 39 King Street, Manchester, 2 ; 2 Edmund Street, Birmingham, 3 ; 1 St. Andrew's Crescent, Cardiff ; Tower Lane, Bristol, 1 ; 80 Chichester Street, Belfast.

A deposit of £6 (six pounds) should accompany standing orders for the complete series.

†Post Orders for these Sales Offices should be sent to P.O. Box 569, London, S. E. 1.

ORDERS MAY ALSO BE PLACED THROUGH ANY BOOKSELLER



S.O. Code No. 58-1-3-53

316.81
C 798
unb.



COLONIAL REPORTS

Bechuanaland
Protectorate
1954

67. 817. 010. 9 [C] Compendium, 1990.

FOR THE YEAR

1954

HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE

PRICE 5s 0d NET

(Printed in Basutoland).

CONTENTS

PART I

General review of the year	3
--------------------------------------	---

PART II

CHAPTER I	Population	8
CHAPTER II	Occupations, Wages and Labour Organization	8
CHAPTER III	Public Finance and Taxation	11
CHAPTER IV	Currency and Banking	21
CHAPTER V	Commerce	21
CHAPTER VI	Production	24
CHAPTER VII	Social Service	
	1. Education	33
	2. Public Health	36
	3. Housing and Town Planning	40
	4. Social Welfare.	41
CHAPTER VIII	Legislation	42
CHAPTER IX	Justice, Police and Prisons	43
CHAPTER X	Public Utilities and Public Works.	49
CHAPTER XI	Communications	52
CHAPTER XII	Press, Broadcasting, Film and Government In- formation Service	54
CHAPTER XIII	Local Forces.	54

PART III

CHAPTER I	Geography and Climate	55
CHAPTER II	History	57
CHAPTER III	Administration	61
CHAPTER IV	Weights and Measures	63
CHAPTER V	Reading List.	63

APPENDICES

I	Colonial Development and Welfare Grants-Fin- ancial Statement	64
II	Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Schemes - Notes on Progress	65
III	Imports and Exports	71
IV	Livestock Population	77
V	Cases dealt with by the Police.	78
VI	Cases dealt with by the Courts	79
VII	Nosological Return	80

PART I

GENERAL REVIEW OF THE MOST IMPORTANT EVENTS AND DEVELOPMENTS OF THE YEAR

During the course of the year it became evident that the Protectorate's surplus balances were being exhausted and that it was impossible to maintain satisfactory standards of administration over so large (275,000 square miles) and so sparsely populated (300,000) a Territory until further development had led to an increase in revenue. Her Majesty's Government decided, therefore, to pay a grant-in-aid to the Protectorate from United Kingdom funds, over and above such grants as might be made from the Colonial Development and Welfare Fund, in order to maintain the administration of the Territory at an approved minimum level.

In pursuance of this policy a financial and economic survey of the Protectorate was carried out in May by Mr. A. C. B. Symon, C.M.G., O.B.E., an Assistant Under-Secretary of State in the Commonwealth Relations Office.

Following this, recommendations were made to the Secretary of State regarding the scope and form of the development programme for the next five years. These recommendations were based, to a large extent, on the recommendations of two committees with unofficial and official representation which toured the Northern and Southern Protectorate respectively to sound the public on the needs of the Territory. This "five-year plan", which had yet to be approved at the end of the year, provides for the expenditure from Colonial Development and Welfare Funds of £2,538,300 under the following main headings :

Land Use, Mineral Development, Communications, Education and Medical.

It provides for grants-in-aid amounting to more than £1,000,000 and for loan expenditure of £414,500 for African housing, railway water supplies and a granary and mill.

Provision is made for recurrent expenditure increasing annually from £1,036,760 in 1954-55 to £1,250,475 in 1959-60, while during the same period revenue is estimated to increase from £858,000 to £1,005,550.

Revenue during the financial year 1953-54 amounted to £1,016,759 and expenditure to £1,015,005 (both inclusive of Colonial Development

and Welfare Schemes), an excess of £1,754. The surplus balance on the 31st March, 1954, was £419,153, which included appreciation on investments amounting to £1,962.

The public debt amounted to £10,681 on the 31st March, 1954. This was £1,335 less than the corresponding figure for the previous year.

Twenty Colonial Development and Welfare Fund schemes were in operation during the year. A statement showing the year's working of each scheme will be found in Appendix I. Notes on the progress of the schemes are in Appendix II. The total amount of grants approved for the Territory was £1,162, 384, of which £786,795 had been spent at the close of the financial year on the 31st March, 1954.

The year 1954 has shown a steady improvement in the affairs of the Bamangwato Tribe. There have been setbacks and some attempts to undermine the authority of Mr. Rasebolai Kgamane, the Native Authority, and to disturb the administration of the tribe but, on the whole, material and political progress was satisfactory.

An important event was the official opening by the High Commissioner, Sir John le Rougetel, K. C. M. G., M. C., on the 11th October of the Colonial Development Corporation Abattoir at Lobatsi. The Chiefs and members of the European Advisory Council were among those present at the ceremony.

Although this project was decided upon some four years previously, the abattoir actually began to operate on the 20th September. Initially cattle were supplied only by the Colonial Development Corporation Molopo Ranches. From the 1st October, however, all exports of trade cattle, except those from Ngamiland, were stopped and cattle diverted to the Lobatsi Abattoir.

Cattle processed in the works between the date of starting and the 3rd December (a working period of 55 days) totalled 5,988 - an average of more than 108 head a day. Meat and offal were despatched to the Union of South Africa, Northern Rhodesia and the Belgian Congo, and favourable reports were received from all points of destination.

During the year 10 boreholes were drilled along the Ghanzi cattle route. Of these holes, five were successful and the total yield developed was 5,280 gallons per hour. Individual yields varied from 600 to 1,800 gallons per hour. In one instance strong water struck in a borehole proved to be so highly saline as to be unfit for stock watering. Four boreholes were abandoned at depths varying from 84 to 504 feet without any water being struck.

All the seven successful boreholes developed to date are on that section of the route between Ghanzi and Tshane which was previously one of the most difficult parts of the Kalahari cattle trek. No further attempts have been made to obtain water on the Tshane-railhead section pending the arrival of a new heavy machine capable of boring to a depth of 1,500 feet.

Measures to combat Foot and Mouth Disease were continued during the year. The Debeeti quarantine fence was completed in 1953 and, by the end of 1954, 170 miles of the Central Bamangwato fence had been completed. Great difficulty was experienced in clearing the latter

line, since much of it passes through dense scrub and mopani forest. A further 37 miles remains to be cleared and fenced from a point 15 miles north of Dukwe Pan to the Southern Rhodesian border.

Favourable climatic conditions occurred during the first half of the 1953-54 season, but thereafter rains became increasingly localized and drier conditions prevailed from mid-January onwards, particularly in the north-eastern areas, where the rains ceased early in March.

Rainfall was generally below average in the Protectorate but despite this, and a remarkable incidence of pests and fungus diseases, a good harvest was reaped.

Unusually heavy rains in Ngamiland in the latter half of the year caused high floods in that area and four bridges were seriously damaged. Two of them, the Matlapaneng and Shashi bridges, were in such a dangerous state that immediate repairs were necessary to avoid collapse. These floods interfered with transport and greatly increased the difficulties of administration in the area.

A detailed survey of building and equipment shortages in tribal primary schools in the Territory has been in progress for some time. The survey was completed in the Southern Protectorate during the year and the results were placed before each of the tribal authorities concerned.

As a result, plans have been drawn up for additional capital expenditure in order that each tribe may remedy these shortages over a fixed period.

By extending facilities at the Bamangwato College and at St. Joseph's College, Khale, the Protectorate coped successfully with the additional demand made on accommodation resulting from the Union's ban on extra-territorial non-European pupils.

Facilities for trades education and for higher teacher training were offered by Basutoland and, as far as university students were concerned, the Union withheld the ban until 1958.

Two sessions of the European Advisory Council were held during the year, two of the Joint Advisory Council and one of the African Advisory Council.

The March session of the European Advisory Council, the fifty-fourth, saw some important and interesting debates. Foremost was the motion, despite unanimous agreement by the Council on the abattoir project in 1950, that the opening of the Colonial Development Corporation abattoir at Lobatsi could not but have disastrous effects on the economy of the Territory and should not be permitted so long as the existing markets were available and satisfactory. The chief points made were that the present markets for live cattle were satisfactory, that those markets preferred fresh to frozen beef and that the prices which the Corporation would be able to realize would be less than could be obtained for live animals. Apprehension was felt at handing over to the Corporation the whole of the cattle industry, on which the Territory depends for its existence, and it was felt that if the abattoir failed it would be difficult, if not impossible, to regain the present markets for live cattle. Government gave no undertaking on the resolution but promised that it would be examined. Eventually, following the discussions in the Joint Advisory

Council which are mentioned below, it was decided that the abattoir should open, which it did in September.

Other subjects discussed were the provision of a European school or schools for secondary education, the construction of an East-West railway link from Southern Rhodesia to South West Africa, a plea that pressure should be placed on the owners of mineral rights to develop those minerals, the opening up of more land for European settlement and the imposition of income tax on Africans.

The other session of the European Advisory Council, the fifty-fifth, opened on the 1st November. The draft of a much needed water law was placed before the Council and it was decided that the draft should be made available to any member of the public to examine and comment upon before it was enacted. Grain marketing was discussed and it was agreed that two committees should be set up to consider this matter, as recorded below in the paragraph relating to the fourth session of the Joint Advisory Council.

Other subjects debated included air corridors, registration of aircraft and the maintenance of airstrips and import control.

The session of the Joint Advisory Council in July was specially called to discuss the opening of the Colonial Development Corporation abattoir at Lobatsi. The meeting was arranged because of the resolution of the European Advisory Council, referred to above, that the abattoir should not be permitted to open. After a thorough discussion, the general view of the Council was that the abattoir must open and that it should be given all the support possible.

The fourth session of the Joint Advisory Council began on the 4th November. Items on the agenda included means to reduce stock theft and the policy to be adopted regarding transfer of trading licences. Grain marketing within the Territory was also discussed and committees were formed to go into ways and means of improving the existing arrangements.

The thirty-fourth session of the African Advisory Council opened on the 21st October. The principal item on the agenda was the formation of Local Councils.

For some time past Government has been considering the question of broadening the basis of the present system of Native Administration, which is carried out by the Native Authorities and Subordinate Native Authorities, by the institution of Local Councils to assist those authorities. As recorded in the Annual Report for 1953, a party of Chiefs and others visited Tanganyika and Uganda to study the systems there. Their report was placed before the African Advisory Council and in September and October a Committee, which was given full powers by the Council, sat to consider the institution of Local Councils, using the report as a basis for discussions. After consultation with Government, a broad plan for the institution of these councils was formulated. Briefly, it is proposed that local councils, which would be advisory but whose members would be expected to assist in the execution of approved plans and in the day-to-day business of the tribe, should be set up at both Native Authority and Subordinate Native Authority levels and should, when funds could be

made available, assume certain limited financial responsibilities. In the lower councils (referred to as "Area Councils") two-thirds of the members would be chosen by the *kgotlas* (i. e. assemblies) of the areas over whom the Subordinate Native Authority exercised jurisdiction, and the remaining one-third would be nominated by the Subordinate Native Authority. Similarly in the higher council, known as the Tribal Council, two-thirds of the members would be composed of representatives from the Area Councils and the remainder nominated by the Native Authority. These proposals will give scope for the representation of the allied tribes and should ensure that the population as a whole in any given Native Authority area is associated more closely with the administration than has been the case in the past.

The question whether the Bamangwato College at Moeng should become a national school or whether it should remain, as at present, a Bamangwato school, was discussed and, with the concurrence of the tribe, the former step was agreed upon.

Other matters discussed by the African Advisory Council were stock theft, the payment of income tax by Africans, the game laws and the proposed water law. This last item proved to be too complicated to discuss without considerable study, and a sub-committee was appointed to examine it.

The post of Deputy Resident Commissioner and Government Secretary was filled in March by the appointment of Mr. R. P. Fawcus, a District Officer of Basutoland.

The High Commissioner toured the Territory twice during the year. He travelled extensively and visited all the Native Reserves.

Vice-Admiral Sir Peveril William-Powlett, K. C. B., C. B. E., D. S. O., Commander-in-Chief, South Atlantic, and at that time Governor-Designate of Southern Rhodesia, made a short tour of the Territory in April. He visited Kanye, Lobatsi, Gaberones, Mahalapye, Serowe, Francistown, Kasane and Maun.

In November, Mr. R. W. D., Fowler, head of the Central African and High Commission Territories Department of the Commonwealth Relations Office, paid a short visit to the Protectorate, during which he saw seven of the District Administration centres.

PART II

CHAPTER I

POPULATION

The last census was taken in 1946. The figures were: Europeans 2,379, Africans 292,755, Coloured persons and Asiatics 1,176. This gives an average density of 1.07 per square mile. There has been little change in the population since the census.

Vital statistics are maintained for Europeans only. There were 51 births and 16 deaths during the year, which gives birth and death rates of 21.4 and 6.7 per thousand respectively.

The great majority of the people live in the eastern and north-western parts of the Territory; about one-half of the population live in villages of 1,000 or more inhabitants, though many of these spend a large part of their time at outlying cattle posts.

CHAPTER II

OCCUPATIONS

WAGES AND LABOUR ORGANIZATIONS

Over ninety-five per cent of the population is engaged in stock raising. A few Africans are employed as herds and drovers by European farmers, but the great majority are themselves the owners of livestock, which are cared for on a family or tribal basis. Native law and custom make it the duty of every male member of the tribe to do his part in the tending of the family livestock, and, in consequence, there is little paid employment in the Protectorate. The principal occupations of the small number of African wage earners are:

	<i>Approximate Number</i>	<i>Average Wages per mensem</i>
Government Service	* 3,500	£5 to £57
Agriculture	3,000	£3
Building	300	£6
Trade and Industry.	1,800	£6
Domestic Service	2,000	£3

* This figure includes approximately 2,400 casual labourers.

Agricultural and domestic workers receive free rations and domestic servants are usually supplied with quarters. The majority of Government African employees are unskilled or semi-skilled, but there are also some clerks, policemen, teachers, nurses, dispensers, artisans, etc.

The normal working week is 45 hours, but there is some variation, chiefly among agricultural workers, and the hours for domestic servants are usually somewhat longer.

EMPLOYMENT AND WAGES

Government salaries for Europeans vary from £275 to £1,900 a year. There is a cost of living allowance which averages sixteen to nineteen per cent of salaries for married men and half those rates for single men. A few Europeans are employed as farm managers and stores assistants.

There is no immigrant labour and little or no unemployment. About 21,000 men left the Territory during the year for work in neighbouring territories. Of these, 19,000 went on contract to the Union mines and the remainder went independently to various other forms of employment. Recruitment of labour for the mines is strictly controlled under Cap. 64 of the Laws and is mainly in the hands of two well established firms, the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association and the Native Recruiting Corporation with headquarters in Johannesburg. The usual period of a contract is nine months, after which most recruits return home. Many return to the mines for second or third periods.

COST OF LIVING

Price indices are not kept. The average prices of the principal commodities, compared with 1939 are as follows :

Commodity	1939			1954		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Sugar per lb.			4½			7½
Tea per lb.	2	11		9	0	
Coffee per lb.	1	7		6	9	
Salt per lb.			1			2
Tobacco per lb.	2	6		4	11½	
Rice per lb.			4½	1	6½	
Maize Meal per 180 lb.	1	0	7	2	12	0
Maize per 200 lb.	17	7		1	14	1½
Sorghum per 200 lb.	14	9		1	11	9
Paraffin per 8 gallons	1	3	9	1	15	0
Soap per bar			3½	1	7½	
Beef per lb.			3	1	4	
Mutton per lb.				1	7	
Butter per lb.	1	7		3	6	
Eggs per dozen			10½	2	0	
Wheat flour per 200 lb.	1	8	0	4	4	7½
Brandy per bottle	6	6		12	7½	

LABOUR DEPARTMENT

There is no labour department. The care of labour and the administration of the laws relating to labour are in the hands of the District Commissioners.

INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS

There are no employers' organizations. Indeed, the only industries which can be described as such are the Chobe Concessions' sawmill at Serondela, a gold mine and a kyanite mine in the Francistown district, an asbestos mine at Moshaneng, a creamery and a bonemeal factory in Francistown and the Colonial Development Corporation's abattoir at Lobatsi. There is one workers' organization, the Francistown African Employees' Union. Membership is open to all, irrespective of calling, except Government and Railway employees. It has a nominal membership of 200 but has not hitherto been active.

LABOUR LEGISLATION

The following labour legislation was enacted during the year :

The Works and Machinery Proclamation, Amendment of Schedule (High Commissioner's Notice No. 28 of 1954)

This notice amended the regulations in regard to enquiries after mining accidents.

The Native Labour (Amendment) Proclamation (No. 12 of 1954)

The provisions relating to contracts were amended by this Proclamation.

SAFETY, HEALTH AND WELFARE

This is covered by the previous paragraph.

INDUSTRIAL TRAINING

As the country is almost entirely pastoral there is little demand for industrial training. The Public Works Department trains a few mechanics and artisans and some agricultural teaching is undertaken in the schools.

CHAPTER III

PUBLIC FINANCE AND TAXATION

The financial position of the Protectorate is as follows :			£
General Revenue Balance on 1.4.1953			415,437
	<i>Approved Estimate</i>	<i>Actual Figures</i>	
	£	£	
Ordinary Expenditure	919,689	891,700	
Ordinary Revenue	785,007	908,255	
(Surplus +)	—£134,682	+ £16,555	16,555
(Deficit —)			
			431,992
Colonial Development and Welfare Deficit			14,801
			417,191
Appreciation of Investments			1,962
General Revenue Balance on 1.4.1954			419,153
Under-issues from C.D. & W Fund on 31.3.54			17,977
			<u>£437,130</u>

REVENUE AND EXPENDITURE

Revenue for 1953-54, including receipts from the Colonial Development and Welfare Fund, amounted to £1,016,759 and expenditure including that on Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes was £1,015,005. Details are as follows :

REVENUE		EXPENDITURE	
<i>Head</i>	<i>Amount</i>	<i>Head</i>	<i>Amount</i>
	£		£
Native Tax	136,076	Resident Commissioner	4,365
Customs and Excise	175,961	Administration of Just-	
Posts and Telephones	127,627	ice	17,744
Licences	32,313	Agriculture	22,029
Fees of Court or Office	6,593	Air Service	2,697
Judicial Fines	10,707	Allowances to Chiefs	466

Non-Native Poll Tax	3,087	Audit	3,629
Income Tax	118,332	Contributions to Native Treasuries	43,390
Transfer Duty	8,105	District Administration	48,976
Mining Revenue	—	Education	43,622
Forest Revenue	6,214	Forests	1,938
Cattle Export Tax	65,131	Medical	90,595
Rent from Government Property	18,380	Miscellaneous	63,306
Wayleave payable by Rhodesia Railways	140,000	Pensions & Gratuities	35,822
Miscellaneous	59,729	Police	124,571
		Posts & Telegraphs	22,388
		Public Debt	1,335
		Public Works Department	62,179
		Public Works Recurrent	52,696
		Public Works Extraordinary	129,006
		Secretariat	21,681
		Stores Department	9,895
		Treasury	10,308
		Veterinary	79,062
Total Ordinary Revenue	908,255	Total Ordinary Expenditure	891,700
Colonial Development and Welfare Fund	108,504	Colonial Development and Welfare Fund	123,305
	<u>£1,016,759</u>		<u>£1,015,005</u>
	Surplus £1,754		

The following table reflects the total Ordinary Revenue and Expenditure for the past ten years :

REVENUE

Year	Revenue £	Grant-in-aid United Kingdom Treasury	Total £
1944-45	384,648	—	384,648
1945-46	416,080	—	416,080
1946-47	466,757	—	466,757
1947-48	483,029	—	483,029
1948-49	501,344	—	501,344
1949-50	568,438	—	568,438
1950-51	554,161	—	554,161
1951-52	770,043	—	770,043
1952-53	772,089	—	772,089
1953-54	908,255	—	908,255

EXPENDITURE

<i>Year</i>	<i>Amount</i> £
1944-45	334,838
1945-46	350,179
1946-47	404,779
1947-48	475,503
1948-49	575,683
1949-50	570,646
1950-51	569,309
1951-52	620,087
1952-53	765,311
1953-54	891,700

Expenditure on Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes during the past ten years was as follows :

<i>Year</i>	<i>Amount</i> £
1944-45	49,148
1945-46	28,241
1946-47	60,098
1947-48	47,589
1948-49	65,563
1949-50	105,399
1950-51	117,413
1951-52	137,065
1952-53	182,698
1953-54	123,305

MAIN HEADS OF REVENUE

The main heads of revenue in 1953-54 were Native Tax £136,076; Customs and Excise £175,961; Posts and Telephones £127,627; Licences £32,313; Income Tax £118,332; Cattle Export Tax £65,131; Wayleave payable by Rhodesia Railways £140,000 and Miscellaneous £59,729. All Telegraph revenue accrues to the Southern Rhodesia Post Office, who operate the telegraph in the Protectorate.

PUBLIC DEBT

The public debt amounted to £10,681 on the 31st March, 1954.

ASSETS AND LIABILITIES

The Statement of Assets and Liabilities as at the 31st March, 1954. is as follows :

MAIN HEADS OF TAXATION

(as amended by Proclamation No. 81 of 1953)

Native Tax

(a) *Ordinary £133, 818*: Proclamation 31 of 1949 provides for a tax of £1. 8s. od. per annum payable by every male native of 18 or more years of age. The excess of £28,818 over the estimate was accounted for by the change of the tax year from April to March to the Calendar year and also by the exceptional collections of arrear tax from Africans employed in the Union.

The following table shows the total collections for the last ten years :

<i>Year</i>	<i>Total £</i>
1944-45	79,172
1945-46	78,664
1946-47	79,803
1947-48	82,564
1948-49	83,221
1949-50	86,425
1950-51	95,933
1951-52	103,531
1952-53	102,702
1953-54	133,818

(b) *Graded £2,258*: Proclamation No. 16 of 1949, as amended by Proclamation No. 82 of 1953, provides for a graduated tax payable by all natives and varying from 5s. per annum (for a tax payer owning up to 9 head of stock or earning up to £48 per annum) to £10 per annum (for a tax payer owning over 300 head of stock or earning over £500 per annum) with the exception of the Batlokwa and Bamalete Tribes who pay a tax varying from a minimum of 10s. per annum to a maximum of £15 per annum. Females and minors owning stock are not liable for tax unless they own at least 20 head. A stock owner who is also a wage earner is taxed in accordance with the number of stock he owns or the wages he earns, whichever yields the greater amount of tax. Government only receives the tax collected in respect of districts in which there is no Native Treasury. In other areas the tax accrues to the Native Administrations.

Customs and Excise £175,961

In accordance with the agreement concluded between the Government of the Union of South Africa and the Bechuanaland Protectorate the latter receives 0.27622 per cent of the total import and excise duty collected by the former. Import duty on Union-manufactured spirits, beer and fortified and sparkling wines is collected by the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government. The total collections for 1953-54 exceed the estimate by £32,725 owing to progressive relaxation of import control in the Union of South Africa.

Posts and Telephones £127,627

The following table shows the revenue and expenditure of the Posts and Telephones Department for the last eight years :

<i>Year</i>	<i>Revenue £</i>	<i>Expenditure £</i>	<i>Surplus £</i>
1946-47	30,084	11,958	18,126
1947-48	76,428	11,904	64,524
1948-49	59,220	13,785	45,435
1949-50	64,572	17,477	47,095
1950-51	69,110	14,707	54,403
1951-52	70,395	14,911	55,484
1952-53	77,731	18,208	59,523
1953-54	127,627	22,388	105,239

The unprecedented surplus for 1953-54 is due to the payment of arrears of parcel and mail transit fees in respect of the years 1951 to 1953.

Licences £32,313

An increase of £2,488 was mainly accounted for by higher Trade and Business licence fees.

Fees of Court or Office £6,593

Stamp duties: These are imposed by the Stamp Duties and Fees Proclamation (Cap. 76 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws) and by the rules of the High Court and the rules of the Subordinate Courts. The estimate for the year was exceeded by £2,593.

Non-Native Poll Tax £3,087

The rate laid down by Cap. 75 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws is £3 per annum payable half yearly on the 1st July and 1st January by all males who have attained the age of 21 years and are not liable to pay Native Tax.

Deeds Office

The Stamp Duties, Transfer Duties and other fees are imposed by the Land Registration and Transfer Proclamation (Cap. 89) and the Transfer Duty (Surcharge) Proclamation (Cap. 74). The tariff for the most part is based on the appropriate part of the Second Schedule of the Cape Colony Stamp and Office Fees Act of 1884. The Stamp Duty on Deeds of transfer of immovable property has been increased to bring it into line with the duty applicable in the Union of South Africa.

Masters Fees and Death Duties

These are governed by the Insolvency Proclamation (Cap. 69), the Administration of Estates Proclamation (Cap. 70) and the Death Duties Proclamation (Cap. 71) of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws and are almost identical with those applicable in the Union of South Africa.

Cattle Export Tax £65,131

A tax of £1 upon every head of horned cattle exported from the Protectorate or slaughtered in the Colonial Development Corporation abattoir is provided for under Proclamation 10 of 1952 and Government

Notice No. 64 of 1952. 2s. out of each tax of £1 imposed is paid into the Cattle Export Levy Fund which is used for the general benefit of the livestock industry in the Protectorate.

Income tax £118,332

The collections were £6,668 under the estimate.

The following were the rates of tax, rebates and surcharges on taxable income for the year ended 30th June, 1953, as amended by Proclamation No. 53 of 1953.

Normal Tax

Public Companies: Five shillings and sixpence per £.

Private Companies and Unmarried Persons: Eighteen pence for each pound increased by one-thousandth of a penny for each pound of the taxable income in excess of one pound. If the taxable income exceeds £10,000 the rate is 2s. 4d. per £.

Married Persons: Fifteen pence for each pound increased by one-thousandth of a penny for each pound of the taxable income in excess of one pound. If the taxable income exceeds £10,000 the rate is 2s. 1d. per £.

Rebates:

	£	s.	d.
Married Person	26	0	0
Unmarried Person	20	0	0
Child under 18 years	10	0	0
Child 18-21 years (depend- ent)	10	0	0
Dependant	2	10	0
Insurance	1	3	per £ of premium with maximum of £7. 10s. 0d. (or £4 in the case of a contributor to a Provident or Pension Fund).

Surcharges

Married Persons: 40 per cent of the tax.

Private Companies and unmarried persons: 50 per cent of the tax.
A deduction of Poll Tax paid is made from the tax assessed.

Super Tax

Private Companies and Individuals: Two shillings in the pound plus one four-hundredth of one penny for each pound of the income subject to super tax in excess of one pound less a rebate of £210 from the tax payable. There is a surcharge of 45 per cent in the case of married persons and 50 per cent in the case of unmarried persons. If the income subject to super tax exceeds £10,000 the rate is 4s. 1d. per £.

Public Companies: These are not liable to super tax.

The following table shows the incidence of Income Tax in the Protectorate :

NORMAL TAX

Classification of Assessments Issued in respect of Incomes for the year ended 30th June, 1953 and of prior years during the year ended 30th June, 1954

Income Category £	Number of Taxpayers Individuals			Amount of Taxable Income Individuals			Amount of Tax Payable Individuals			Total
	Married	Single	Compa- nies	Married	Single	Compa- nies	Married	Single	Compa- nies	
Not exceed- ing 300	—	18	5	£ —	£ 4715	£ 921	£ —	£ 66	£ 179	£ 245
301-400	—	61	1	—	21086	340	—	552	39	591
401-500	23	38	1	10731	17054	—	86	734	—	820
501-600	2	41	2	11610	22579	1133	202	1252	130	1584
601-700	38	26	2	24600	16811	1346	452	1044	370	1866
701-800	31	20	—	51	14968	—	467	1076	—	1543
801-900	36	14	1	23311	11818	853	779	927	101	1807
901-1000	47	13	—	44654	12260	—	1117	985	—	2102
1001-1250	79	9	1	87902	10138	1142	2901	834	137	3872
1251-1500	52	6	—	70831	8391	—	3015	583	—	3598
1501-1775	28	4	4	45123	6390	6555	2462	651	1048	4161
1776-2000	14	3	1	26127	5908	2000	1335	641	220	2196
2001-3000	32	5	9	79481	11654	22399	5379	1454	3224	10057
3001-4000	7	5	4	24994	17208	13295	2207	2085	2627	6919
4001-7000	17	3	5	87090	14658	25924	8949	1949	4115	15013
Over 7000	6	1	4	50301	9200	54455	4805	1486	9468	15759
Total	431	267	39	617274	204838	130363	34156	16319	21658	72133

SUPER TAX

Classification of Assessments Issued in respect of Incomes for the year ended 30th June, 1953, and of prior years during the year ended 30th June, 1954

Income Category £	Number of Taxpayers Individuals			Amount of Super Tax Individuals		
	Married	Single	Compa- nies	Married	Single	Compa- nies

SUPER TAX

Classification of Assessments Issued in respect of Incomes for the year ended 30th June, 1953, and prior years during the year ended 30th June, 1954

Income Category £	Number of Taxpayers			Amount of Super Taxable Incomes			Amount of Super Tax Payable		
	Individuals Married	Single	Compa- nies	Individuals		Total	Individuals Married	Single	Total
				Married	Single				
Not exceed- ing 2000	14	2	1	£ 26127	£ 3945	£ 32072	£ 227	£ 83	£ 357
2001-3000	32	6	8	79595	14198	113831	4492	687	6461
3001-4000	7	4	2	24946	14004	45638	2849	1611	5183
4001-7000	18	5	4	89658	25979	134969	12637	4123	19706
Over 7000	7	1	1	58183	10411	82594	10514	2783	17269
Total	78	18	16	278509	68537	409104	30719	9287	48976

Wayleave Payable by Rhodesia Railways £140,000

Under an agreement the Rhodesia Railways pay the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government £140,000 per annum for six years with effect from 1952-53 in respect of wayleave for their railway line which runs through the Protectorate.

Death Duties

The rates are laid down in Cap. 71 of the Laws and are as follows :

(a) Estate Duty

Upon the first £2,000 of dutiable amount $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent.

Upon so much of the dutiable amount as exceeds :

£2,000 and does not exceed £ 3,000 . . . 1 %

£3,000 and does not exceed £ 7,500 . . . 2 %

£7,500 and does not exceed £10,000 . . . 3 %

Thereafter that rate of estate duty upon each pound of the dutiable amount in excess of £10,000 shall be three ten-thousandths of a pound for every completed one hundred pounds or part thereof contained in the dutiable amount, subject to a maximum rate of six shillings and eight pence upon each pound.

(b) Succession Duty

*Degree of Relationship of Successor
to Predecessor*

*Rate of Duty upon Dutiable
Amount of Succession*

- | | |
|---|-----|
| (1) Where the successor is the direct descendant or ascendant of the predecessor | 3% |
| (2) Where the successor is the brother or sister of the predecessor | 5% |
| (3) Where the successor is the descendant of the brother or sister of the predecessor | 8% |
| (4) Where the successor is otherwise related to the predecessor or is a stranger in blood or is in an institution | 12% |

Provided that :

- so much of any dutiable succession as exceeds ten thousand pounds in value shall be subject to an additional duty of one per cent on the amount of such excess ;
- where a successor is married to a person related by blood to the predecessor, the rate of duty chargeable shall be determined by the relationship of whichever of the two spouses is more nearly related to the predecessor ;
- where the predecessor was married to a person related by blood to the successor, the rate of duty chargeable shall be determined by the relationship of the successor to whichever of the predecessor and his or her spouse was more nearly related to the successor.

An agreement (High Commissioner's Notice No. 139 of 1944) for the prevention of the levying of death duties by both parties on the same

assets has been concluded between the Government of the Union of South Africa and the Bechuanaland Protectorate.

Native Treasuries

	<i>Revenue 1953-54</i>	<i>Expenditure 1953-54</i>	<i>General Revenue balance on 13. 3. 54</i>
	£	£	£
Bamangwato	50,221	49,239	74,068
Bakwena	16,200	14,199	34,216
Bakgatla	8,145	7,772	6,865
Tati	9,969	5,623	11,216
Bangwaketse	28,855	19,706	43,646
Batlokwa	1,700	1,120	3,551
Batawana	12,253	7,465	15,316
Barolong	3,606	4,365	10,448
Bamalete	3,276	2,012	5,975

CHAPTER IV

CURRENCY AND BANKING

Union of South Africa currency is legal tender and is used throughout the Protectorate. In the Northern Protectorate Southern Rhodesian currency is also used and accepted at par. The Standard Bank of South Africa, Ltd., and Barclays Bank (D. C. & O), each have branches at Francistown and Lobatsi and both those banks operate once a week at Gaberones by sending representatives from their Lobatsi branches.

CHAPTER V

COMMERCE

A statement of Imports and Exports is at Appendix III. The total figures for the year reflect a healthy trade balance, since the Territory exported £370,260 worth of goods more than it imported. The value of imports fell by £362,981, while that of exports rose by £255,528.

The drop in imports is largely accounted for by the fact that the value of "other foodstuffs" imported fell by nearly £295,000. Textile imports fell by more than £68,000.

Arrangements for the processing, storage and internal distribution of locally grown maize coupled with a good harvest resulted in the value of maize and maize meal imports falling by more than £42,000. Imports of these commodities from the Union amounted to 12,100 bags during the first seven months of the year. Thereafter importation ceased. During the second half of the year approximately 17,000 bags of locally grown maize were exported to the Union and Southern Rhodesia for processing and at the end of the year over 11,000 bags of maize meal had been returned. The balance will probably be used during the first two months of 1955. The value of beans and pulses exported rose by nearly £94,000 and that of sorghum exports by nearly £84,000.

A new and important addition to the table of exports is cattle carcasses. The value of this export was £118,471. This was offset to some extent, however, by a decrease of £64,245 in the value of cattle exported, as the export of live cattle (except those from Ngamiland) was prohibited after the abattoir opened. There was greater competition in the north to obtain cattle from the Territory, and exports to the Rhodesias increased by nearly 7,000, the prices paid being a record. Of the 30,958 head exported to Northern Rhodesia, 8,204 (mostly from Ngamiland) were marketed through Kazungula by the Colonial Development Corporation. The average weight of cattle sold to Northern Rhodesia was 831 lb. compared with 935 lb. the previous year, the drop in weight being due largely to the fact that much of the Ngamiland stock was light and in rather poor condition. Owing to restricted quotas from March to the end of June, exports of live cattle to the Union fell by nearly 7,000 head.

The system of control and allocations of quotas for the new Lobatsi abattoir remained in the hands of the Veterinary Department and was the same as that used in the past for exports to the Union. Prices paid at the abattoir were the same as would have been paid had the animals been sent to Johannesburg ; grading was carried out by an official seconded from the Union Government and all carcasses are roller marked. The standard of meat inspection is basically the same as the Scottish Meat Regulations. From the time of opening to the end of the year, more than 400 tons of beef were sent to the Union, 560 tons to Northern Rhodesia and more than 370 tons to the Belgian Congo.

There was a decrease in the value of hides exported owing to a marked drop in world prices. Interest is being shown in proper suspension-drying of hides.

The export of bones increased by about 500 tons. The prices offered in the eastern Protectorate were high, £13. 10s. od. per ton being the ruling figure. In the Ghanzi district a new trade was started, bones being exported to South West Africa ; 21,000 lb. of these, after processing into bonemeal, were re-imported for use in Ghanzi. The abattoir exported 4,600 lb. of bonemeal.

The Francistown bonemeal factory opened on the 1st August. By the end of the year 280 tons of bonemeal had been made. In order to ensure that the country retained enough bonemeal, a tax of £5 per ton was placed on all bones exported from the country, except those leaving Ghanzi.

Prices for sheep in the Union averaged £3. 13s. od. - an increase of

£1. 3. *od.* on 1953 – and in the northern markets 8½*d.* per lb. liveweight, which is less than in 1953. The average price in the Union for goats was £2. 17*s.* *od.*, an increase of 8*s.* Prices were variable in the north.

More pigs were sent to the Union, in spite of the fact that only limited imports into that country were allowed for the first half of the year and that thereafter they were allowed only from approved piggeries. Southern Rhodesia banned the importation of pigs on the 1st April. This restriction was removed in August, but re-imposed in December. However, producers found a new market in the Congo and in Northern Rhodesia. The average price in Johannesburg was £6 and in the northern markets about £6. 14*s.* *od.*

Fewer horses, mules and donkeys were imported into the Territory.

Poultry exports to the Union rose steeply by more than 13,000. Most of the exports were from the Gaberones district.

Following the imposition of an export tax, there was a decrease in the number of game skins exported, but the export of vermin skins was doubled. The number of calf skins exported was half that of 1953, but this in no way reflected a lower calf mortality. Fewer hippo strips were exported.

During the year, a Livestock and Meat Industries Advisory Board was created. This consists of the Director of Veterinary Services as Chairman, with four European and two African members. The Board met twice during the year. Its functions are to advise Government on all matters connected with the animal industry and the use of the Cattle Export Levy Fund.

In spite of the fact that butterfat production ceased altogether in August, 445,898 lb. of butter was manufactured at the Tati Creamery, of which 286,608 lb. was exported to the Union, 105,250 lb. to the Belgian Congo and 61,350 lb. was consumed in the Territory.

The quantity of asbestos produced (1,011 short tons) was almost double that of the previous year, the value of this product rising from £61,862 in 1953 to £112,690 in 1954. Of the quantity produced, some 885 short tons were exported. More gold and kyanite were mined than in the previous year, but the production of silver fell.

CHAPTER VI

PRODUCTION

LAND UTILIZATION AND TENURE

(a) *Crown Lands (approximate area 165,175 square miles)*

All Crown Lands are vested in the High Commissioner by Orders-in-Council of the 16th May, 1904, and the 10th January, 1910 which are printed on pages 8 and 10 of Volume I of the Laws of the Bechuanaland Protectorate. They are unalienated with the exception of a number of farms in the Ghanzi District and two areas, one at Matetsi and one on the Molopo River, which have been leased to the Colonial Development Corporation.

(b) *The Native Reserves established as follows*

Barolong Farms (approximately 450 square miles) defined in Cap. 29 of the Laws.

Bamangwato Reserve (approximately 42,080 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Batawana Reserve (approximately 34,500 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Bakgatla Reserve (approximately 3,600 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Bakwena Reserve (approximately 15,000 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Bangwaketse Reserve (approximately 9,000 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Bamalete Reserve (approximately 178 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

Batlokwa Reserve (approximately 56 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

All land in the Reserve is vested in the Chief and Tribe and is allocated by the Chief in his discretion. Land does not pass automatically from father to son and cannot be said to be owned by any one person, though in practice, on the death of a person to whom an area has been allocated by the Chief, his heirs usually continue to occupy the same area. No land may be alienated by a Chief or tribe.

An exception to this system has occurred in the Barolong Farms. Although this Block of farms is reserved to the Barolong tribe, it was parcelled out and allocated by a former Chief to various tribesmen for occupation and the farms pass, on the death of the owners to their heirs on a similar basis. Nevertheless the farms are deemed to be the property of the whole tribe.

(c) *The European Farms*

Certain areas of land, known as the Lobatsi Block (approximately 214 square miles), the Gaberones Block (approximately 260 square miles) and the Tuli Block (approximately 1,930 square miles) were granted in perpetuity to the British South Africa Company, with power to sell or lease the land. The boundaries of the blocks are defined in Cap. 92 of the Laws. The blocks have been divided into farms and many of them sold with freehold titles.

(d) *The Tati District*

The Tati District (approximately 2,074 square miles) is owned by the Tati Company Limited, who have full power to sell or lease any portion. Right is reserved to Government to acquire sites for public buildings. Within the Tati District, an area of approximately 320 square miles is set aside as a native reserve for which Government pays to the Company £1,000 a year. No rent is payable by natives living within the reserve. The grant to the Company is governed by Cap. 90 of the Laws.

AGRICULTURE

The extent of cultivation in the northern districts was small compared with the previous season. This was due mainly to the presence of ample food reserves. Low rainfall intensities coupled with good vegetative cover resulted in reduced run-off. The consequent paucity of water supplies in the cultivated areas was also a factor which reduced the extent of ploughing.

In the south, however, ploughing took place on a large scale in almost all districts.

Grazing was plentiful in all areas except in the overgrazed and eroded areas which are beyond natural recovery. Late rains replenished natural water supplies in the south, but in the north-eastern areas such supplies were quickly exhausted, which necessitated early recourse to more permanent supplies from boreholes and wells. Large areas of grazing were burnt indiscriminately during the winter and spring.

The following table shows the rainfall at 11 centres in the Protectorate during the calendar year :

<i>Place</i>	<i>Mean Rainfall (inches)</i>	<i>Rainfall 1954</i>
Ghanzi	17.9	20.8
Kasane	26.6	28.5
Francistown	18.1	17.9
Serowe	16.9	22.4
Mochudi	18.7	13.6
Gaberones	20.5	17.8
Molepolole	19.2	25.9
Kanye	20.6	14.4
Lobatsi	21.9	14.6
Tshabong	11.8	2.6
Maun	17.2	23.3

The crop season was remarkable for the incidence of pests and fungus diseases, which caused considerable damage to crops. Army worm was reported from the north in January, and sometime later from the south, coincident with a severe infestation in adjacent areas of the Union of South Africa. Aphids constituted by far the most serious pest, particularly for sorghum crops, and in the Bamalete reserve whole fields were lost. Late planted sorghum crops were adversely affected by a fungus disease (*Helminthosporium* sp.)

A good harvest was reaped, however, and considerable quantities of grain sorghums, maize, beans and other produce became available for local consumption, sale and export. Good maize crops were reaped in Ngamiland, but crops in the Chobe were again damaged by flooding before they were sufficiently ripe to harvest. After harvest in July until the end of the year the country was largely self-supporting owing to the arrangements made for the processing, storage, exchange and distribution of locally grown maize.

Investigations into the main problems confronting the agriculturalist were continued. This work includes variety trials, fertilizer and manurial trials, espacement and cultural experiments, plant breeding, selection projects and grazing experiments.

Good progress was made and satisfactory yields were obtained in spite of the vagaries of the season. Maize yields of over 10 bags (200 lb.) per acre were recorded from variety trials conducted at Mahalapye, Lobatsi and Morale.

Yields from grain sorghum variety trials were seriously affected by insect pests and fungus diseases, but yields up to 10 bags per acre were recorded for the more early maturing disease-resistant varieties.

A cowpea variety trial conducted at Mahalapye again showed the extreme variation in yields obtained with local varieties from one season to the other. In the wet season, many of these varieties produce very little seed, showing that they are essentially hay types. Further introductions from the Union have been made for inclusion in the trial during the 1954-55 season.

Fertilizer and manurial trials conducted at Lobatsi in the Southern Protectorate again demonstrated that phosphate is the limiting factor in crop production in that area. Yield increases of up to 100 per cent were obtained following applications of phosphatic fertilizers alone, and in combination with kraal manure. These results have been supported by evidence from co-operative experiments conducted at Ranaka and at other points in the Bangwaketse Reserve. The plant breeding project with pearl millet (*Pennisetum typhoideum*) was continued and good progress has been made in the production of pure lines from which a synthetic polycross variety will be evolved.

Trials with groundnuts have continued and five of the most promising varieties are being increased this season prior to distribution. Yields from these varieties of up to 900 lb. of shelled nuts per acre were recorded.

Cultural experiments again showed the importance of moisture conservation and clean cultivation. Sufficient evidence is now available to show that clean cultivation results in a mean increase of 2 bags per acre

of maize. It has also been demonstrated that early ploughing, i.e. with the first rains, is just as effective as winter ploughing. The practice of summer ploughing, i.e. immediately before planting, depresses yields very considerably.

Preliminary results from grazing experiments show that restricting the number of animals to the correct stocking rate is the main consideration in the efficient utilisation of natural pastures in this area.

The stocking rate in all experiments has been maintained at 1 animal unit to 13½ acres. Data obtained so far indicates no difference in the productivity of natural grazing when subjected to different grazing systems. The grazing animals were replaced during the year and those sold realised £41 net per head.

Extension work among African farmers has taken place on an increased scale as additional demonstrators have been appointed under Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Scheme D 680. Demonstrators are now working in the Bakgatla, Bakwena, Bamalete, Batlokwa, Bangwaketse and Tati African Reserves. The first requirement is the inculcation of the first principles of crop production in the minds of the African peasants by demonstration and ceaseless propaganda. Slow but continuous progress is being maintained and in each area there are outstanding men who have quickly appreciated the new methods and have applied them on their fields with very satisfactory financial results. Some of these men have already equipped themselves with all the necessary implements and are fully capable of carrying on by themselves.

Considerable numbers of ploughs, harrows, cultivators and planters have been purchased by peasants during the year. Again, assistance has been given in the marketing of produce to provide cash for this purpose.

Good initial progress was made in the Ranaka Unit Agricultural Project during the year and satisfactory yields were obtained by all peasants who followed closely the teaching and instructions of the demonstrators.

Apart from the Bamalete and Tati African reserves, where the topography lends itself to high run-off rates with consequent very obvious gully and donga erosion, soil erosion in the remainder of the country, although not so spectacular, is no less serious and is mainly due to the concentration of stock around water points and along water courses causing denudation and resultant sheet, gully, and aeolian erosion.

Preliminary investigations have shown that the complete removal of stock and the resting of such areas for two or three seasons results in a considerable degree of rehabilitation. The grass cover is quickly restored by natural propagation and the only mechanical measures required are the ripping of areas where a hard surface pan has formed. This applies, however, only to areas where denudation has so far caused comparatively small soil losses.

The reclamation of dongas and large gullies by mechanical means would not be economical on grazing land, but considerable success in stabilising such damage has been achieved by suitably anchored bush barriers which impede the flow of water and cause a deposit of sand and silt on which vegetation can establish itself, provided stock are excluded. The planting of suitable grasses materially assists the rate of rehabilitation.

Attempts have been made to use bush fences to exclude stock from areas under treatment, but it has been found that, unless constantly renewed, such fences do not give adequate protection for a period long enough to permit natural regeneration.

Dairying made an early start owing to the early heavy rains which caused a flush of grazing, but as the rains ceased earlier than usual in the main dairying areas the season was shorter than usual, butterfat production dropping sharply after March and ceasing in August.

Advantage was taken of the slack period to renovate the Francistown factory by installing a new ammonia compressor, fitting extra brine coils in the refrigeration plant and other minor repairs.

FORESTRY

The Forester, stationed at Serondela in the Chobe District and assisted by a small African staff, continued to supervise the activities of the timber company operating there.

Approximately sixty miles of fire breaks were burnt to protect the forest area from the incursions of veld fires which are of common occurrence in the area during winter. In addition, regular patrols were carried out by the Forest Guards to combat and prevent fires within the forest area.

Eleven coupes were exploited during the year to a depth varying from 2 to 8 miles.

The clearing of slash, which had lagged behind the previous year, caught up with felling operations in September.

There was a good demand for Mukwa (*Pterocarpus angolensis*) logs during the year for plywood purposes. Suitable logs of this species were transported by road to Livingstone for processing.

The only other species felled were Mukusi (*Baikiaea plurijuga*), Muzauli (*Coleospermum coleospermum*), Mopomena (*Entandrophragma candatum*) and Mbaimbai (*Amblygonocarpus obtusangulus*) from which milled wood for railway sleepers and parquet flooring was produced and transported by river to Mambova and thence by road to Livingstone.

The output of timber during the year amounted to 210,832 cubic feet which represents an increase of 21,663 cubic feet on the previous year. The value of this timber is estimated at £122,020 and the royalty accruing to Government amounted to £6,775.

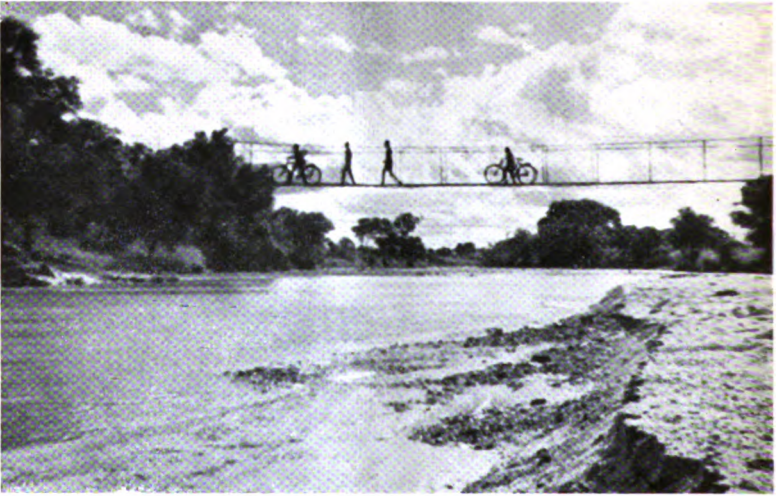
VETERINARY

Grazing - and consequently the condition of stock throughout the Territory - was good until winter, when there was a general deterioration. The Bamalete and Batlokwa Reserves are overstocked. In Ngamiland the grazing was good in the north, but was soon tramped out by over-concentration of cattle along the rivers, the position being further aggravated by an invasion of army worm. In the south, inadequate rainfall did not



Corporal, B. P. Police

PHOTO: *Joan Atkins*



Africans crossing Inchwe River, near Francistown

PHOTO: *G. J. L. Atkinson*



District Commissioner's Office and gaol, Francistown

PHOTO: *G. J. L. Atkinson*

give the grazing a chance and cattle had to live on grass coming up in the flooded basin of Lake Ngami. Redistribution of stock is required in Ngamiland and much propaganda has been spread to get cattle away from the rivers.

In the Bamangwato Reserve, grazing was plentiful in the early part of the year, but veld fires created artificial drought conditions from mid-winter onwards, and the condition of stock fell away towards the end of the year. Here again there was serious overgrazing along the rivers, which retained some surface water.

In the northern and southern Kalahari grazing was plentiful until the last quarter of the year. In both areas lack of surface water supplies prevents full use of the grazing available.

In the European areas progress can be reported. In the Tuli Block more and more fencing is being erected. The feeding of stock in the Lobatsi and Tuli Blocks is now becoming common and in the Gaberones area one farmer has built modern feed yards and silos. It is possible that there will be less breeding carried out in the European blocks on the eastern side of the Territory and that these farmers will become mainly feeders.

In the Serowe area, water supplies gave some cause for anxiety towards the end of the year, but, generally speaking, they were adequate. Along the whole course of the River Botletle, supplies were ample owing to the abnormal flooding of this river. A great deal of departmental propaganda has been made to ensure that cattle get an adequate drink of clean water. This has resulted in many owners installing troughs and windmills. Fifteen boreholes were put down by private enterprise in the Bakgatla Reserve.

More than double the number of cattle castrations were carried out departmentally (24,142 in 1954; 11,753 in 1953). Fewer sheep and goats, however, were castrated (7,546 in 1954; 12,941 in 1953).

The general tendency of the livestock population is illustrated in Appendix IV.

At the Leupane Livestock Centre progress can be reported. The policy to-day is to maintain two breeds, the Africander and the Tswana. Two Tswana bulls and four well-bred Africander bulls were purchased during the year.

At the Good Hope Livestock Centre progress was maintained. A calf crop of 85 per cent was attained; the majority of the males will be worth while putting out into the reserve.

The veterinary bulletin in English was published regularly throughout the year. In January a simplified form was published in the vernacular. Two thousand copies are distributed monthly to all schools, District Commissioners and cattle guards.

In regard to animal diseases, botulism and aphospherosis are rife in the Mahalapye district, where 657 cattle were recorded as dying. In the Lobatsi Block, 286 cattle died from these diseases. In Ngamiland the diseases are common and owners have been advised to burn bones and feed the ash to their cattle. In the Serowe area the diseases are two of the commonest causes of death amongst stock. The Veterinary Officer has

had marked success in two experiments by putting phosphate into drinking water. The diseases have now spread from the poor sandy areas to which they were confined in the past. In the Bakgatla Reserve they are confined to the sandy areas, but fortunately owners are well aware of the dangers and a large amount of vaccine was sold. In the Ghanzi district, many farmers vaccinate their stock.

Paratyphoid took a heavy toll in the Palapye District. It is gratifying to note that the use of vaccine is increasing, although better calf husbandry would improve the situation. A few cases occurred in the Tati Reserve.

Streptothricosis is one of the main menaces in the Chobe District, where deaths have occurred when other debilitating conditions are present. The disease appears to have broken out only in 1950. Intensified measures have been adopted to combat the condition. Free anti-tick spraying is given, and the people have agreed to isolate all affected cattle in one central quarantine under departmental control.

Helminthiasis also causes considerable loss in health and some deaths along the rivers in the Chobe District; in Ngamiland the condition is particularly noticeable.

As regards tick-borne diseases, heartwater occurs in the area along the railway line. Deaths occurring among calves in the Gaberones District and the Bakgatla Reserve are heavy.

Tick-control measures are given free on the Chobe. In the Tati District most farmers are spraying or dipping cattle.

The usual territorial anthrax vaccination campaign was carried out. A few scattered deaths have occurred, but the good effects of this annual campaign are obvious.

Free vaccination against quarter evil was given to all animals under 3½ years old in the Southern Protectorate, with the exception of the Crown Lands in the Kalahari. Once again heavy mortality is reported from the Palapye District. Great improvement has been noticed following the recently introduced compulsory vaccination in the Bakwena Reserve.

In the same districts that free vaccinations against quarter evil were provided, free vaccination against contagious abortion was given to all young heifers. The condition is common throughout the country.

The Southern Protectorate remains free from rabies, but the Northern Protectorate must be considered an endemic area. The disease continues to be centred along the line Rakops, Serowe, Mahalapye and Palapye. Numerous tie-up orders were enforced during the year. Vaccine was made available at a subsidised rate and is extensively used.

Foot and mouth disease did not occur during the year.

The usual few deaths from horse sickness were recorded, but the use of vaccine is becoming more commonplace.

iii. 51.

511 ii

511 L

F I S H E R I E S

There is no fishing industry, though the people living on the Okavango and Chobe Rivers catch a certain amount of fish for local consumption. The fish is netted from canoes.

MINING

The Geological Survey, with headquarters at Lobatsi, consists of six professional officers and is responsible for the mineral development of the Territory. The function of the Survey is primarily the geological mapping of the whole Protectorate, particularly of areas likely to be mineralized. The preliminary exploration of promising mineral deposits is also undertaken and a special survey of the potential coalfields of the Protectorate is in progress. Geophysical methods of prospecting are used, as well as diamond drilling. The officers of the survey also give advice on the siting of water boreholes.

In view of the major part which the production of cattle plays in the economy of the Protectorate it is hoped to enlarge the staff of the survey in order to enable more time to be devoted to the development of water supplies in the grazing areas.

Mineral production during the year was :

Gold	1,216 oz. }	Value £ 15,046
Silver	292 oz. }	
Kyanite	2,054 tons	Value £ 18,513
Asbestos	1,011 tons	Value £112,690

The gold, silver and kyanite are produced in the Tati Concession, the mineral rights in which are owned by the Tati Company. The asbestos is all produced from a mine at Moshaneng, near Kanye, which belongs to the Bangwaketse Tribe and is worked by a mining company on a royalty basis. The royalty accrues to the Native Treasury. The Geological Survey advises on the development of the mines and was responsible for the discovery of the kyanite deposit. Regular inspections of the mining operations are carried out by an inspector of mines whose services are lent by the Government of Southern Rhodesia.

Geological field work takes place during the dry season from April to November or December and during the rest of the year the geologists are centred at the Lobatsi headquarters and engaged in working up the results of the field season. The premises in Lobatsi are small but contain the necessary equipment for the examination of specimens and the drafting of maps. There is a small reference library and essential mining and geological periodicals are taken.

A chemical and mineralogical laboratory has been built up in Lobatsi and is in the charge of the Chemist-Petrologist. The instruments and facilities are not elaborate but provide the necessary service of analysing and reporting on specimens collected by the public and the survey staff. During the field season all the material sent in by field officers is given a preliminary examination by the Chemist-Petrologist and his report advises them on the value of their discoveries. Information from all water boreholes in the Territory as to the quantity and quality of the supply and the strata traversed is collected and indexed. An efficient plant has been constructed for the preparation of thin sections of rocks and minerals and is operated by an African technician. Polished sections

of ore-minerals are also made and studied in the laboratory. A card index of all mineral occurrences of possible value in the Protectorate is being compiled.

The major undertakings during the year were a detailed geological and geophysical survey of the Bushman Mine north-west of Francistown, a geological survey of the area surrounding the Moshaneng asbestos mine and the continued exploration of the extension into the territory of the Waterberg coalfield of the Transvaal.

An innovation during the year was the visit of a geologist from the University of Glasgow : with the help of one of his students he mapped an important alkaline complex at Semarule near Molepolole. No minerals of economic value were discovered, but the geological results obtained will be of great value in the further mapping of the south-eastern portion of the Protectorate.

The outstanding work of the year was the completion of a geological and geophysical survey of the Bushman Mine shear zone 70 miles north-west of Francistown. This is a copper deposit which was worked in pre-historic times and is marked by a succession of ancient workings. European interest dates from the beginning of the present century and culminated in a period of limited production from 1915 to 1918. Development was hindered by the difficulty of access and only the rich surface deposits were worked. The mineral rights previously held on the deposit have now lapsed and have reverted to the Bamangwato Tribe. The Geological Survey has carried out a geophysical investigation involving the cutting of 97 miles of survey lines and has shown that the shear zone extends for 16 miles in a NNE - SSW direction. Copper mineralization was found at several points along this zone and the geophysical survey indicated a number of favourable areas that would require further exploration. The rich copper ores shown in the surface workings are of limited extent and the future of the mine depends on ascertaining whether the deposits continue in depth with values high enough for working on an economic scale.

The survey of the Moshaneng asbestos mine involved 1,000 square miles of reconnaissance geological mapping and 50 square miles of detailed mapping in the vicinity of the mine. The geological factors controlling the formation of the deposit were brought out by the mapping and knowledge of them will be of value in the search for further occurrences of asbestos.

- The Waterberg coalfield of the Transvaal crosses the Limpopo River and extends into the Protectorate in the Tuli Block and Bamangwato Reserve south-east of Mahalapye. The Geological Survey began the exploration of this area during the year, but it was found that the coal seams lay too deep for exploitation or were too thin to be of economic value. In November the efforts of the survey were directed to the Artesia-Debeeti and Palapye areas.

MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES

There are none.

CO-OPERATIVE SOCIETIES

There are no established societies.

CHAPTER VII

SOCIAL SERVICES

1. EDUCATION

The problems of administration and control of education in Bechuanaland present unusual difficulties resulting from a number of factors, the chief of which are :

- (1) the territory's great size and extraordinary difficulties of communication and travel ;
- (2) the limited financial resources ; and
- (3) the very small part played by mission societies and other voluntary agencies in education.

EDUCATION DEPARTMENT

The European professional staff of the Education Department in 1947 was 6. For reasons of economy the establishment was later reduced to 5 and the effective strength became 4 when in July, 1952, the Homecrafts Education Officer resigned. Subsequent advertisements have not produced a suitable replacement. Similarly of an African inspectorate comprising 1 Education Officer and 6 Supervisors of Schools only five of the posts were filled.

AFRICAN EDUCATION

The schools of the Protectorate consist of one Teacher Training College conducted by Government ; 2 Secondary Boarding Schools, of which one is the Roman Catholic Mission College at Khale and the other the Bamangwato College at Moeng, built by the Bamangwato tribe ; 2 tribal day secondary schools ; 142 primary schools, of which 115 were conducted by tribal school Committees, 24 by Government in the Crown Lands, and 3 by Missions. The total numbers of pupils were :

at the Training College 54 ; in secondary schools 188 ; in primary schools 19,783. 12,512 of the pupils were girls and 7,508 boys.

The Dutch Reformed Church also conducts a small Homecrafts Centre which offers a two-year course for girls, and a one-year course for teachers already qualified who wish to specialize in the teaching of homecrafts.

The average school-going age is difficult to assess with accuracy, varying as it does between 6 and at least 12 years. Many children do not know their ages. However, an average admission age of $8\frac{1}{2}$ years might be approximately correct. The average school life is not more than 4 years.

The Education Department exercises professional control and direction of all education in the Protectorate and is directly responsible for the administration of the Teacher Training College and of schools in the Crown Lands. Tribal schools are tribally financed with the exception of the Bamangwato College which, like the Mission schools, is Government aided.

The present temporary Teacher Training College, with accommodation for approximately 50 pupils, will be replaced by a new training school of double that capacity for which a Colonial Development and Welfare building grant of almost £39,000 is available. From the present college and from extra-territorial institutions an annual average number of 30 qualified teachers is recruited to meet wastage through resignation and gradually to replace the unqualified teachers, now rather less than 50 per cent of the total of over 500 African teachers.

Until 1953 the Bechuanaland Protectorate was dependent on neighbouring territories, particularly on the Union of South Africa, for a great deal of secondary education, practically all vocational education and all higher education but the Union did not accept any new extra-territorial secondary and vocational students into its schools in 1954 : the universities will continue to take High Commission Territories students until 1958 and before that date it is hoped that the Central African University College should be in operation. Meantime the Protectorate has extended facilities for secondary academic education while students taking vocational training and higher teacher training have been accepted in Basutoland institutions.

The number of Protectorate African students attending university is small. In 1954 one began a medical course, one was taking a science course and two were taking arts courses. All received Protectorate bursaries.

EUROPEAN EDUCATION

For the small European community, 9 primary schools are conducted, 2 by Government and 7 by local Committees. At Ghanzi, the most remote European settlement in Southern Africa, a boarding school capable of accommodating 60 pupils was opened in 1953. The total cost of the school was almost £16,000 of which the community contributed £2,000.

This school is run on farm-school lines, offering practical rural training as well as the usual academic subjects. Statistics of pupils attending European schools in the Protectorate show a total number of about 290, with a slight majority of boys, and 3 out of every 5 coming from Afrikaans-speaking homes.

Older children, and those for whom no local primary education exists, attend schools in the Union of South Africa and in Southern Rhodesia. Exact figures are not available but the number is about 170, most of whom receive Government grants or bursaries.

COLOURED EDUCATION

The Eurafrican community in Bechuanaland is small and most of their children attend African Tribal schools. There are, however, 5 small Coloured schools at which 209 pupils were enrolled during 1954. Of the 8 teachers employed, only 3 were qualified.

COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE FUND

Under Scheme D. 1045 (Improvement of Education) a sum of £90,090 was made available for capital and recurrent expenditure in the Protectorate in the period 1st April, 1948, to 31st March, 1956. Of this sum, £3,500 capital expenditure was provided for the Lobatsi European School and £14,590 for the Ghanzi European Boarding School; £39,000 is earmarked for the erection and equipment of an African Teacher Training College.

The balance of £34,000 is being devoted to recurrent expenditure in encouraging Agricultural Education and Homecrafts Education. Under a separate scheme, D. 1930, a grant-in-aid of £1,000 was made to St. Joseph's College, Khale, to assist towards costs of additional buildings necessitated by increased enrolments.

ADULT EDUCATION

Funds available for education are so limited that little can be done beyond providing ordinary schooling for the children who wish, or who are able, to attend school, i. e. approximately one-third of the estimated number of school-going age.

FINANCE

Estimated expenditure on education in the Protectorate for the calendar year 1954 was as follows :

From Government sources	£52,000
" Tribal sources	54,033
" Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes	2,123
" Missions (approximately)	5,500
Total	<u>£113,656</u>

2. PUBLIC HEALTH

During 1954, 371,874 outpatients were seen, compared with 257,709 during the previous year. 10,136 patients were admitted to Government and Missionary hospitals (1953 : 8,751). The classification of diseases in accordance with the World Health Organisation nosological returns is at Appendix VII. This classification deals only with first attendances of which there were 125,824. The proportion of males to females was 1 : 2.3.

30,535 recruits were examined during the year, mainly for the Rand and Orange Free State gold mines and the Cape manganese mines. Of these 15,318 were from tropical areas. The percentage of rejects was 2.2.

Mining is the principal occupation of the migratory indigenous male population. A number are occupied in local business ventures of various kinds mainly as employees. The great majority of the population are farmers.

All mine labourers who are repatriated because of illness or injury are notified to the Director of Medical Services who informs the Medical Officer of the district from which the recruit originally emanated. This enables supervision to be maintained for those requiring it and is of particular value in cases repatriated because of pulmonary tuberculosis.

HOSPITALS AND DISPENSARIES

There are Government Hospitals at the following centres :

	<i>Beds</i>
Lobatsi	111
Lobatsi Mental Home	21
Serowe	111
Francistown	52
Maun.	38
Total	<u>333</u>

The bringing into use of 10 additional beds at the Lobatsi Mental Home (which, although installed last year, had not been used) has eased quite considerably the calls for accommodation of an urgent nature which often could not be met. This accommodation, taken in conjunction with the acceptance by Southern Rhodesia from this territory of mental patients of the classes who are dangerous or who are likely to benefit from modern institutional treatment, is sufficient to provide for our immediate needs.

The policy is also maintained of placing under the care of relatives those harmless mental patients of the "village idiot" type for whom no treatment is of avail.

New mental legislation has been drawn up and it is hoped to have this promulgated at an early date.

There are Government dispensaries at :

Gabane	*Makobo's Kraal	*Sefhare
Gaberones	*Moeng	*Schitwa
*Good Hope	Nokanen	Shakawe
Kalamari	Palapye	Shoshong
Kalkfontein	*Palla Road	Tonoto
Machaneng	Rakops	Tsau
Mahalapye (9 beds for emergency gencies)	Ramoutsa	Tshane

* No government buildings available, but accommodation improvised for visits which take place at least monthly, usually weekly.

In addition there are the following mission hospitals and dispensaries :

	<i>Beds</i>
Kanye Seventh Day Adventist Mission	72
Kanye United Free Church of Scotland	33
Molepolole United Free Church of Scotland	56
Mochudi Dutch Reformed Church Mission	21
Maun London Missionary Society's Maternity Centre	12
Ramoutsa Hermannsburg Lutheran Mission	13
Ramoutsa St. Konrad's Catholic Mission	—
Khale Roman Catholic Mission	5
Also - Kazungula Witwatersrand Native Labour Association for employees	6
	218

The total number of beds is 560, an increase of 28 compared with the previous year. There are now 1·9 beds per 1,000 of the population.

Missionary Medical Officers visit the following outlying centres at regular intervals: Ga-Thamaga, Moshupa, Kakia, Tshane, Ranaka, Digawana, Molapoabojang, Mmathethe, Magweraapitse, Mokgomane, Pitsane-Molopo, Tshidilamolomo, Moshaneng.

Plans are now being drawn up to erect a new dispensary unit at Gaberones with provision for about 6 beds.

The professional staff of the department consists of the Director, 11 Medical Officers, 4 matrons and 13 nursing sisters. There is also provision for a Medical Officer of Health but this appointment was not made during 1954. There are 3 Health Inspectors and 2 Rodent Inspectors.

5 Missionary Medical Officers were employed throughout the year. One Mission station normally employing a doctor was unable to recruit one. The nearest Government Medical Officer had to be seconded to this Mission hospital on a part-time basis.

The training of African nurses remains a three years course in general medical and surgical nursing and a one-year course in midwifery, at the end of which they receive a local certificate and are recognised as Staff Nurses. The control of all nursing staff is assumed by the High Commission Territories Nursing Council on which all three High Commission Territories are represented.

During 1954 the nursing examination results were :

- 42 Passes
- 14 Passes with Merit
- 3 Passes with Honours
- 10 Failures.

African pupil dispensers and pupil sanitary inspectors receive training under the direction of Medical Officers and Health Inspectors and are required to pass local examinations.

EPIDEMIC AND GENERAL DISEASES

Yellow Fever

Following the World Health Organisation Seminar on Yellow Fever held at Kampala in September, 1953, at which the latest available details regarding the results of immunity surveys carried out here were conveyed to the meeting, a portion of this territory was once again included in the endemic zone of Africa. This, according to the World Health Organisation Bulletin, consists of that area within a line running along the boundary between Angola and South West Africa to the Okovango River, then following that river as far as and including Maun in the Protectorate, then running along the eastern border of the Okovango swamps and the Chobe River along the line of that river to its junction with the Zambesi River.

The whole of the Protectorate is considered a receptive area.

As a result of this, legislation - Government Notice No. 24 of 1954 - was introduced to enable full control to be maintained.

Plague

No human case recorded during the year. Plague precautionary measures continued throughout the Ngamiland, Chobe and Kgalagadi areas, no fewer than 20,836 huts being treated with 10,800 lb. of 10 per cent D. D. T. in talc. 4,453 miles were covered by the rodent staff in carrying

out these and other flea and rodent control measures. There is as yet no evidence that fleas have developed D. D. T. resistance, with the possible exception of the chicken-flea (*Echidophaga*). The question of combining D. D. T. with B. H. C. to cope with the chicken flea, which can also transmit plague, and with *Ornithodoros Moubata*, the vector of relapsing fever, is now receiving attention. It is of interest to note that in 3,602 huts which are regularly treated with 10 per cent D. D. T. in talc, only 37 fleas – almost entirely *Echidophaga* – were found.

Tuberculosis

This disease continues to give considerable cause for concern. An approach has been made to World Health Organisation for financial and other assistance and some budgetary provision has already been made by that organisation. Accommodation for 20 patients is being provided immediately at Francistown hospital and the provision of further facilities for the isolation and treatment of such patients is now being planned.

Venereal Disease

A World Health Organisation and U. N. I. C. E. F. – assisted programme is making good progress. 36,000 people in one Reserve have been fully investigated and a wealth of detail from 36,000 cards is now being extracted. This investigation has been clinical, radiological, biochemical, serological, familial and tribal. It is expected that a mass treatment campaign throughout the territory will shortly begin.

Malaria

1,472 cases were recorded during the year as compared with 1,865 during 1953.

Routine anti-malarial control work was carried out in the endemic areas. At Maun the flood water level was very high, reputedly as high as that of 1925. Both larvicidal and adulticidal measures were intensified there.

Distribution of Malaria cases

Francistown	315
Gaberones	10
Kanye	16
Lobatsi	8
Mahalapye	17
Maun.	807
Mochudi	23
Molepolole	120
Serowe	156
Total	1,472

Meningitis

Sporadic cases of meningococcal meningitis were reported from Ngami-land. One case near the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association com-

pound at Maun gave cause for some concern but the precautionary measures adopted succeeded in preventing further spread despite favourable local conditions.

Rabies

1,671 anti-rabies inoculations were given to persons bitten by suspected rabid animals.

Diphtheria

132 cases were recorded with 16 deaths, a mortality rate of 12·12 per cent. This compares with 166 cases, and 11 deaths during the previous year. The disease appeared to be far more widespread than in previous years and considerable travelling had to be undertaken to remote areas to deal with the situation. In the past, prophylactic inoculations against this disease have been carried out as the need arose, but plans are now being formulated for a mass inoculation campaign for both the school-child and the pre-school child.

The distribution was as follows :

	<i>Cases</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
Francistown.	26	3
Gaberones	5	—
Kanye	3	—
Lobatsi	12	1
Mahalapye	10	2
Mochudi	5	—
Molepolole	12	1
Ramoutsa	5	—
Serowe	54	9
	132	16

Trypanosomiasis

Only two cases were reported during the year, neither in Tsetse Fly Control personnel.

Finance

Revenue for the year was £7,437 compared with £6,876 during 1953. Departmental expenditure from Estimates was £90,594 which is 10·15 per cent of the total ordinary expenditure of the territory from Estimates.

3. HOUSING AND TOWN PLANNING

The majority of the people live in the traditional type of hut with mud walls and a thatched roof. The type and soundness of construction vary considerably, but on the whole the huts are maintained in good condition. They are usually constructed by the owner and his family, sometimes with help from friends, on land allocated by the Chief or local

headman. Even in the towns there is little or no overcrowding and there are no slums.

A few of the wealthier Africans have European-type houses built. Europeans usually live in detached houses of brick or concrete.

Public Health Regulations, made under Cap. 49 of the Laws, are administered by the Medical Officer of Health and Health Inspectors in the major centres of population. It is not always possible for the smaller centres to be inspected regularly but the absence of overcrowding makes rigid enforcement of many of the regulations unnecessary.

Seven prefabricated houses were completed and other houses, both for Europeans and Africans, were under construction by the Government at the end of the year.

4. SOCIAL WELFARE

The Bechuana mode of life being largely communal, many social problems are effectively solved within the framework of tribal law and custom. The sense of communal obligation is very real and the care of orphans, the aged and infirm is voluntarily undertaken by relatives according to an established order of responsibility.

An annual Government provision of £600 is available, if required, for the relief of destitution, and Government and Mission hospitals and clinics are established at strategic points to deal with serious illness or disease.

Throughout the whole sphere of social welfare, official schemes are designed to augment, rather than to replace, those operating within the tribal social structure.

REHABILITATION OF AFRICAN EX-SOLDIERS

The Bechuana Soldiers Benefit Fund has been closed by the National Council of the African Advisory Council to all but Bamangwato applicants, who for political reasons have been without a District Welfare Board for a few years and so have been unable to submit applications.

YOUTH MOVEMENTS

The Boy Scout and Girl Guide Movements continue to make steady progress, their joint membership now totalling over 4,300.

MOBILE CINEMA

The Mobile Cinema gave 96 shows during the year to average audiences of approximately 1,500 people – a total year's audience of approximately 144,000. To complete this circuit, the unit travelled 11,000 miles, much

of the distance over very difficult tracks. Most of the films are educational or instructional films produced by the Colonial and Crown Film Units and supplied by the United Kingdom Information Office. A limited number of specially recommended films is purchased for the library. Notable amongst these is 'The Two Farmers', a coloured film of the 'how-to and how-not-to-do-it' kind, which is extremely popular.

Films are also lent regularly to St. Joseph's College, the Lobatsi European School and the Bechuanaland Protectorate Police Depot, Gaborone.

COMMUNITY CENTRES

An African sports and social club is established at Francistown where members can read, write, play games and attend lectures, film and film strip shows and entertainments. A cultural club for Africans has also recently been formed on the lines of the Serowe Readers Club.

CHAPTER VIII LEGISLATION

The following were the principal enactments during the year :

- (1) High Commissioner's Notice No. 3. Export Duty on Hoofed Game Skins and Hippopotamus Hide : This Notice imposed export duty on these commodities.
- (2) Proclamation No. 11. Stock Theft (Amendment) : Increased the penalties for stock theft.
- (3) Proclamation No. 19. High Court : Consolidated and amended the laws relating to the High Court.
- (4) Government Notice No. 24 : Regulations for the prevention of the spread of Yellow Fever.
- (5) Proclamation No. 38. Inquests : Consolidated and amended the law relating to the holding of inquests.
- (6) Proclamation No. 40. Pensions (Consolidation) (Amendment) and High Commissioner's Notice No. 87 : Effected various improvements to the pensions law.
- (7) Government Notice No. 39. Regulations for the Slaughter of Animals in Public Abattoirs and Export Slaughter Houses. These regulations laid down humane methods of slaughter.
- (8) Government Notice No. 41 : Regulations for the Inspection of Meat and Control of Public Abattoirs and Export Slaughter Houses.

- (9) Proclamation No. 58. Income Tax (Rates and Amendment): Fixed the rate of normal and super income tax for the year of assessment ended on the 30th June, 1954. This Proclamation also amended the principal law.
- (10) Proclamation No. 60. Auction Dues: Consolidated and amended the law relating to payment of duty on the proceeds of auction sales.
- (11) Proclamation No. 61. General Administration: Governed the appointment of a Resident Commissioner and other Administrative Officers to conform with general practice, as well as dealing with general routine administration.
- (12) Proclamation No. 73. Court of Appeal: Dealt with the Court of Appeal for the three High Commission Territories, which had been established by an Order in Council, and with criminal and civil appeals. At the same time, the Proclamation prescribed the jurisdiction and powers of the Court of Appeal.
- (13) Proclamation No. 75. Motor Vehicle and Road Traffic (Amendment): Amended the principal law in respect of the licensing and registration of certain motor vehicles.

CHAPTER IX

JUSTICE, POLICE AND PRISONS

I. JUSTICE

In criminal matters the High Court and Subordinate Courts are governed by the Criminal Procedure and Evidence Proclamation. This Proclamation follows the criminal law in force in the Union of South Africa.

In civil matters, except where native law and custom are involved, the Roman Dutch Common Law in force in the Union of South Africa is followed.

This is so because in the Bechuanaland Protectorate the Cape of Good Hope laws promulgated up to the 10th June, 1891, remain in force, except where repealed or altered by Proclamation by the High Commissioner. The Bechuanaland Protectorate Courts of Law consist of:

I. HIGH COURT

The High Court is a Superior Court of Record and, in addition to any other jurisdiction conferred by the local law, possesses and exercises all the jurisdiction, power, and authorities vested in the Supreme Court of South Africa.

Although the decision in every case, civil and criminal, is vested exclusively in the presiding Judge, he sits with four Assessors (two Administrative Officers and two Africans) who act in an advisory capacity.

In practice all four Assessors sit in every criminal trial and in every criminal appeal.

In civil cases the practice is for the Judge to sit alone where only law, other than native law and custom, and not fact is involved. Where native law and custom is involved the Judge sits with all four Assessors or with two African Assessors only, depending on the character of each particular case.

A local Court of Appeal is about to be established. The necessary Order in Council and local Proclamation have been promulgated and will be brought into force early in 1955.

2. SUBORDINATE COURTS

OF THE FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD CLASS

In the twelve districts of the Territory there are Subordinate Courts of the First, Second and Third Class presided over by Administrative Officers. A recent amendment to the law permits Magistrates to be appointed also to preside in these Courts. Appeals lie from all these Subordinate Courts to the High Court.

(a) *Criminal*

(i) *First Class*: Can impose sentences up to a maximum of two years imprisonment with or without hard labour, or a fine up to one hundred pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum imprisonment of two years is not exceeded. In certain cases and subject to certain safeguards a whipping not exceeding fifteen strokes with a cane may be imposed.

(ii) *Second Class*: The maximum sentence is imprisonment with or without hard labour up to one year, or a fine not exceeding fifty pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum sentence of one year is not exceeded. A whipping not exceeding eight strokes with a cane may be imposed in certain cases and subject to certain safeguards.

(iii) *Third Class*: The maximum sentence is imprisonment with or without hard labour up to six months, or a fine not exceeding twenty-five pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum sentence of six months is not exceeded. A Third Class Court cannot impose a sentence of whipping.

Subordinate courts have no power to try a person charged with treason, murder, rape, sedition or an offence relating to coinage or currency, except that the Attorney-General may remit a rape case for trial by a Subordinate Court and a rape case in which only Africans are involved may be tried by a Subordinate Court without such remittal.

(b) Increased Criminal Jurisdiction

The Attorney-General may remit a case (not being treason, murder, sedition or an offence relating to coinage or currency) to a Subordinate Court for trial with increased jurisdiction, after the holding of a preparatory examination. When so remitted with increased jurisdiction the powers of punishment are :

(a) *First Class* : Imprisonment up to four years ; fine not exceeding two hundred pounds,

(b) *Second Class* : Imprisonment up to two years ; fine not exceeding one hundred pounds.

Note : There is no remittal to a Third Class Court and therefore no increased jurisdiction for such a Court.

(c) Criminal Review

In criminal cases all sentences by Subordinate Courts of the First Class are subject to review by the High Court when the punishment imposed exceeds six months' imprisonment or a fine exceeding fifty pounds.

As regards the Second and Third Class Subordinate Courts they are also subject to review by the High Court when the punishment exceeds three months' imprisonment or a fine exceeding twenty-five pounds.

(d) Civil

In civil cases Subordinate Courts of the First Class have jurisdiction in all actions where both parties are Africans, subject to the right of such courts to transfer cases to the Native Courts for hearing, and in all other actions where the claim or value of the matter in dispute does not exceed five hundred pounds, and of the Second Class where the matter in dispute does not exceed two hundred and fifty pounds. Third Class Subordinate Courts can try civil actions between Europeans when the claim is not more than ten pounds.

3. NATIVE COURTS

These are governed by Cap. 5 of the Laws.

JUDICIAL AND LEGAL DEPARTMENTS**I. JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT**

This department is headed by the Chief Justice, who is also Chief Justice of Basutoland and Swaziland. He is resident at Maseru in Basutoland and holds Sessions in the Bechuanaland Protectorate when necessary.

Under the Chief Justice there are the Registrar, High Court, and the various presiding Officers of the Subordinate Courts – that is Administrative Officers in their judicial capacity.

During the year under review the following statistics are of interest :

(a) *High Court*

In criminal trials three persons were indicted of whom all were eighteen years or over. There were three charges against those persons on which there were two convictions and one acquittal; one of those convictions was for murder.

Criminal review cases from Subordinate Courts totalled one hundred and twelve. There were sixteen criminal appeals of which eleven were dismissed, four were allowed and one was pending at the end of the year.

There were nineteen civil cases of which sixteen were disposed of and three were pending at the end of the year.

Civil appeals from Subordinate Courts totalled three, all of which were dismissed.

(b) *Subordinate Courts*

In criminal cases 3,908 persons were tried of whom 110 were under eighteen years of age. There were convictions on 4,277 charges and acquittals on 185 charges. Most of the charges were in respect of offences (other than murder) against the person, stock theft, offences (other than stock theft) against property, liquor and drug offences.

Including those pending at the end of 1953, and those registered in 1954, there were 736 civil cases of which 539 were heard. The reason the remainder were not heard is because the parties did not set them down for hearing.

2. LEGAL DEPARTMENT

Duties of the Legal Department comprise, on the one hand, the work of the Master of the High Court and Registrar of Deeds together with various other Registries, those of United Kingdom Trade Marks, Union of South Africa Trade Marks and Patents, Births and Deaths, and Brands; and on the other hand the performance of various legal duties for Government, such as the drafting of certain legislation, handling of litigation, control of Crown Leases, and general assistance in the legal field.

Statistics in respect of the several Registries for 1954 show as follows:

(a) *Master's Office*

The number of new Estates filed was 23 and a proportionate number of old Estates were dealt with or completed.

(b) *Sheriff's Office*

Arrangements were made for the execution of 2 death sentences and for the service or execution of 26 processes of different kinds.

(c) *Deeds Registry*

(i) 75 transfers of immovable property were registered; the purchase prices or valuations of such property amounting to £250,258.

(ii) 41 bonds were registered involving loans amounting to £149,258. In addition, bonds were cancelled or ceded.

(iii) various companies etc. were registered.

(iv) in addition, numerous searches were made at the instance of the banks and attorneys and considerable research was conducted to establish the balances of land held by the British South Africa Company.

(d) *Trade Marks and Patents*

3 Patents, 40 Union Trade Marks and 20 United Kingdom Trade Marks were registered and many assignments and renewals were also recorded.

(e) *Births, Marriages and Deaths*

85 births were registered, of which 67 (51 Europeans, 16 Asiatics and Coloureds) actually took place in 1954; 17 deaths were registered, of which 16 (Europeans) actually took place in 1954; and 371 marriages (all races) were registered.

(f) *Brands*

183 Brands were registered.

(g) *Crown Leases*

Control was maintained over 81 Crown Leases.

II. POLICE

The authorised establishment of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Police Force in 1954 was 48 European police officers and 306 African policemen. There was a shortage of 10 European officers at the end of the year.

Force Headquarters are at Mafeking, in the Union of South Africa. There are 31 police stations and posts in the Territory (not including the Police Training Depot) grouped into six police districts which in turn form two divisions.

European recruitment was carried out in the United Kingdom, the Union and Southern Rhodesia with disappointing results. No difficulties were encountered in recruiting Africans, the majority of whom were indigenous.

The total number of cases handled by police in 1954 was 6,009 – an increase of 779 cases over the figure for 1953, which was itself the highest figure then on record.

At the end of the year the number of cases still under investigation was 429.

The number of stock theft cases investigated was 253 – a drop of 74 cases.

1,119 head of stock (the highest on record) were reported stolen and only 326 head were recovered.

An analysis of serious crime handled by the police during the year reveals that of the total of 1,487 cases, 918 were disposed of by the Courts and 1,004 persons were convicted. 253 of the cases remained under in-

vestigation, 69 were found false on enquiry, 74 were closed as undetected, 95 were withdrawn by the police before issue of process and 16 were closed upon issue of warrants of arrest, the accused persons still being at large.

The police are responsible for immigration control. Statistics reveal that 440 British Subjects were granted residential permits and that 10 Europeans, 1 Asiatic and 2 Eurafricans were declared to be Prohibited Immigrants.

III. PRISONS

There are two gaols in the Territory at Gaberones and Francistown and there are lock-ups at Lobatsi, Mochudi, Tshabong, Maun, Kasane, Serowe, Palapye, Mahalapye, Machaneng, Kanye, Molepolole and Ghanzi. The prisons and lock-ups are in charge of the District Commissioner in each district; at Francistown and Gaberones gaols there is a European gaoler but all the lock-ups are staffed with African warders. There is a permanent wardress at Francistown and another at Gaberones and if a female prisoner is admitted to one of the lock-ups, temporary wardresses are engaged. At Maun, Serowe and Gaberones there are gaol cooks; at the other prisons and lock-ups the cooking is satisfactorily done by prisoners. The average daily prison population for all gaols was 331 '9.

Offences against prison discipline, not including escapes, amounted to 18; 34 prisoners escaped, all from working parties outside the prisons; 28 of them were recaptured.

The health of the prisoners during the year was good, the daily average on the sick list being only 11 '2. There are no facilities for the education of prisoners though elementary peasant agriculture is taught on the gaol plot at Gaberones gaol.

Remission of sentences is governed by paragraphs 153-158 of the Prison Regulations (Cap. 54 of the Laws), which provide that every prisoner serving a sentence for a period exceeding one month shall, according to his conduct and industry, be allowed an ordinary remission not exceeding one-third of his sentence. Remission can be forfeited for prison offences or generally bad behaviour.

Power is also vested in the High Commissioner to allow special remissions.

There are no approved schools or similar institutions in the Territory nor are there any arrangements for the aftercare of discharged prisoners but District Commissioners are very ready to render them any assistance possible.

CHAPTER X

PUBLIC UTILITIES AND PUBLIC WORKS

At Francistown there is an electricity supply owned and operated by the Tati Company. The Colonial Development Corporation at Lobatsi has installed a power station and supplies its own works and buildings, the hotel and a number of private persons. Each Government hospital in the Territory generates its own electricity (all have X-ray apparatus) and a few residents and hotels have installed private electric plants. The Government workshop at Gaberones also has its own plant. At each district headquarters and at Palapye, Mahalapye and Ramathlabama Government provides a water supply for its own use and for its employees but it is not generally available for the public.

Apart from these services, and from the railway, telegraph and telephone system, there are no public utilities.

The work of the Public Works Department covers and includes all activities connected with :

- (a) Construction and maintenance of roads and bridges.
- (b) Construction and maintenance of buildings.
- (c) Provision and maintenance of water supplies.
- (d) Maintenance of waterways.
- (e) Maintenance of mechanical transport and running of garages and central workshops.
- (f) Construction and maintenance of aerodromes and emergency landing grounds.
- (g) Geodetic and topographical surveys.
- (h) Town planning and development.

WATER SUPPLIES

Surface water development was carried out under Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Schemes D. 990 and D. 990 a, which allowed an expenditure of £35,378 for the year.

Eight stock dams were constructed during the year, and a water collecting gallery for Railway water supplies completed at Mahalapye.

The number of stock dams now completed stands as follows :

Bakgatla Reserve . .	7
Bangwaketse Reserve . .	18
Bakwena Reserve . .	21
Batlokwa Reserve . .	1
Bamalete Reserve . .	1
Bamangwato Reserve . .	14

Dams are under construction at Mokwe and at Tskung, in the Barna-ngwato Reserve.

Work has begun on a water supply for the Railways at Palapye. When completed, the dam will be capable of holding sixty million gallons of water and will extend three miles upstream of the wall.

Other water supplies are obtained from boreholes financed from the C. D. and W. F. Schemes D. 678 and D. 678a, an expenditure of £39,630 being allowed.

During the period 77 boreholes were drilled to a total depth of 15,293 feet. Productive boreholes were 41, blanks 36; four are uncompleted; six were deepened and cleaned out.

Drilling in productive bores totalled 8,676 feet. Blank bores accounted for 5,449 feet and those uncompleted, deepened and cleaned out a further 1,168 feet.

The total yield developed in gallons per hour was 27,251.

A total of 3,133 feet of reaming of boreholes was carried out for the insertion of casing and the opening of boreholes for fishing operations.

Six rigs were in operation during the year.

W A T E R W A Y S

No work was done during the year on the Waterways Survey scheme in Ngamiland. The scheme (Colonial Development and Welfare Scheme D. 1412) was due to expire on the 31st March, 1954, but was subsequently extended to the 31st August, 1954.

Work continued on the preparation of the report on the scheme, but this had not been completed by the end of the year.

T R A N S P O R T

The Government workshops at Gaberones have carried out 808 Government jobs and 143 for the public unable to obtain service elsewhere, making a total of 951.

Besides repairing and maintaining Government vehicles and plant, the workshops have installed pumping plants and manufactured sundry items such as gates and grids.

A new maintenance unit was put into service during the year. These units performed well, especially during the drought months of the spring when pumping plants were overworked.

S U R V E Y S

The boundary lines of the Eastern, Northern and Western areas of the Molopo Coloured Reserve were demarcated.

Surveys of Ghanzi, Maun, Palapye and Serowe camps were carried out. Plans for Palapye and Serowe townships have been completed.

BUILDINGS

Funds to a total value of £111,800 were approved for new buildings during the year.

The following buildings were completed :

Two prefabricated houses, Francistown
Abattoir, Francistown

- ✓ Two prefabricated houses, Ghanzi
- First section new veterinary offices, Lobatsi
- African Location latrines, Lobatsi
- Outpatients' rooms, Lobatsi
- European prisoners' accommodation, Lobatsi
- Two prefabricated houses, Lobatsi
- T. B. food utensil washup, Lobatsi
- Veterinary Offices, Machaneng
- Servants' quarters for three houses, Maun
- Prefabricated house, Ramathlabama
- Extension of Post Office, Serowe
- Extension of Administrative and Veterinary Offices, Serowe
- Ante-natal clinic, Serowe
- African houses, Serowe

Additions were made to numerous offices, hospitals and houses at seven centres.

The following work is under construction :

Additions to European School, Gaberones
2nd portion Veterinary offices, Lobatsi
Guest House etc., for Director of Geological Surveys, Lobatsi
New radio room and workshop, Maun
Additions to Public Works Department offices, Mafeking
House, Mahalapye
House, Makoba
House, Francistown
House, Gaberones

Drawings have been prepared for further additions to Public Works Department offices, Mafeking, and new Veterinary offices, Palapye and Mafeking.

Sketch plans were prepared for New High Court and Administrative offices, Lobatsi.

CHAPTER XI

COMMUNICATIONS

RAILWAYS

The main railway line from Cape Town to the Rhodesias passes through the Protectorate entering at Ramathlabama 886 miles from Cape Town and leaving at Ramaquabane 394 miles further north. The single track line runs roughly parallel to the eastern boundary of the Protectorate at an average distance from it of about 50 miles. The railway within the Protectorate formed part of the undertakings owned and operated by the Rhodesia Railways Limited which have been transferred to a statutory body established under the laws of Southern Rhodesia and operating under the laws of the three territories of Southern Rhodesia, Northern Rhodesia and the Bechuanaland Protectorate.

ROADS, BRIDGES AND VEHICLES

The roads in the Protectorate are of earth or sand formed to shape and camber, the only exceptions being where they pass through townships and have been gravelled (and in two cases tarred) for short lengths. The aggregate length of gravelling is a fraction of one per cent of the total road mileage and the roads must therefore be classified as earth roads only.

The numbers of registered motor vehicles in use at the end of the year were 507 cars, 693 commercial vehicles, 16 tractors, 5 trailers and 11 motor cycles.

The most important main roads, totalling approximately 550 miles in length are maintained by the Public Works Department. In the north of the Protectorate the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association maintains approximately 950 miles of road towards the cost of which Government contributes. District and by-roads are given as much attention as possible by District Commissioners who receive small allocations of funds to carry out essential maintenance and minor repairs.

The sum of £18,650 was voted for road maintenance, which is a slight increase on the amount provided in the previous year.

The reconstruction of the Martins Drift, Palapye - Serowe, Lobatsi - Ramathlabama, and Ramaquabane - Francistown roads was completed. New sections Mahalapye - Towani, Towani - Mokoro, Lichwani - Dikabi and Debeeti Hills were completed.

Regrading was carried out on all sections.

Five drum culverts on the Mahalapye road, under C. D. and W. F. Scheme D. 1036 and five stone-packed bridges on the Ramaquabane – Francistown road were completed. Two cement causeways on the Mahalapye River and a bridge over the Lotsani River were also completed. One pipe culvert, Zeerust – Lobatsi road, constructed.

Four bridges on the Kanye road and two bridges on the Gaberones – Molepolole road were widened. Work was begun on a bridge over the Suka River.

RIVER AND LAKE TRANSPORT

There is no public service but canoe transport is used to some extent on the Okovango and Chobe Rivers.

AIR

Until the end of the year a fortnightly air service operated between Francistown and Maun, leaving Francistown on alternate Wednesdays and returning the following day.

There are airfields at Gaberones, Mahalapye, Francistown, Maun and Serowe. There are also landing grounds at Tshabong, Ghanzi, Lobatsi, Molepolole and Palapye, and emergency landing strips at Makalamabedi, Mosetse, Odeakwe, Artesia and Mabeleapudi. An extension to the Molepolole airstrip has been completed, and to the landing ground at Lobatsi, which has also been fenced.

POSTS AND TELEGRAPHS AND WIRELESS COMMUNICATIONS

The main centres of population adjacent to the railway line are connected to the South African and Southern Rhodesian telegraph system. Lines north of Lobatsi are operated by the Southern Rhodesia Government and those south of that town by the Union Government.

There is an extensive wireless service in the Protectorate. The first installations were erected in 1935 and the system was originally intended only for official administrative communication with stations remote from the telegraph line. Public demand, however, soon made it necessary to accept telegrams from the public for transmission over the system, which is now linked with the telegraph services of the Union and Southern Rhodesia through the Government wireless network controlled from Mafeking. Some years later a Police wireless system was established and though this is primarily for the transmission of Police and other official messages, telegrams from the public are accepted at those stations at which there is no other form of telegraphic communication.

Altogether there are 42 stations, 26 of which are owned by Government and are controlled by the Commissioner of Police. There are 14 commercial stations, 5 of which are owned by the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association, 3 by the Colonial Development Corporation and

1 by the Moshaneng Asbestos Mine. At Maun, the South African Government controls a large aeradio station with several transmitters, and there is a station at the Bamangwato College at Moeng. In addition there are a number of amateur radio stations in the Protectorate.

There are 9 post offices in the Territory at Francistown, Palapye, Serowe, Mahalapye, Gaberones, Lobatsi, Kanye, Maun and Mochudi at which money order and savings bank business is transacted. In addition there are 27 postal agencies at the smaller centres.

During the year 49,131 telegrams were sent and 38,400 were received through the post offices and agencies in the Territory. Money orders issued totalled 12,673 worth £43,905. 4s. 0d. Money orders paid numbered 899 and were worth £9,457. 14s. 9d. There were 4,577 savings bank deposits totalling £51,989. 12s. 2d. and 3,755 withdrawals totalling £47,382. 16s. 11d.

CHAPTER XII

PRESS, BROADCASTING, FILMS AND GOVERNMENT INFORMATION SERVICES

No newspapers are published in the Protectorate. South African newspapers circulate and up to the end of the year there was an African paper *Naledi ya Batswana*, published in Johannesburg in Tswana which enjoyed a limited circulation among the better educated Africans. Government articles on matters of general interest appeared regularly in this publication.

The Government wireless station in Mafeking, in addition to providing the link between the Protectorate wireless system and the South African and Southern Rhodesian telegraph systems, broadcasts light musical programmes twice a day by arrangement with the South African Broadcasting Corporation.

There are no cinemas in the Protectorate though in the larger centres an occasional film is shown in a local hall or hotel. There is a Government-owned mobile cinema van of which the operations are recorded in Chapter VII (4).

There is no information service but the Government Secretary and Heads of Departments issue monthly news letters to officials, suitable portions of which are conveyed to the public.

CHAPTER XIII

LOCAL FORCES

There are none.

PART III

CHAPTER I

GEOGRAPHY AND CLIMATE

The Territory of the Bechuanaland Protectorate is bounded on the south and east by the western boundary of the Union of South Africa, which follows the Notwani, Marico and Crocodile or Limpopo rivers, on the north-east by Southern Rhodesia and on the north and on the west by the Caprivi Zipfel and by the Territory of South West Africa, with the Kalahari desert extending over most of the western areas west and south of N'gamiland as far as latitude 27 degrees. This is not a desert in the commonly accepted sense of the word, but consists of vast expanses of undulating sand-belts with out-crops of lime-stone here and there. Large areas are wooded like park lands studded with camelthorn and other indigenous trees. In the limestone belts water is sometimes found at depths from 30 to 100 feet so that it is possible that under the deep over-burden of sand there may exist untapped reservoirs of water. The northern and south-western corners of the Kalahari have the least vegetation and most sand dunes but elsewhere the grasses are excellent, and this is the natural habitat of the true aboriginal bushmen who lead a primitive nomadic existence, living chiefly on the flesh of game shot with poisoned arrows, supplementing this with wild fruits and roots.

The Protectorate has not been surveyed as a whole but its area is estimated at 275,000 square miles. The mean altitude is about 3,300 feet.

There is beautiful scenery in the north-western part of the Protectorate, in the Okovango delta into which the great Okovango River, flowing inland from the north-west, benevolently pours its flood waters, which, in seasons of heavy rainfall, flow as far south-east as the Makarikari salt lake and south and south-west into Lake Ngami. The Chobe area is also notable for its scenic beauty especially along the Chobe river, which flows into the Zambesi 60 miles west of the Victoria Falls.

The eastern portion of the country also has some fine hill scenery. The remainder, though it appears at first sight to be very flat, is in reality undulating and is rich in grasses, shrubs and trees. The south-eastern half is similar to the bushveld of the northern Transvaal. There are occasional outcrops of limestone and the surface is generally sandy and, except where boreholes and dams have been established, waterless. Old and well defined river courses which now-a-days flow only during the annual rains, indicate, however, that at one time the country was well watered, as is still the case north and north-east of Lake Ngami. In certain areas

elsewhere good underground waters exist and are being developed as funds permit.

The Protectorate as a whole is a natural game reserve for most species of the fauna and Government policy is aimed at their preservation.

CLIMATE

The climate of the country, on the whole, is sub-tropical, but varies with latitude and altitude.

Latitude 22 degrees South passes through the centre of the country, and the northern areas of the Protectorate accordingly lie within the tropics.

The average rainfall in the Territory is 18 inches, but this varies from nearly 27 inches in the north to 9 inches or less in the western Kalahari.

By far the greatest area of the more populated portion of the Protectorate lies within an extensive saucerlike depression having an altitude of 3,000 feet bounded by higher ground at the extreme south (Hildavale) and the north-east (Southern Rhodesia) where the altitudes are over 4,000 feet. There are also elevations at Kanye, Serowe and Ghanzi of 4,000 to 5,000 feet.

The climate of the higher parts of the Territory is sub-tropical, varying to temperate. During the winter the days are pleasantly warm and the nights cold, with occasional frosts. The summer is hot but relief is sometimes obtained by a prevailing north-east breeze which generally springs up in the early part of the night. In the more lowlying parts during the winter, lasting from the beginning of May to the middle of August, it is pleasantly warm by day and comfortably cool at night, but in summer, which commences properly in October, the days are very hot and the nights uncomfortably warm. In August, as a rule, the annual seasonal winds from the west coast commence and, dessicated by the sand of the Kalahari, they resemble a "Simoon" and often continue until the equinox in September, sweeping across the whole country and carrying volumes of sand and dust.

The atmosphere throughout the year is very dry and this helps to mitigate the high temperatures, though to Europeans this dryness and strong sunlight week after week, without clouds to soften it, has the effect of producing nervous irritability, particularly in Europeans whose occupation is sedentary and does not permit of enough outdoor life.

If the necessary precautions are taken to guard against malaria, which is universal in the low-lying areas of the Territory, and provided sufficient outdoor exercise is taken, the climate is well suited to Europeans and their families.

Only four towns have a population of over 10,000; they are Kanye 23,000; Serowe 16,000; Molepolole 15,000; and Mochudi 12,000.

CHAPTER II

HISTORY

The picture presented by Southern Africa in the first quarter of the 19th century, north of the narrow strip which then comprised the extent of the European settlement, was a dismal one of savage tribal wars, pillage and bloodshed. The primary cause of these conditions was the expansion of the Zulus who, under Chaka, a military genius who had created out of a comparatively insignificant people a disciplined and war-like nation, waged incessant and merciless war on those people unfortunate enough to be within their reach. These activities, like a stone thrown into a pond, created waves far beyond the impact of Zulu warriors. In order to escape the Zulus, tribes on their borders fled to all points of the compass, despoiling on their way the tribes in their path and thereby setting up a general movement of destructive migration.

The most ferocious of these predatory bands were the followers of an amazon called Mma-Ntatisi and her son Sekonyela. These marauders – part refugees and part banditti – came from tribes living in the neighbourhood of what is now Basutoland. They banded themselves together into some sort of cohesive army and advanced northwards and westwards, harrying and destroying everything that stood in their way.

In a different category were the Matebele. These were originally a group of Chaka's people under Mzilikazi, one of Chaka's principal captains. On one of his raids Mzilikazi embezzled the booty and deemed it prudent not to return home. He moved north-westwards and, after a destructive march, established himself in the neighbourhood of what is now Zeerust, where he conducted bloody and profitable raids in systematic fashion on the tribes within his reach. The forays of Chaka's disciplined and merciless impis, the wholesale pillage of the hordes of Mma-Ntatisi, the murderous exodus of the Matebele as well as endless migrations by other less important tribes, themselves torn by internecine quarrels, had reduced the country to a pitiable state of misery and confusion. Yet it was at this time, in 1820, that Robert Moffat of London Missionary Society, undaunted by the dangers of such an undertaking, established his mission at Kuruman in the country later to become British Bechuana-land, and now incorporated in the Cape Province of the Union of South Africa.

Among the people most conveniently situated to receive Mzilikazi's onslaughts were those known as Bechuana, of Sotho stock – and hence related to the people of what is now Basutoland, and to several other tribes – who lived in the western Transvaal and westwards towards the Kalahari. Like other Basuto people their early history is shrouded in legend.

As regards the principal tribes of the group the generally accepted tradition is that they are descended from a people ruled by a chief named Masilo who may have lived about the middle of the 17th century. Masilo had two sons, Mohurutshe and Malope. The former founded the line of the chiefs of the Bahurutshe, while the latter had three sons, Kwena, Ngwato and Ngwaketse. Ngwato and Ngwaketse at different times broke away from Kwena's tribe and went with their followers to live at a distance from each other. The Bahurutshe were set upon first by Mma-Ntatisi's horde and then by the Matebele. The home of this tribe is in the western Transvaal but scattered elements have attached themselves to the present ruling tribes of the Protectorate. A small group maintains some sort of independent existence near Francistown. The Bangwaketse, after several migrations, finally settled in their present country around Kanye while the Bamangwato founded a colony in the vicinity of Shoshong in the country occupied by the tribe to-day. The descendants of the Kwena section now live around Molepolole. Among the Bamangwato a further split occurred : Tawana, one of Chief Mathiba's sons, seceded at the end of the eighteenth century, and formed a new settlement in N'gamiland. The Batawana are still the ruling community in that area. Other important tribes of the Bechuana are the Bakgatla, the Bamalete and the Batlokwa. These are fairly recent immigrants into the Protectorate from the western Transvaal having arrived here in the nineteenth century. The Barolong, the greater number of whom to-day live in the Union, trace the genealogy of their chiefs to one Rolong, who lived at a time even more remote than did Masilo. The Barolong are settled along the southern border of the Protectorate and round Mafeking.

Soon after Moffat's arrival the existence of the tribe and of the mission was threatened by a horde of Bahlakwana and Maphuting, Sotho marauders from the east like the followers of Mma-Ntatisi, and set in motion by the same causes. Moffat acted with much vigour and enlisted the help of the Griqua half-casts who lived about 100 miles to the south of his station. These came to his aid and inflicted much execution on the invaders who had by then outrun their supplies and were not used to firearms. In the following year Moffat obtained an extraordinary ascendancy over Mzilikazi and, though the Matebele ceaselessly and mercilessly raided the unhappy Bechuana tribes to the north, (among the worst sufferers being the Bakwena) the Mission at Kuruman and the peoples in its immediate surroundings remained inviolate.

The 50 years between 1820 and 1870 were periods of chaos and anarchy, of internecine quarrels and struggles which it would be tedious to recapitulate in detail. Internal and inter-tribal difficulties were complicated by the impact on these borders of the Boer trekkers. To the latter, however, belongs the credit of ridding the immediate neighbourhood of the Matebele ; after several engagements with the Boer, disastrous for his tribe, Mzilikazi removed himself northwards in 1838, preying whenever he got the chance on the weaker people on the way, Bechuana and Makalanga. To these tactics few of the Bechuana chiefs made effective resistance with the exception of chief Sekgoma of the Bamangwato who was made of sterner stuff than the rest, and who in 1840 inflicted several minor reverses

on Matebele raiding parties. In the meantime David Livingstone who had married Robert Moffat's daughter, Mary, established a mission among the Bakwena where he stayed until the early fifties.

In 1872 there acceded to the chieftainship of the Bamangwato (descendants, it will be remembered, of the adherents of Ngwato, son of Malope) the most remarkable African of his time and possibly one of the most remarkable of any time. This was Khama III, the son of Sekgoma I. His youth had been troubled by dissensions within the tribe and by the ever present peril of the Matebele. During the first few years of his reign he much enhanced the standing of his tribe until the Bamangwato were amongst the most prominent of the people of this part of Africa. He was no mean strategist, had a well trained and well equipped little army and earned the respect of Lobengula, son of Mzilikazi, and with it some assurance of immunity from the depredations of that potentate. A lifelong and rigid adherent of Christianity, he introduced numbers of reforms into the life of the tribe, one of the most important, and the one on which Khama himself set most store, being the total prohibition of alcoholic liquor. No detail of tribal administration escaped his attention and he devoted himself with energy and singleness of purpose to the uplifting of his people. Though the weaker tribes still had to submit to the ravages of Lobengula's Matebele, by the middle 'seventies' there was some stability and order in the life of these regions, and the Bamangwato, under Khama's domination, and for that matter the other Bechuana tribes, enjoyed conditions less turbulent and chaotic than at any other time earlier in the century.

It was at this time, however, that the Bechuana began to feel the effect of forces that were entirely to alter their lives and to remould their destinies. Hitherto they had seen little of the white man. A few traders and hunters had indeed penetrated into their territories but these expeditions had been few and far between and, except at large centres like Shoshong, no permanent relations had been established. The only Europeans who had lived among them were the missionaries, men like Moffat and Livingstone and that remarkable missionary-administrator, MacKenzie. Now began the exploration of Africa, the division of the continent among the nations and the exploitation of its resources. Embittered relations between the Boers from the Transvaal and the Bechuana tribesmen (particularly the Barolong and the Batlhaping) prompted the latter to address appeals for assistance to the Cape authorities while Khama, shortly after his accession, made representations to the High Commissioner that his country be taken under British protection. These appeals were powerfully seconded by Cecil Rhodes, who appreciated the importance of Bechuanaland as the "Suez Canal to the North" and was determined to keep it open for the furtherance of his plans for the occupation and development of the land beyond the Limpopo. But the British Government showed no anxiety to assume such new responsibilities and it was not until 1884 that the Home Government sent the Missionary John MacKenzie to these territories as Deputy Commissioner. Finally in 1885 Sir Charles Warren, with the concurrence of Khama and the other principal chiefs, proclaimed the whole of Bechuanaland to be under the protection of Her Majesty the Queen. The southern part of the Territory, which included Mafeking,

Vryburg and Kuruman, was later constituted a Crown Colony and eventually became part of the Cape Colony. It is now in the Cape Province of the Union of South Africa and is known as Bechuanaland and some times as British Bechuanaland. The northern part, thenceforward known as the Bechuanaland Protectorate, which stretches as far north as the Zambesi river, has remained to this day under the protection of the British Crown.

Meanwhile British expansion northwards continued and, with the occupation of what is now Southern Rhodesia, Rhodes's description of Bechuanaland as the "Suez Canal to the North" was fully justified.

In 1895 the British Government showed itself in favour of handing over the Administration of the Protectorate to the British South Africa Company. Chiefs Khama of the Bamangwato, Bathoen of the Bangwaketse and Sebele of the Bakwena went to England to protest against the suggested transfer and an agreement was reached that if they gave up a strip of land on the eastern side of the Protectorate for the construction of a railway (through which the railway runs to-day) they should remain, as they desired, under the protection of the British Crown.

So began the modern era in the Protectorate. The country is administered by a Resident Commissioner who lives in Mafeking and is responsible to the High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland (formerly styled the High Commissioner for South Africa). In the areas reserved for the occupation of their tribes the chiefs exercise a large measure of independent administration, with the advice of District Commissioners and technical officers of the Central Government.

Khama died in 1923. The Native Authority of the tribe is Rasebolai, the grandson of Khama's younger brother, Kgamane. The tribal capital is at Serowe. Bathoen of the Bangwaketse and Kgari of the Bakwena are grandsons respectively of chiefs Bathoen and Sebele who visited England in 1895.

Of the other descendants of Masilo, Moremi III, chief of the Batawana of N'gamiland and descendant of Tawana, son of Mathiba, died in 1946. His son, Letsholathebe, is still a minor and the tribe is administered by a regent. The chiefly line of the Bahurutshe, if indeed it is represented at all, has no political importance in the Protectorate though this tribe is generally respected as the senior among the tribes of the Bechuana.



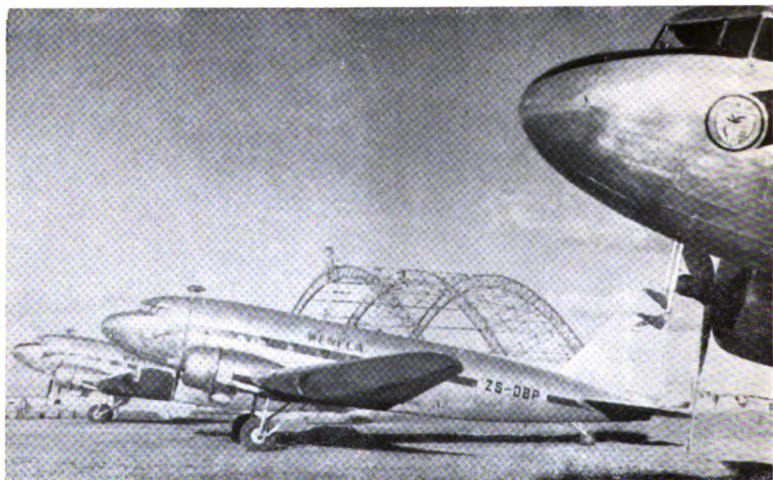
Baby wildebeest among the cattle, Tsabong Wells

PHOTO: *Joan Atkins*



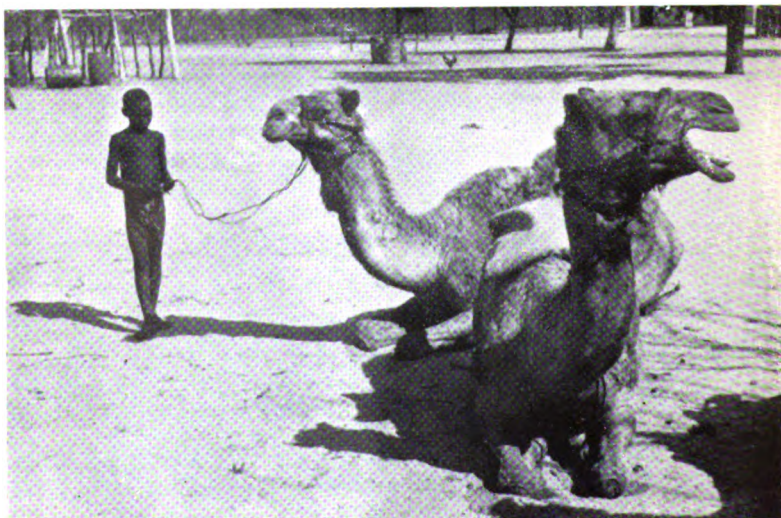
Masarwas (Bushmen), Mababe Flats. The puff-adder has been cleaned, ready for cooking, and its eggs are tied in the bundle of grass

PHOTO: *W.F. MacKenzie, C. M. G., C. B. E.*



Dakotas, Francistown Aerodrome. New hangar (under erection) can be seen in background

PHOTO: *G. J. L. Atkinson*



Camels, Nata Camp

PHOTO: *J. F. Leech*

CHAPTER III

ADMINISTRATION

The constitutional position in the Bechuanaland Protectorate is governed by various Orders in Council and Proclamations, of which the most important is the Order in Council of Her Majesty Queen Victoria dated the 9th May, 1891. That Order in Council empowered the High Commissioner to exercise on Her Majesty's behalf all the powers and jurisdiction which Her Majesty at any time before or after the date of the Order had or might have within the Protectorate and to that end empowered him further to take or cause to be taken such measures and to do or cause to be done all such matters and things within the Protectorate as are lawful and as in the interest of Her Majesty's Service he might think expedient, subject to such instructions as he might from time to time receive from Her Majesty or through a Secretary of State.

Other provisions of the Order in Council empowered the High Commissioner :

- (1) to appoint administrative and judicial Officers and to assign their functions to them subject to the preservation of his own powers and authorities in their entirety ; and
- (2) to provide by proclamation from time to time for the administration of justice, the raising of revenue and generally for the peace, order and good government of all persons within the Protectorate including the prohibition and punishment of acts tending to disturb the public peace.

In issuing this proclamation the High Commissioner was instructed by the Order in Council to respect any native laws and customs by which the civil relations of any native Chiefs, tribes or population under Her Majesty's protection were at that time (*viz.* in May, 1891) regulated, except in so far as the same might be incompatible with the due exercise of Her Majesty's power and jurisdiction or which were repugnant to humanity.

The Order in Council required the High Commissioner to publish his proclamations in the Gazette and reserved to Her Majesty the right to disallow any such Proclamations. The Order in Council provided also that, subject to any proclamation lawfully issued by the High Commissioner, any jurisdiction exercisable otherwise than under this Order in Council of 1891, whether by virtue of any Statute or Order in Council or of any treaty, or otherwise, should remain in full force.

Her Majesty reserved the power to revoke, alter, add to or amend this Order in Council at any time.

All references to Her Majesty in the Order in Council were declared by it to include Her Majesty's Heirs and Successors.

The Protectorate is administered by a Resident Commissioner under the direction of the High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland (formerly styled the High Commissioner for South Africa).

The Territory comprises Crown Lands, European Blocks of farms, and Native Reserves and is divided, for administrative purposes, into the following districts, under District Commissioners who are assisted by a force of police :

N'gamiland (including the Batawana Reserve) **Headquarters at Maun.**
Ngwato (including the Bamangwato Reserve and some Crown Lands)
and the Tuli Block – Headquarters at Serowe.

Gaberones (including the Gaberones Block and the Batlokwa and Bamaletse Reserves) **Headquarters at Gaberones.**

Francistown (including the Tati Concession and some Crown Lands)
Headquarters at Francistown.

Kgatleng (Bakgatla Reserve) **Headquarters at Mochudi.**

Kweneng (Bakwena Reserve) **Headquarters at Molepolole.**

Ngwaketse (Bangwaketse Reserve) **Headquarters at Kanye.**

Lobatsi (including the Lobatsi Block, the Barolong Farms Native Reserve
and some Crown Lands) Headquarters at Lobatsi.

Kgalagadi (Crown Lands) **Headquarters at Tshabong.**

Ghanzi (Ghanzi Farms and Crown Lands) **Headquarters at Ghanzi.**

Kasane (Crown Lands) **Headquarters at Kasane.**

In the native areas the method of administration is that generally known as "indirect rule". Native Administrations were formerly established and the powers and rights of Native Authorities were defined in the Native Administration and Native Courts Proclamations, Chapters 56 and 5 of the Laws of the Bechuanaland Protectorate. In 1938 Native Treasuries were successfully established in 8 out of 9 Native Reserves, and a Treasury was established in the ninth in 1951. Government pays 35 per cent of each Native Administration's collection of Native Tax to the Tribal Treasury concerned ; other sources of revenue are tribal levies, rates and stand-rents in addition to graded tax.

In the preparation of estimates and the general management of their treasuries the chiefs and finance committees, under the guidance of District Commissioners, display an intelligent and keen appreciation of their responsibilities.

There is an African Advisory Council which meets once a year under the presidency of the Resident Commissioner, and this is attended by the Chief and tribal representatives from the various Native Reserves and non-tribal areas.

A European Advisory Council meets under the presidency of the Resident Commissioner, usually twice a year. There are eight members who are elected to represent the interests of the European residents in the eight electoral areas into which the Protectorate is divided.

A joint Advisory Council, consisting of the eight members of the European Advisory Council and eight members from the African Advisory Council, meets twice a year.

CHAPTER IV

WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

The weights and measures in use in the Bechuanaland Protectorate are those which are in use in the Union of South Africa.

CHAPTER V

READING LIST

- DORNAN, S. S. *Pygmies and Bushmen of the Kalahari*. Seeley Service, London : 1925.
- LIVINGSTONE, D. *Missionary Travels and Researches*. 1895.
- MOLEMA, S. M. *The Bantu Past and Present*. An Ethnological and Historical Study of the Native Races of South Africa. W. Green and Sons, Ltd.
- *Chief Moroka*. His Life, His Times, His Country and His People. Methodist Publishing House, Cape Town.
- POLE EVANS, I. B. *A Reconnaissance Trip through the Eastern Portion of the Bechuanaland Protectorate and an Expedition to N'gamiland*. Government Printer, Pretoria : 1948.
- PERHAM, M. & CURTIS, L. *The Protectorates of South Africa*. (The question of their transfer to the Union.) Oxford University Press, Humphrey Milford : 1953.
- SCHAPERA, I. *The Bantu Speaking Tribes of South Africa*. George Routledge & Sons, Ltd., London. Maskew Miller Ltd., Cape Town: 1937.
- *A Handbook of Tswana Law and Custom*. Oxford University Press ; 1939.
- *Migrant Labour and Tribal Life*. Oxford University Press : 1947.
- *Married Life in an African Tribe*. Faber and Faber, London : 1940. 364 pp.
- *Native Land Tenure in the Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Loveday Press : 1943. xiv + 283 pp.
- SILLERY, A. *The Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Oxford University Press : 1952.
- *Sechele*. George Ronald, Oxford : 1954.

A P P E N D I X I
Statement of Colonial Development and Welfare Grants as at 31st March, 1954

I <i>Scheme</i>	II		III		IV		V		VI		VII		VIII		IX	
	Due to C. D. & W. Fund at 1.4.1953		Due from C. D. & W. Fund at 1.4.53		Receipts 1953-54		Repayments to C. D. & W. Fund 1953-54		Credited to C. D. & W. Revenue 1953-54		Debited to C. D. & W. Expenditure 1953-54		Due to C. D. & W. Fund at 31.3.1954		Due from C. D. & W. Fund at 31.3.1954	
	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.	£	s. d.
D.678 and 678A Underground Water Development ..	5022	2 8			29084	0 0			23197	8 5	23197	8 5	10908	14 3		
D.679 Extension of Livestock and Agricultural Services ..	437	3 0			14625	0 0			8700	16 10	8700	16 10	6361	6 2		
D.680 and 680A Development of African Agriculture ..	380	6 10			9558	0 0			4043	10 0	4043	10 0	5894	16 10		
D.681 and 681A Control of Tsetse Fly ..	48	10 7			6557	0 0	340	13 2	6805	10 7	7044	16 9			98	13 0
D.682 Experimental Projects in African Agriculture ..	113	10 2					113	10 2								
D.940, 940A, 940B and 940C Geological Survey ..			567	4 8	31668	0 0			31668	0 0	34531	2 0			3430	6 8
D.990 and 990A Surface Water Development ..	1824	17 3							22399	11 5	22399	11 5	549	5 10		
D.1036 Erection of Bridges ..			327	19 10	21124	0 0			4195	5 0	3867	5 2	882	15 0		
D.1037 Development of Medical Services ..	630	8 6			5078	0 0			4830	8 6	5774	9 5			944	0 11
D.1044 Equipment Workshops ..	410	6 2			4200	0 0			410	6 2	460	14 8			50	8 6*
D.1045, 1045A, 1045B and 1045C Development of Education ..	177	14 3			6091	0 0	96	7 5	5591	14 0	5688	1 5	677	0 3		
D.1180, 1180A, 1180B and 1180C Topographical Survey ..			295	19 2	3490	0 0			3490	0 0	4410	12 5			1216	11 7
D.1409 and 1409A Water Development ..	1712	10 9			5350	0 0			4679	12 3	4679	12 3	2382	18 6		
D.1412 Ngamiland Waterways ..			951	4 6	7962	0 0			7197	15 11	6246	11 5	764	4 1		
D.1463 Water Development ..	402	5 10					402	5 10								
D.1539 and 1539A Aerial Survey ..	14	1 11					14	1 11								
D.1679 Scholarship: S. Mo-disse ..					500	0 0										
D.1805 and 1805A Foot and Mouth Disease Control ..							500	0 0								
D.1930 St. Joseph's College, Khade ..	1083	13 3			2043	0 0	45989	17 5	18545	0 0	38648	6 7			12287	2 5
D.2014 Treponematosis Control ..					1000	0 0							1000	0 0		
					150	0 0			39	1 8	39	1 8				
	11173	17 11	3226	1 5	147980	0 0	46926	18 0	21617	17 11	108504	0 9	169732	0 5	29531	19 3
															18027	3 1

* £50, 8s. 6d. over-spent on Scheme D. 1044. Equipment Workshops will be met from Protectorate Funds.

APPENDIX II

REPORT ON THE PROGRESS OF COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE SCHEMES TO THE 30th SEPTEMBER, 1954

Scheme D. 678 - Underground Water Development

A determined effort has been made to develop water supplies along the cattle route from Ghanzi to Lobatsi. These efforts met with some success in the section between Ghanzi and Tsane, where seven boreholes were drilled of depths varying between 140 ft. and 550 ft. and maximum yields averaging slightly over 1,000 gallons per hour. In the section between Tsane and Lobatsi boring with medium capacity drills to depths averaging from 400-600 ft. proved unsuccessful. Water was seldom found in any appreciable quantity and where it did occur it was too saline to be usable.

The remaining rigs were used for the following purposes :

- (a) for village and cattle watering supplies in the tribal reserves,
- (b) for the quarantine camps at Kuki, Makoba and Debeeti and
- (c) for railway water supplies at Seruli.

The results of the year's work of these rigs is summarised in the table shown below :

<i>Locality of Holes drilled</i>	<i>No.</i>	<i>Footage</i>	<i>Yield in G.P.H.</i>
<i>Tribal Reserve</i>			
Bamangwato	30		
Bangwaketsi	9		
Bakwena	5		
Bakgatla	1	45	7,531
			19,210
<i>Veterinary Dept.</i>			
Kuki, Debeeti, Makoba etc.	8	1,734	2,800
<i>Railway Drilling</i>			
Seruli Siding and vicinity	5	787	1,240

Under section B, "Improvement of existing water supplies", a new 30,000 gallon capacity reservoir has been built at Francistown while the hospital supply there has been improved by the erection of a new tank on a 30 ft. stand and by the provision of a new and larger supply main. A new supply has been installed at Werda and repairs and improvements effected at Mahalapye.

Scheme D. 679 - Livestock and Agricultural Development

(a) *Veterinary*: The officers filling the posts of Veterinary Officer and Livestock Officer continued to work as part of the departmental staff.

Good crops of maize and cowpea were harvested during the year and were fed to the Government livestock on the farm.

The building of the school was postponed first because of uncertainty as to its location, it being thought at one time that it might be better situated at Lobatsi than at Ramathlabama and later on account of staff shortages in the Public Works Department.

(b) *Agriculture*: During the year the post of Agricultural Officer again became vacant and has not yet been filled. The two Agricultural & Livestock Officers carried on extension work throughout the year in the Bagkatla and Bangwaketsi Reserves, working in conjunction with the African staff employed under Scheme D. 680. The work consisted mainly of teaching improved methods of husbandry to selected peasants in whom an effort is being made to inculcate the fundamental principles of crop production. All the African staff have now been appointed with the exception of the lorry driver.

Schemes D. 680 and 680 A - Development of African Agriculture

The Agricultural & Livestock Officer's post was filled in August 1953 and the officer was stationed in the Bakwena Reserve to prepare for a co-operative demonstrational plot scheme. The recruitment of demonstrators continued but a number of vacancies remained at the end of the year.

During the year under review, extension work was extended to the Ngwaketsi and Kwena Reserves and the staff in the other Reserves was re-inforced. The demand for co-operative demonstration plots continued to grow and the introduction of two early maturing dwarf sorghum varieties, previously tested at experiment stations, has done much to ensure the success of the scheme.

The plots have proved that yields can be substantially improved :

- (a) by conserving moisture by planting in rows to facilitate cultivation and weed control,
- (b) by growing well-adapted, drought resistant crop varieties, and
- (c) by improving soil fertility with applications of kraal manure and fertiliser.

Yields from the plots were as high as 2,200 lb. per acre of sorghum grain, while yields from adjacent lands cultivated in the traditional manner were of the order of 120 lb. per acre.

The Ranaka Unit Agricultural project was started during the year under review and five demonstrators were posted to the area. Good progress was made.

Scheme D. 681 - Control of Tsetse Fly

The Tsetse Fly Control Officer was absent in East Africa on a tour of instruction from January to April, 1954. He was accompanied by three Fly boys and the party studied methods of survey and control in the East African Territories.

During his absence the two Rangers continued the work of maintaining fences and game destruction. They were also occupied in repairing roads and bridges but most of this work was undone by the excessive floods which rendered large parts of the Tsetse Fly Control Area inaccessible from June onwards.

On his return the Tsetse Fly Control Officer was occupied with the organisation of strategic surveys in the Mau area and with the laying out of routine investigation Fly rounds. He also paid a visit to the Mababe cattle route. The surveys and investigation rounds have not yet been sufficiently comprehensive to draw definite conclusions as to the Fly perimeter and habitat.

Field tests were carried out to test the cost of running a mechanical saw and its efficiency against a gang of labourers. Early indications are that the mechanical saw will prove the most economical method of bush clearing. Field tests were also thought out to test the efficacy of chemicals in the destruction of certain trees.

Two routine investigation fly rounds were instituted, one sampling about one square mile inside the outer fence and the other about the same area outside the fence. In due course the information gathered from these rounds will indicate the bush that is necessary for the fly.

Fly surveys were conducted during July - September which showed that fly is fairly dense on the inner fence in the Xudum area and that it also still exists in the Naragha valley.

Game destruction continued throughout the year and a total of 1,606 animals were destroyed. Fewer herds broke through the fence than the previous year.

Schemes D. 940 and 940 A. B and C - Geological Survey

The new Director, who is on secondment from Uganda for a period of three years, took up his appointment at the end of July. A new Geologist was also appointed at the end of the period under review.

Dr. Dixey, Director of Colonial Geological Surveys, visited the Territory in April to advise on the future policy of the Survey. He also inspected the asbestos mine at Moshaneng and the prospection work on the potential coalfields.

A study of the water supply possibilities on the proposed cattle route across the South and Central Kalahari was made during the year as a

result of which a clearer conception was obtained of the geology of the rocks underlying the Kalahari.

Advice was given on the siting of boreholes for Government and the public in a number of localities. A report was also prepared showing the advantages of siting boreholes with the aid of Geological and Geophysical investigations.

Investigations of the potential coalfields of the Territory were continued during the year. The drilling programme in the area west of Foley siding was completed and results showed that the coal was of poor quality. A programme of scout boring has been prepared to investigate the extension of the Waterberg coalfield of the Transvaal in the Protectorate.

The major undertakings in mineral investigation during the year were the examination of the copper prospects of Magogaphate in the eastern Bamangwato Reserve and the renewed exploration of the Bushman Mine. A number of other mineral deposits were also examined.

Detailed work at Magogaphate was begun with self potential surveys and some diamond drilling was carried out. The work was not completed as it had to give way to investigations at the Bushman Mine but before this happened the drilling revealed the unexpected discovery of an horizon of nickeliferous pyrrhotite and pentlandite. The percentage nickel in the drill core ranged from 0.26 to 0.71.

A detailed investigation of the Bushman Mine was carried out. Geophysical methods of self-induction were used extensively and possible areas of mineralisation outlined. Fairly complete particulars of the early history of the mine were also obtained, although the mine plans are still lacking. The investigations showed that the upper levels are very rich, but it is not known how deep the mineralisation continues. It is possible that a large body of ore exists which might profitably be worked by modern standards.

Detailed geological mapping was started in the Kanye area. Further occurrences of asbestos are being sought and the possible resources of commercial limestones assessed.

In the laboratory chemical analyses on ores, minerals and water were completed as follows :

<i>Sample Locality</i>	<i>Sample</i>	<i>Separate Determinations</i>
Magogaphate	Nickel Ores	11
Bushman Mine	Copper Ores	21
Tati Concession	Lead-Copper Ore	2
Bushman Mine	Chalcocite	5
Magogaphate	Nickeliferous Pyrrhotite	3
Molepolole	Gypsum	3
South Central Kalahari	Water Samples	29
	Total	74

Qualitative analyses were performed on concentrates from the Bushman Mine and on gold ores from the Tati Concession.

Borehole sludges from Government and private boreholes were also examined, the objects being to facilitate the selection of borehole sites by the recognition of water-bearing horizons and to obtain and collate information on the sub-surface Geology of the Protectorate.

Schemes D. 990 and D. 990 A – Surface Water Development

During the year a portion of the funds from Schemes D. 1409 and D. 1409 A was added to scheme D. 990, increasing the total grant by £1,669.

Eight stock dams were completed, all in the Bamangwato Reserve, forming total storage capacities of 96 acre-feet and capable of watering 3,800 head of large stock for part of the year.

Except for a small reservoir the Mahalapye water supply was completed in June and the Staff employed on it then started work on a water collecting gallery higher up the river. This work which was done on behalf of the Railways on a repayment basis was completed in August.

A water supply at Makalamabedi, obtained by pumping water from the Botletle river, though not yet fully completed has been delivering water to the quarantine camp for several months.

The construction of a Railway water supply at Notwani had to be abandoned after several months work as the owner of the site successfully contested Government's right to build water works on his farm.

Scheme D. 1036 – Erection of bridges

Three bridges on the Lobatsi-Kanye road were widened and strengthened during the year to enable them to stand up to the increased volume of heavy traffic, now using the road between the Moshaneng asbestos mine and railhead at Lobatsi.

Two low level bridges were built on the Gaberones – Molepolole road and one on the road skirting the Tuli Block. Five stone packed bridges were also built on the road linking Francistown with the border of Southern Rhodesia.

Scheme D. 1037 – Development of Medical Services

Funds provided for mosquito and insect control were used for the purchase of insecticides for the prevention of malaria, plague and relapsing fever.

The salaries of a new Health Inspector, one African Sanitary Inspector and casual labour in connection with public health measures were paid from the scheme. Funds from this scheme were also used for the maintenance of ambulances and other vehicles.

Schemes D. 1045 and D. 1045 A, B and C – Development of Education

Efforts to find an adequate water supply at Kanye, which would be sufficient for the town as well as the Teacher Training College, failed

and as the water table in and around the village has been falling it was finally decided that an alternative site would have to be chosen for the Teacher Training College. A Committee was appointed for this purpose and was asked to treat the selection of a site as a matter of urgency.

The vacancy for a Homecrafts Education Officer remained unfilled, despite frequent advertisements. The distribution of garden seeds and tools and the issue of sewing materials from Headquarters continued as before.

Scheme D. 1805 – Disease Control

The Debeeti fence was completed in 1953. At the Debeeti quarantine camp all housing and ancillaries except kitchens for the Africans were completed by September 1954. The water reservoirs have yet to be erected.

170 miles of the Central Bamangwato fence has been completed. Great difficulty has been experienced in clearing this line much of which passes through dense scrub and mopani forest. A further 37 miles remains to be cleared and fenced from a point 15 miles north of Dukwe pan to Beacon 15 on the Southern Rhodesian border.

The Makalamabedi quarantine was completed in 1953. Housing remains to be erected but during the year the house built by the Colonial Development Corporation for their local Manager was bought to house the European Police Officer. Water supplies were made available although a booster pump in the pipe line from the river is still required.

At the Kuki quarantine the fencing was completed in 1953. Reservoirs and housing for the African Staff remain to be erected.

APPENDIX III

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE. IMPORTS - 1952, 1953, 1954

U. From Union of South Africa N. From Northern Rhodesia S. From Southern Rhodesia O. From other countries

Commodity	From	1952		1953		1954	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Sorghum (Bags)	U	13,280	33,200	5,501	12,524	78	126
	S	-	-	28	45	-	-
	Total	13,280	33,200	5,529	12,569	78	126
Maize and Maize meal (Bags)	U	122,133	259,094	36,016	72,690	12,100	30,576
	Total	122,133	259,094	36,016	72,690	12,100	30,576
Wheat and wheat meal (Bags)	U	35,808	79,137	16,887	61,369	19,577	64,629
	S	-	-	635	1,128	340	725
	O	50	188	-	-	3	7
	Total	35,858	79,275	17,522	62,497	19,920	65,361
Horses, mules and donkeys	U	Figures not available		350	6,791	796	13,012
	S			7	55	41	233
	O			1,175	8,641	-	-
	Total			1,532	15,487	837	13,245
Cattle	U	Figures not available		2,162	33,540	231	7,290
	S			448	8,130	85	2,790
	O			12	360	-	-
	Total			2,622	42,030	316	10,080
Sheep and goats	U	Figures not available		2,309	6,897	1,408	4,224
	S			20	48	148	55
	Total			2,329	6,945	1,463	4,372
Pigs	U	Figures not available		15	15	-	-
	S			-	-	4	6
	Total			15	15	4	6

IMPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	From	1952		1953		1954	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
		Figures not available	Figures not available	Figures not available	Figures not available	Figures not available	Figures not available
Dogs							
Poultry	U S Total					423 150 573	106 37 143
Vehicles	U S N O Total	59 6 - - 65	62,806 5,593 - - 68,399	- - - - -	75,003 6,588 38 3,928 85,557	- - - - -	78,649 6,723 - - 85,372
General Merchandise	U S N O Total	- - - - -	565,017 231,221 10,042 2,243 808,523	- - - - -	830,895 243,147 8,956 18,451 1,101,449	- - - - -	895,380 265,336 519 29,254 1,190,489
Other foodstuffs	U S N O Total	- - - - -	178,156 105,196 2,302 - 285,654	- - - - -	482,707 26,895 473 470 510,555	- - - - -	193,620 21,910 - 383 215,913
Textiles	U S N O Total	- - - - -	319,343 158,399 7,999 1,977 487,718	- - - - -	341,938 148,967 4,094 9,738 504,737	- - - - -	321,302 111,117 - 3,628 436,047
Fertilizers (tons)	U S Total	180 - 180	2,050 - 2,050	- - -	1,627 245 1,873	- - -	1,693 - 1,693
GRAND TOTAL			2,023,913		2,416,404		2,033,423

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE. EXPORTS — 1952, 1953, 1954
 U. To Union of South Africa N. To Northern Rhodesia S. To Southern Rhodesia O. To other countries.

Commodity	To	1952		1953		1954	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Sorghum (Bags)	U	8,463	21,831	23,800	34,224	81,393	121,150
	S	—	—	4,213	6,125	2,400	3,600
	N	—	—	187	562	—	—
	Total	8,463	21,831	28,200	40,911	83,793	124,750
Maize and maize meal (Bags)	U	—	—	312	388	—	—
	S	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Total	—	—	312	388	—	—
Beans and Pulses (Bags)	U	1,354	5,080	12,190	21,320	61,690	111,700
	S	—	—	4,475	8,389	21,000	33,000
	N	—	—	1,720	3,762	—	—
	O	—	—	9,823	17,784	—	—
	Total	1,354	5,080	28,208	51,245	82,690	141,700
Groundnuts (Bags)	U	3,775	6,134	—	1,262	8,280	12,400
	Total	3,775	6,134	—	1,262	8,280	12,400
Wheat (Bags)	U	—	—	—	—	—	—
Tobacco (Bags)	U	976	126	—	32	—	—
	Total	976	126	—	32	—	—
Butter (lb.)	U	227,108	25,934	478,576	74,378	286,608	44,543
	O	—	—	—	—	105,250	17,103
	Total	227,108	25,934	478,576	74,378	391,858	61,646
Butterfat (lb.)	U	151,009	23,443	185,354	26,427	228,848	34,000
	Total	151,009	23,443	185,354	26,427	228,848	34,000

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	To	1952		1953		1954	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Eggs (doz.)	U S Total	483 — 483	60 — 60	1,607 — 1,607	161 — 161	3,422 4 3,426	428 1 429
Cattle (live)	U S N O Total	38,289 737 25,612 8,530 73,168	834,862 15,234 436,084 176,294 1,462,474	33,008 1,046 25,712 11,356 71,116	733,190 21,776 518,349 234,526 1,507,841	26,031 2,744 30,958 9,046 68,779	572,682 61,448 614,496 194,970 1,443,596
Cattle (Carcases) (lb.)	U N O Total	— — — —	— — — —	— — — —	— — — —	800,776 1,126,928 740,614 2,668,318	35,008 49,994 33,469 118,471
Sheep and Goats	U S N O Total	17,806 7,756 10,110 — 35,672	57,870 25,157 32,857 — 115,884	6,806 18,435 2,547 233 28,021	17,356 47,008 6,495 594 71,453	4,757 13,374 2,365 65 20,561	14,271 38,115 7,744 182 60,312
Pigs	U S N O Total	724 402 36 — 1,162	5,068 2,814 252 — 8,134	513 384 — — 897	4,104 2,688 — — 6,792	712 131 197 141 1,181	4,282 884 1,330 952 7,448
Poultry	U S N Total	14,678 — — 14,678	3,668 — — 3,668	8,019 210 — 8,229	2,005 52 — 2,057	21,045 15 41 21,101	5,261 4 14 5,279

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	To	1952		1953		1954	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Hides (lb.)	U	9,743	10,455	471,003	32,382	919,162	50,781
	S	51,948	100,319	923,919	63,519	135,910	6,397
	N	1,404	2,808	11,421	785	14,637	924
	O	3,384	2,030	90,262	6,206	99,514	6,219
	Total	66,479	115,612	1,496,605	102,892	1,169,223	64,321
Skins (Sheep and goats) (pieces)	U	20,950	4,190	28,818	6,634	32,616	11,997
	S	23,062	4,612	9,547	2,199	28,667	10,516
	N	218	44	—	—	—	—
	O	9,683	1,937	3,610	827	—	—
	Total	53,913	10,783	41,975	9,660	61,283	22,513
Skins and Karosses (Wild animal) (pieces)	U	20,128	21,390	30,773	18,044	21,604	11,309
	S	6,667	4,648	3,595	2,324	3,283	3,376
	N	170	128	—	—	—	—
	O	3,137	14,914	11,723	8,792	19	190
	Total	30,102	41,080	46,091	29,160	24,906	14,875
1 Miscellaneous animal products	U	—	14,165	—	14,543	—	10,111
	S	—	15,748	—	8,310	—	898
	N	—	40	—	—	—	5,713
	O	—	843	—	4,476	—	4,286
	Total	—	30,796	—	27,329	—	21,008
Bones (lb.)	U	2,193,634	10,970	1,396,078	8,551	2,351,670	15,600
	Total	2,193,634	10,970	1,396,078	8,551	2,351,670	15,600

¹ This includes Biltong, Ostrich feathers, Hair, Horns and hooves, Reins and strops, Wool, Ostrich skins, Wildebeest tails, Hippo strops and whips, calf skins, Ivory, Ostrich Eggshell, Game trophies, one Lion cub, Casein, Game meat, ofal, Hide trimmings, Tallow, Bone meal, Gall and Casings.

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	To	1952		1953		1954	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
* Timber (cubic feet)	U	110,000	60,229	99,885	56,283		
	S	31,600	17,208	46,448	26,084	210,832	122,020
	N	45,400	24,931	41,193	28,774		
	O	-	-	1,343	380	-	-
	Total	187,000	102,368	188,869	111,521	210,832	122,020
Gold (oz.)	S	1,245	15,383	1,109	14,008		
	Total	1,245	15,383	1,109	14,008	1,216	14,956
Silver (oz.)	S	281	90	464	142		
	Total	281	90	464	142	292	90
Asbestos (short tons)	U	448	34,330	548	61,862	885	98,400
	Total	448	34,330	548	61,862	885	98,400
Kyanite (tons)	O	2,385	22,449	1,960	16,210		
	Total	2,385	22,449	1,960	16,210	2,054	18,513
Other articles	U	-	2,073	-	3,873	-	10,237
	S	-	-	-	-	-	2,150
	N	-	-	-	-	-	4,476
	O	-	-	-	-	-	1,493
	Total	-	2,073	-	3,873	-	18,356
GRAND TOTAL			2,058,702		2,168,155		2,423,683

* The 1954 totals are for exports to the Union and the Rhodesias.

APPENDIX IV
LIVESTOCK POPULATION 1954

Year	Bulls	Cows and Heifers	Oxen and Totties	Calves	Total Cattle	Sheep	Goats	Horses	Mules	Donkeys	Pigs	Poultry	Dogs
1944	22,688	448,536	237,386	188,292	896,902	—	568,276	4,102	142	22,566	4,508	—	—
1945	22,509	446,157	244,464	190,045	920,175	—	555,778	4,126	111	17,912	3,536	—	—
1946	22,715	463,101	274,327	198,646	958,789	—	—	3,999	147	20,670	3,487	96,601	—
1947	22,187	472,936	272,312	199,505	966,940	187,728	426,738	3,399	139	21,157	3,140	84,783	—
1948	24,000	478,875	283,625	192,000	978,500	198,569	440,000	4,154	154	22,000	2,497	88,569	—
1949	25,012	468,786	273,145	216,008	982,951	214,229	443,993	4,329	138	18,292	3,445	107,764	—
1950	25,543	515,698	282,556	266,169	1,049,966	217,288	477,277	5,053	133	19,938	3,457	96,040	—
1951	22,841	526,108	288,108	189,033	1,026,845	197,798	475,271	6,618	269	19,915	2,731	74,390	—
1952	26,891	532,057	287,886	207,462	1,054,296	216,000	509,015	7,048	285	22,488	3,676	148,710	—
1953	42,757	544,439	289,196	221,289	1,097,681	227,941	497,654	6,674	308	24,812	4,029	156,044	—
1954	44,772	583,968	276,823	198,840	1,104,403	191,519	442,224	7,183	376	25,871	5,184	169,037	26,507

Offences	Pending at 31. 12. 53	Total Reported in 1954	Pending investigation at 31. 12. 54	Referred to Native (or Local) Courts	Not taken to Court				Taken to Court					
					Total	Civil; no case in law; or found false	Evidence insufficient, trivial, or undetected, etc.	Accused dead or insane	Total	Convicted	Dismissed	Nolle Prosequit	Awaiting trial at 31. 12. 54	
<i>Against Lawful Authority</i>														
Against public order	—	2	2	—	—	—	—	—	2	2	—	—	—	—
Perjury	—	6	—	—	1	—	1	—	3	3	—	—	—	—
Escape and rescue	16	54	16	—	14	11	3	—	40	40	—	—	—	—
<i>Against Public Morality</i>														
Rape and indecent assault	10	61	11	—	10	9	1	—	50	45	5	—	—	—
Other	5	25	3	—	8	4	4	—	19	18	1	—	—	—
<i>Against the Person</i>														
Murder and Manslaughter.	17	24	8	—	18	9	9	—	15	12	1	—	—	2
Attempted murder	—	11	2	—	2	1	1	—	7	7	—	—	—	—
Grievous Harm etc.	13	106	8	4	10	4	6	—	97	93	3	—	—	1
Assaults	32	364	17	31	24	13	11	—	324	311	9	—	—	4
<i>Against Property</i>														
Thefts and other stealings.	75	379	80	15	83	54	29	—	276	259	13	—	—	4
Robbery and extortion.	4	11	4	—	3	2	1	—	8	8	—	—	—	—
Burglary, house and store breaking	41	154	43	3	54	16	38	—	95	94	—	—	—	1
False pretences, cheating, fraud, etc.	8	38	11	2	8	4	4	—	25	23	2	—	—	—
Receiving stolen property	—	5	—	—	—	—	—	—	5	4	1	—	—	—
Arson.	—	11	2	1	3	3	—	—	6	6	—	—	—	—
Stock Thefts.	63	190	61	27	39	16	23	—	128	119	7	—	—	—
Other.	5	17	3	—	6	5	1	—	13	11	2	—	—	—
<i>Against the Penal Code</i> (There is no penal code in the Bechuanaland Protectorate.)														
<i>Against Local Laws</i>														
Against Road Traffic Laws	6	108	5	—	8	5	3	—	101	97	3	—	—	1
Against Liquor Laws	16	457	3	1	11	6	5	—	458	443	4	—	—	12
Other	216	3433	146	159	768	320	448	—	2576	2523	47	—	—	6
Gambling	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Other.	1	24	4	—	5	5	—	—	16	15	1	—	—	—
	529	5480	429	243	1075	487	588	—	4202	4132	99	—	—	31

PERSONS DEALT WITH BY THE COURTS 1954

District	Total arrested or summoned to court	Acquitted	Nolle prosequi	Awaiting trial at 31.12.54.	Total	Convicted										First offenders Act or warnings
						Death		Imprisonment			Whipping		Fine			
						(6)		(7)			(8)		(9)			
						M	F	M	F	J(c)	M	J(c)	M	F	J(c)	
Chobe (Headquarters Kasane)	261	1	-	-	260	-	-	32	-	-	-	221	7	-	-	
Francistown.	956	26	18	-	912	-	-	244	2	-	3	471	68	-	116	
Gaborones	170	8	-	-	162	-	-	32	1	-	-	96	32	-	-	
Ghanzi	154	18	2	-	134	-	-	80	-	-	-	19	1	-	31	
Kgalagadi	118	15	11	24	68	-	-	31	-	-	-	23	3	-	11	
(Headquarters Tshabong)																
Kgatlang.	286	19	16	5	246	-	-	39	1	-	-	185	9	-	12	
(Headquarters Mochudi)																
Kweneng	243	17	-	-	226	-	-	57	5	-	-	108	56	-	-	
(Headquarters Molepolole)																
* Lobatsi	215	10	19	1	188	-	-	107	10	4	4	21	34	-	8	
Ngamiland	305	3	-	-	302	1	-	45	3	-	2	248	2	-	1	
(Headquarters Maun)																
* Ngwato	641	25	2	-	619	-	-	179	5	-	5	331	74	-	11	
(Headquarters Serowe)																
Nwaketse	86	6	-	-	80	-	-	11	4	-	-	56	4	3	-	
(Headquarters Kanye)																
Tuli Block	473	11	-	-	462	-	-	119	-	-	-	309	13	3	18	
(Headquarters Machaneng)																
Total	3,908	159	68	30	3,659	1	-	976	31	4	8	2,088	303	6	208	

M = Male Adults F = Female Adults J = Juveniles (under 18).

• At Lobatsi 3 juveniles were sentenced to both imprisonment and whipping.
 At Ngwato 5 males were sentenced to both imprisonment and whipping.

APPENDIX VII

**RETURN OF DISEASES, INJURIES AND CAUSES OF DEATH FOR
THE YEAR 1954.**

DISEASES	IN-PATIENTS				OUT-PATIENTS		
	Remaining in Hos- pital at end of 1953	Yearly Total		Total Cases Treat- ed	Remaining in Hos- pital at end of 1954	Male	Female
		Admissions	Deaths				
A.							
1. Tuberculosis of respiratory system	52	354	28	406	76	543	680
2. Tuberculosis of meninges and central nervous system	—	7	2	7	1	4	4
3. Tuberculosis of intestines, peritoneum and mesenteric glands	—	8	2	8	5	39	53
4. Tuberculosis of bones and joints	8	45	—	53	19	72	60
5. Tuberculosis, all other forms	1	41	—	42	1	157	158
6. Congenital syphilis	—	23	—	23	2	624	792
7. Early syphilis	1	29	—	30	—	1065	1348
8. Tabes dorsalis	1	1	—	2	—	4	8
9. General paralysis of insane	—	2	—	2	—	—	—
10. All other syphilis	4	56	—	60	—	1700	2609
11. Gonococcal infections	2	94	1	96	1	2463	2808
12. Typhoid fever	—	3	1	3	1	3	1
13. Paratyphoid fever and other Salmonella infections	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
14. Cholera	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15. Brucellosis (undulant fever)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
16. (a) Bacillary dysentery	—	28	2	28	2	160	182
(b) Amoebiasis	—	25	2	25	—	51	49
(c) Other unspecified forms of dysentery	—	19	—	19	1	253	336
17. Scarlet fever	—	—	—	—	—	1	1
18. Streptococcal sore throat	—	114	—	114	—	534	841
19. Erysipelas	—	1	—	1	—	1	2
20. Septicaemia and pyaemia	—	12	2	12	—	12	8
Total carried forward	69	862	40	931	109	7686	9940

* This form is adapted in accordance with the "Manual of the International Statistical Classification of Diseases, Injuries and Causes of Death. World Health Organisation, Geneva, 1948.

Brought forward	69	862	40	931	109	7686	9940
21. Diphtheria	-	44	16	44	2	37	51
22. Whooping cough	1	58	5	59	4	563	680
23. Meningococcal infections	-	20	7	20	-	18	18
24. Plague	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
25. Leprosy	1	1	-	2	-	9	9
26. Tetanus	-	4	2	4	1	-	1
27. Anthrax	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
28. Acute poliomyelitis	-	-	-	-	-	1	1
29. Acute infectious encephalitis	-	1	-	1	-	1	1
30. Late effects of acute poliomyelitis and acute infectious encephalitis	-	2	-	2	-	1	1
31. Smallpox	-	-	-	-	-	2	2
32. Measles	1	32	-	33	-	310	351
33. Yellow fever	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
34. Infectious hepatitis	-	14	-	14	-	12	13
35. Rabies	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
36. (a) Louse-borne epidemic typhus	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(b) Flea-borne epidemic typhus (murine)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(c) Tick-borne epidemic typhus	-	2	-	2	-	13	3
(d) Mite-borne typhus	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(e) Other and unspecified typhus	-	8	-	8	-	1	1
37. (a) Vivax malaria (benign tertian)	-	-	-	-	-	4	1
(b) Malariae malaria (quartan)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(c) Falciparum malaria (malignant tertian)	-	82	1	82	1	517	445
(d) Blackwater fever	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(e) Other and unspecified forms of malaria	-	73	2	73	-	103	89
38. (a) Schistosomiasis vesical (S. Laematobium)	1	5	-	6	-	14	13
(b) Schistosomiasis intestinal (S. mansoni)	-	-	-	-	-	3	-
(c) Schistosomiasis pulmonary (S. japonicum)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(d) Other and unspecified schistosomiasis	-	9	-	9	-	33	26
39. Hydatid disease	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
40. (a) Onchocerciasis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(b) Loiasis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(c) Filariasis (bancrofti)	-	1	-	1	-	1	-
(d) Other filariasis	-	-	-	-	-	2	1
41. Ankylostomiasis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
42. (a) Tapeworm infestation and other cestode infestations	-	24	-	24	-	196	191
(b) Ascariasis	-	4	-	4	-	159	199
(c) Guinea worm (dracunculosis)	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
(d) Other disease due to helminths	-	-	-	-	-	39	49
43. (a) Lymphogranuloma venereum	1	5	-	6	-	21	7
Total carried forward	74	1251	73	1325	117	9746	12094

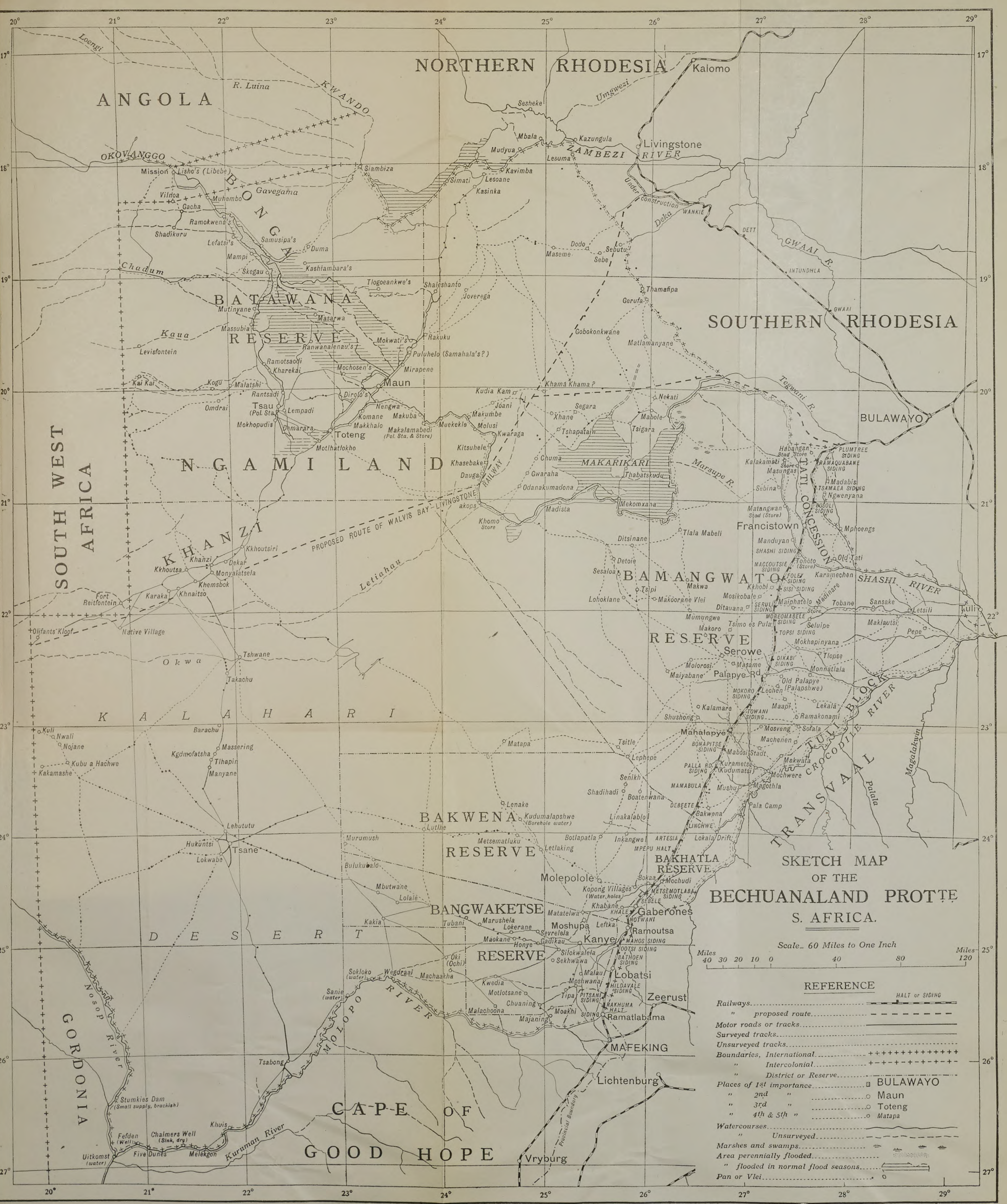
Brought forward	74	1251	73	1325	117	9746	12094
(b) Granuloma inguinale, venereal	-	4	-	4	-	18	26
43. (c) Other and unspecified venereal diseases	-	5	-	5	-	22	49
(d) Foodpoisoning infection and intoxication	1	3	-	4	-	7	3
(e) Relapsing fever	-	4	-	4	-	5	-
(f) Leptospirosis icterohaemorrhagica (Weil's disease)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(g) Yaws	-	-	-	-	-	6	9
(h) Chickenpox	-	5	-	5	-	74	97
(i) Dengue	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(j) Trachoma	-	7	-	7	-	27	45
(k) Sandfly fever	-	3	-	3	-	2	3
(l) Leishmaniasis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(m)a. Trypanosomiasis gambiensiis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
b. Trypanosomiasis rhodesiensiis	-	2	-	2	-	-	-
c. Other and unspecified Trypanosomiasis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(n) Dermatophytosis	-	-	-	-	-	29	48
(o) Scabies	-	24	-	24	-	1864	2214
(p) All other diseases classified as infective and parasitic	-	7	-	7	-	17	21
44. Malignant neoplasm of buccal cavity and pharynx	-	2	-	2	-	-	-
45. Malignant neoplasm of oesophagus	-	3	-	3	1	4	-
46. Malignant neoplasm of stomach	-	2	-	2	-	3	2
47. Malignant neoplasm of intestine, except rectum	-	2	-	2	-	1	5
48. Malignant neoplasm of rectum	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
49. Malignant neoplasm of larynx	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
50. Malignant neoplasm of trachea, and of bronchus and lung not specified as secondary	-	2	1	2	-	1	1
51. Malignant neoplasm of breast	-	9	1	9	-	2	16
52. Malignant neoplasm of cervix uteri	-	9	2	9	1	-	24
53. Malignant neoplasm of other and unspecified parts of uterus	-	5	-	5	-	-	19
54. Malignant neoplasm of prostate	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
55. Malignant neoplasm of skin	-	11	1	11	-	103	161
56. Malignant neoplasm of bone and connective tissue	-	3	-	3	1	2	2
57. Malignant neoplasm of all other and unspecified sites	1	18	1	19	-	47	72
58. Leukaemia and aleukaemia	-	1	1	1	-	-	-
59. Lymphosarcoma and other neoplasms of lymphatic and haematopoietic system	-	1	1	1	-	1	-
Total carried forward	76	1383	81	1459	120	11981	14912

Brought forward	76	1383	81	1459	120	11981	14912
60. Benign neoplasms and neoplasms of unspecified nature	3	124	—	127	3	117	292
61. Nontoxic goitre	—	2	1	2	—	1	9
62. Thyrotoxicosis with or without goitre	—	—	—	—	—	1	9
63. Diabetes mellitus	—	—	—	—	—	—	1
64. (a) Beriberi	—	—	—	—	—	13	20
(b) Pellagra	—	4	—	4	—	43	47
(c) Scurvy	1	7	1	8	—	149	207
(d) Other deficiency states	1	129	12	130	3	1053	1503
65. (a) Pernicious and other hyperchromic anaemias	—	10	—	10	1	101	301
(b) Iron deficiency anaemias (hypochromic)	—	9	—	9	—	147	312
(c) Other specified and unspecified anaemias	1	4	1	5	—	85	76
66. (a) Asthma	—	65	1	65	—	373	397
(b) All other allergic disorder, endocrine, metabolic and blood diseases	2	26	2	28	—	472	656
67. Psychoses	14	11	—	25	21	65	379
68. Psychoneuroses and disorders of personality	1	19	—	20	1	37	39
69. Mental deficiency	—	5	1	5	—	26	123
70. Vascular lesions affecting central nervous system	1	9	—	10	—	10	16
71. Nonmeningococcal meningitis	—	15	2	15	—	7	8
72. Multiple sclerosis	—	—	—	—	—	—	11
73. Epilepsy	—	9	—	9	2	70	—
74. Inflammatory diseases of eye	4	105	—	109	2	935	63
75. Cataract	2	11	—	13	1	55	1002
76. Glaucoma	—	6	—	6	—	28	49
77. (a) Otitis externa	—	1	—	1	—	126	50
(b) Otitis media and mastoiditis	—	47	1	47	—	266	136
(c) Other inflammatory diseases of ear	—	4	—	4	—	231	412
78. (a) All other diseases and conditions of eye	3	29	—	32	—	517	290
(b) All other diseases of the nervous system and sense organs	—	36	2	36	—	535	965
79. Rheumatic fever	3	31	2	34	2	225	208
80. Chronic rheumatic heart disease	—	24	1	24	—	47	67
81. Arteriosclerotic and degenerative heart disease	—	21	7	21	1	25	30
82. Other disease of heart	—	59	5	59	7	276	344
83. Hypertension with heart disease	1	9	—	10	—	35	11
84. Hypertension without mention of heart	—	16	—	16	—	35	78
85. Diseases of arteries	1	10	1	11	—	18	4
86. Other diseases of circulatory system	2	25	2	27	1	124	125
87. Acute upper respiratory infections	2	143	—	145	3	2169	2495
88. Influenza	—	154	—	154	4	1182	1474
Total carried forward	118	2562	123	2680	172	21580	27588

Brought forward	118	2562	123	2680	172	21580	27588
89. Lobor pneumonia	1	184	3	185	3	229	229
90. Bronchopneumonia	4	289	24	293	3	307	323
91. Primary atypical, other and unspecified pneumonia ..	1	80	7	81	1	91	104
92. Acute bronchitis	1	90	1	91	-	1152	1510
93. Bronchitis, chronic and unqualified	-	63	-	63	-	1729	1943
94. Hypertrophy of tonsils and adenoids	-	83	-	83	-	323	628
95. Empyema and abscess of lung	-	7	-	7	1	4	1
96. Pleurisy	2	54	-	56	5	104	109
97. (a) Pneumoconiosis	-	-	-	-	-	14	-
(b) All other respiratory diseases	-	36	-	36	-	462	486
98. (a) Dental caries	-	15	-	15	-	727	945
(b) All other diseases of teeth and supporting structures	2	30	-	32	-	270	365
99. Ulcer of stomach	-	3	-	3	-	3	4
100. Ulcer of duodenum	-	-	-	-	-	80	103
101. Gastritis and duodenitis ..	-	32	-	32	-	525	598
102. Appendicitis	4	70	1	74	2	56	73
103. Intestinal obstruction and hernia	1	38	2	39	-	269	295
104. (a) Gastro-enteritis and colitis between 4 weeks and 2 years	1	85	5	86	-	1072	1109
(b) Gastro-enteritis and colitis, ages 2 years and over	4	57	2	61	1	883	994
(c) Chronic enteritis and ulcerative colitis	-	39	2	39	-	168	236
105. Cirrhosis of liver	-	11	5	11	1	43	58
106. Cholelithiasis and cholecystitis	-	8	-	8	-	23	51
107. Other diseases of digestive system	4	94	-	98	3	2092	3118
108. Acute nephritis	-	16	1	16	-	170	138
109. Chronic, other and unspecified nephritis	-	11	1	11	-	54	38
110. Infections of kidney	-	24	5	24	-	281	230
111. Calculi of urinary system ..	-	4	-	4	-	15	2
112. Hyperplasia of prostate ..	2	5	1	7	1	15	-
113. Diseases of breast	-	18	-	18	1	-	248
114. (a) Hydrocele	-	12	-	12	-	42	12
(b) Disorders of menstruation	-	55	-	55	1	-	4217
(c) All other disease of the genito-urinary system	5	397	2	402	8	686	3141
115. Sepsis of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium	1	22	-	23	-	-	16
116. Toxaemias of pregnancy and the puerperium	-	21	2	21	-	-	-
117. Haemorrhage of pregnancy and childbirth	3	29	-	32	1	-	21
Total carried forward	154	4544	187	4698	204	33469	48944

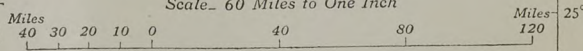
Brought forward	154	4544	187	4698	204	33469	48946
118. Abortion without mention of sepsis or toxæmia . .	2	116	—	118	1	—	187
119. Abortion with sepsis . .	—	24	—	24	—	—	79
120. (a) Other complications of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium . .	2	246	12	248	2	—	1036
(b) Delivery without com- plications	22	1650	—	1672	38	—	4883
121. Infections of skin and subcutaneous tissue . .	7	224	—	231	4	2440	3178
122. Arthritis and spondylitis	2	30	—	32	1	332	431
123. Muscular rheumatism and rheumatism, unspecified	1	75	—	76	2	2057	2306
124. Osteomyelitis and peri- ostitis	3	32	—	35	4	86	62
125. Ankylosis and acquired musculoskeletal defor- mities	1	3	—	4	1	24	19
126. (a) Chronic Ulcer of Skin (including tropical ulcer)	—	10	—	10	1	109	93
(b) All other diseases of skin	1	55	—	56	—	1170	1133
(c) All other diseases of musculoskeletal system	—	41	—	41	1	258	232
127. Spina bifida and menin- gocele	—	1	—	1	1	—	—
128. Congenital malformations of circulatory system . .	—	—	—	—	—	4	4
29. All other congenital mal- formations	—	12	1	12	—	17	18
130. Birth injuries	—	1	1	1	—	1	2
131. Postnatal asphyxia and atelectasis	—	18	13	18	—	5	3
132. (a) Diarrhoea of newborn (under 4 weeks)	—	7	1	7	—	40	52
(b) Ophthalmia neonato- rum	—	1	—	1	—	2	6
(c) Other infections of new- born	—	6	4	6	—	5	5
133. Haemolytic disease of new- born	—	6	5	6	—	—	—
134. All other defined diseases of early infancy	3	143	5	146	5	279	368
135. Ill-defined diseases pecu- liar to early infancy and immaturity, unqualified . .	—	15	3	15	1	70	84
136. Senility without mention of psychosis	—	3	—	3	—	10	29
137. (a) Pyrexia of unknown origin	6	52	2	58	1	81	77
(b) Observation, without need for further medical care	26	1371	—	1397	30	775	3314
(c) All other ill-defined causes of morbidity . .	1	312	—	313	2	1603	1594
Total carried forward . .	231	8998	234	9229	299	42837	68141

	231	8998	234	9229	299	42837	68141
Accidents, Poisonings, and Violence (External Cause) A.E.							
138. Motor vehicle accidents	1	28	4	29	1	36	21
139. Other transport accidents	8	34	1	42	2	91	34
140. Accidental poisoning ..	—	15	3	15	1	14	18
141. Accidental falls ..	9	196	1	205	4	592	446
142. Accident caused by machinery ..	2	20	—	22	1	50	35
143. Accident caused by fire and explosion of combustible material ..	1	66	6	67	1	367	399
144. Accident caused by hot substance, corrosive liquid, steam and radiation ..	5	61	2	66	4	109	92
145. Accident caused by fire-arm ..	—	7	—	7	—	6	—
146. Accidental drowning and submersion ..	—	—	—	—	—	1	—
147. Foreign body entering eye and adnexa ..	—	18	—	18	2	71	36
Foreign body entering other orifice ..	—	20	1	20	—	54	48
Accidents caused by bites and stings of venomous animals and insects ..	—	46	—	46	2	147	113
Other accidents caused by animals ..	3	54	—	57	—	142	72
All other accidental causes	5	179	—	184	7	840	467
148. Suicide and self inflicted injury ..	—	13	1	13	1	36	34
149. Homicide and injury purposely inflicted by other persons (not in war) ..	1	115	1	116	4	157	182
150. Injury resulting from operations of war ..							
Total ..	266	9870	254	10136	329	45550	70138



SKETCH MAP
OF THE
BECHUANALAND PROTTE
S. AFRICA.

Scale: 60 Miles to One Inch



REFERENCE

- Railways..... HALT or SIDING
- " proposed route.....
- Motor roads or tracks.....
- Surveyed tracks.....
- Unsurveyed tracks.....
- Boundaries, International.....
- " Intercolonial.....
- " District or Reserve.....
- Places of 1st importance..... BULAWAYO
- " 2nd "..... Maun
- " 3rd "..... Toteng
- " 4th & 5th "..... Matapa
- Watercourses.....
- " Unsurveyed.....
- Marshes and swamps.....
- Area perennially flooded.....
- " flooded in normal flood seasons.....
- Pan or Vlei.....

COLONIAL REPORTS

ANNUAL REPORTS

BASUTOLAND	GOLD COAST	N. RHODESIA
BECHUANALAND	HONG KONG	NYASALAND
PROTECTORATE	JAMAICA	SARAWAK
BRITISH GUIANA	KENYA	SIERRA LEONE
BR. HONDURAS	FED. OF MALAYA	SINGAPORE
BRUNEI	MAURITIUS	SWAZILAND
CYPRUS	NIGERIA	TRINIDAD
FIJI	NORTH BORNEO	UGANDA

BIENNIAL REPORTS

*ADEN	GIBRALTAR	ST. VINCENT
BAHAMAS	GILBERT AND	*SEYCHELLES
BARBADOS	ELLICE IS.	*SOLOMON IS.
*BERMUDA	GRENADA	SOMALILAND
*CAYMAN IS.	*LEEWARD IS.	TONGA
*DOMINICA	*NEW HEBRIDES	*TURKS AND
FALKLAND IS.	ST. HELENA	CAICOS IS.
GAMBIA	*ST. LUCIA	ZANZIBAR

*These territories will produce a Report for 1953-54 and the remainder for 1954-55.

A standing order for selected Reports or for the complete series will be accepted by any one of the Sales Offices of H. M. Stationery Office at the following addresses :
 †York House, Kingsway, London, W. C. 2 ; †423 Oxford Street, London, W. 1. ; 13a Castle Street, Edinburgh, 2 ; 39 King Street, Manchester, 2 ; 2 Edmund Street, Birmingham, 3 ; 109 St. Mary Street, Cardiff ; Tower Lane, Bristol, 1 ; 80 Chichester Street, Belfast.

A deposit of £6 (six pounds) should accompany standing orders for the complete series.

†Post Orders for these Sales Offices should be sent to P.O. Box 569, London, S. E. 1.

ORDERS MAY ALSO BE PLACED THROUGH ANY BOOKSELLER



S.O. Code No. 58-1-5-54

UNIVERSITY OF
MINNESOTA LIBRARY

316.81

G798

unb.



COLONIAL REPORTS

Bechuanaland
Protectorate

1955

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE

REPORT FOR THE YEAR

1955

MAFEKING
CONTROLLER OF STORES
BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE
1956

C O N T E N T S

PART I

General review	1
------------------------	---

PART II

CHAPTER 1	Population	9
CHAPTER 2	Occupations, Wages and Labour Organization	9
CHAPTER 3	Public Finance and Taxation	12
CHAPTER 4	Currency and Banking	28
CHAPTER 5	Commerce	28
CHAPTER 6	Production	30
CHAPTER 7	Social Service	
	1. Education	39
	2. Public Health	43
	3. Housing and Town Planning	49
	4. Social Welfare	49
CHAPTER 8	Legislation	51
CHAPTER 9	Justice, Police and Prisons	52
CHAPTER 10	Public Utilities and Public Works	57
CHAPTER 11	Communications	60
CHAPTER 12	Press, Broadcasting, Film and Government Information Services	63
CHAPTER 13	Local Forces	63

PART III

CHAPTER 1	Geography and Climate	64
CHAPTER 2	History	66
CHAPTER 3	Administration	69
CHAPTER 4	Weights and Measures	72
CHAPTER 5	Reading List	72

APPENDICES	73
--------------------	----

A map will be found facing the last page.

PART I

GENERAL REVIEW OF THE MOST IMPORTANT EVENTS AND DEVELOPMENTS OF THE YEAR

The High Commissioner, Sir John le Rougetel, K.C.M.G., M.C., relinquished his appointment in February and was succeeded by Sir Percivale Liesching, G.C.M.G., K.C.B., K.C.V.O., who was sworn in and assumed office on the 4th March. His Excellency, who was Permanent Under-Secretary of State in the Commonwealth Relations Office from 1949, had served as Political Secretary in the High Commissioner's Office from 1933 to 1935.

The Resident Commissioner, Mr. W. F. MacKenzie, C.M.G., C.B.E., left on retirement in September and was succeeded in October by Mr. M. O. Wray, O.B.E., who was formerly Administrative Secretary in the High Commissioner's Office.

The Colonial Development and Welfare allocation to the Bechuanaland Protectorate was finally fixed at £980,000 and with an unexpended balance of £272,083 available at the 31st March, 1955, there will be an amount of just over £1½million for expenditure on development projects during the period 1955-60.

Fifteen Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Schemes were in operation during the year. A statement showing the year's working of each scheme will be found in Appendix I. Notes on the progress of the schemes are in Appendix II. The total grant approved for these schemes was £1,122,907, of which £850,824 had been spent at the close of the financial year on the 31st March, 1955.

Revenue during the financial year 1954-55 amounted to £1,054,671 and expenditure to £1,078,735 (both inclusive of Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes), which resulted in a deficit of £24,064.

The public debt amounted to £9,346 on the 31st March, 1955. This was £1,335 less than the corresponding figure for the previous year.

The year 1955 saw the gradual strengthening of Mr. Rasebolai Kgama's position as Native Authority of the Bamangwato Tribe and the widening of his control over the moderate section of the people.

In other directions too the year has shown a steady improvement in the affairs of the tribe. Native Tax collections were higher than ever before and school attendances were the highest since the start of the present political troubles. The tribe was prosperous: steady prices were assured for their cattle and there was a surplus of grain in most areas of the Reserve.

Messrs. Glazer Brothers, a firm with large commercial interests in the Union, South West Africa and Southern Rhodesia, secured a majority interest in the Tati Company during the year. They bought more than 90 per cent of the company's shares (which had fluctuated in value between 7s. 4d. and 2s. 4d. during the previous 10 years) at 2ls. each, thus taking over the company's land assets (including the township of Francistown) and the Tati ranching and mineral assets. Previously Messrs. Glazer Brothers had bought about 40,000 acres of land in the Tati District and 56,000 acres at the southern extremity of the Tuli Block.

Later in the year they advertised 1,000,000 acres for sale in the Tati Concession at £1 an acre. Up to the end of October, 165,000 acres had been sold in 13 units, eight of which were of 5,000 acres or more.

The Witwatersrand Native Labour Association, which recruits Africans to work on the Rand gold mines, continued to expand its activities in Francistown. A new hangar costing more than £36,000 was nearing completion at the end of the year and the Association spent more than £16,000 on development work during the year. There are now eight Dakota aircraft based at Francistown and employed in flying recruits and repatriates to and from the Protectorate.

The Colonial Development Corporation Abattoir at Lobatsi completed a successful first year of operation. The number of cattle processed during the year was 67,027, the record kill for one day amounting to 466. The number of cattle processed the previous year (a working period of 55 days from the opening of the Abattoir in October, 1954) was 5,988 – an average of slightly more than 108 head a day. The meat was exported to the Union, Northern Rhodesia and the Belgian Congo.

By August, five of the boreholes on the cattle export route from Ghanzi to Lobatsi had been equipped, enabling cattle to reach Lehututu in good condition. Of the 18 boreholes sunk between Tsane and Kanye none has yielded potable water, and there are indications that satisfactory supplies may not be found in this sector. However a new heavy capacity drill, capable of boring to depths hitherto uprobed in the Kalahari, arrived towards the end of the year. It will be put to early use in a final attempt to reach adequate water supplies on this section before any alternative route is used.

Measures to combat foot and mouth disease were continued and the contractors on the Central Bamangwato quarantine fence completed their contract during the year. The fence, however, is still short of the Southern Rhodesia border by about 25 miles. Its completion and the necessary bush clearing will be done by the Veterinary Department. The fencing of both the Makoba and Dukwe quarantines has been completed in spite of thick belts of Mopane forest which had to be cleared at Dukwe. Progress on the Makalamabedi fence northwards has been slow, owing to a hold-up of materials, but it was hoped that this would be completed by the end of the 1955–56 financial year.

Generally, all fencing has stood up well to the onslaughts of game and fire. The quarantines were used throughout the year and their effect in controlling the spread of disease by cattle and by game has been marked.

During the year the Education Department worked out detailed schemes over fixed periods to relieve existing shortages of accommodation, staff and equipment in tribal primary schools. In the Southern Protectorate these schemes have been submitted to the Tribes and have been accepted. In the Northern Protectorate the schemes will be considered, together with the draft estimates for 1956-57, in the light of the financial position of the Tribes concerned.

A Colonial Development and Welfare Grant of £30,000 was approved for the erection of an education block at Moeng College. This work should be completed by the end of 1956. Meanwhile the constitution of the College (which is to be run as a Territorial institution) has been revised and Government has undertaken to meet future recurrent costs.

As the result of a Colonial Development and Welfare grant of £26,000, the Protectorate will have its first European boarding school. This is to be built at Lobatsi.

Indian children, with all other extra-territorial non-Europeans, are now banned from Union schools, and during the year the Protectorate's Indian community started raising funds towards the erection of a boarding school.

Building operations began towards the end of the year on the new teacher training college at Lobatsi.

The year was notable for the interest shown in the mineral resources of the Protectorate by prominent mining houses. It is the Government's policy to encourage the search for minerals as much as possible. If the Protectorate is to develop and become an economically viable state, it is essential that mineral development should be brought about and that the country should be weaned from its present total dependence on the cattle industry. At present the Protectorate is known to contain copper, coal, salt, asbestos and gold. With a sufficiently determined effort to develop these and discover other minerals, there is at least a reasonable hope that the future economy need not necessarily remain entirely dependent on agricultural production assisted by a grant-in-aid.

The Chobe Timber Concessions, a company which had a concession to extract timber over some 500 square miles in the Chobe District, went into voluntary liquidation in July. Since then interest has been shown by a number of other timber companies in negotiating a new concession from Government.

During January a South African telecommunications engineer and the Controller of Posts and Telegraphs, Basutoland, made an investigation on behalf of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government into the possibility of the Protectorate constructing its own telephone and telegraph lines instead of leasing a channel from the Rhodesia Railways between Francistown and Lobatsi at a cost of £5,000 a year.

The report which followed the survey indicated that the scheme was not only feasible but would, if carried out, result in an increase of revenue to the Territory. Accordingly, an application was made for a loan of £83,000 to finance the purchase of Rhodesian telephone and telegraph equipment and to construct new telephone and telegraph lines from Lobatsi to Francistown with spur routes from the main line to Kanye,

Molepolole, Mochudi, Ramoutsa and Gaberones village. It is proposed also to appoint a Controller of Posts and Telegraphs and it is hoped to expand and improve the services provided by this Department to enable it to keep pace with the development of the Territory.

The provision of adequate telephone services will not only meet a long felt need but should also provide a further stimulus to development.

Exceptionally heavy rains throughout the Protectorate in January and February resulted in several washaways on the railway line and severe damage to roads. Rail and road traffic was held up, communications were disrupted and for days on end various centres of population were isolated. Serowe, Mochudi and Kanye were cut off from the railway line. Maun was inaccessible except by air, and even that means of communication failed for a short time when the airfield was under water. The floods in Ngamiland reached record levels and the bridge over the Thamalakane River at Maun was submerged.

Early in April three Maun residents, including Mr. C. H. Riley, a former Chairman of the European Advisory Council and a member of the Council since 1948, were drowned when their boat capsized in the flooded river.

The heavy rains were accompanied by cool, cloudy weather, which not only retarded the growth of all crops but was particularly conducive to the rapid development of fungus diseases. Many fields became waterlogged and crops on sandy soils became stunted and yellow. Sorghum crops, however, generally recovered with the advent of drier weather in March and, with no frosts until late in the winter, they matured normally. Early planted maize crops yielded extremely well, but late crops grown in light soils did not recover from the abnormal rainfall.

Agricultural extension work continued to show progress. In the Bamalete Reserve the average crop yield from demonstration plots was 964 lb. per acre compared with a yield of 170 lb. per acre from lands planted in the traditional method.

The Colonial Development Corporation have had promising results from work in the Molopo River area on water development and, with the aid of their consultant geophysicist, plans were prepared for the development of further water supplies on their own ranch and on the land which is earmarked for allocation to settlers.

A Land Settlement Board with official and unofficial membership was established in November to advise the Resident Commissioner on the selection of applicants for land and on general matters of policy regarding the care, disposal and settlement of Crown Lands in the Protectorate. The first task of the Board will be to consider the Molopo settlement scheme and later there will be similar problems to consider in relation to the alienation of Crown Land at Ghanzi, where a survey of farms was begun during the year.

A Court of Appeal for the High Commission Territories was established in April. This Court is composed of the Chief Justice, who is President, and other Judges of Appeal. For the first time, litigants can now appeal from High Court decisions to a local Court of Appeal instead of having

to appeal direct to the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. The further right of appeal to the Judicial Committee is retained.

During the year there was a general revision of salaries in all three Territories. The aim of the revision was to bring salaries more into line with those in neighbouring Colonial Territories, such as Northern Rhodesia, in order to aid recruitment and at the same time provide a reasonable increase in gross emoluments to enable officers to meet the rise in the cost of living.

Two sessions of the European Advisory Council and one of the African Advisory Council were held during the year.

Amendments to the European Advisory Council Proclamation were discussed at the 56th Session of that Council in March. Although eligible in terms of the Proclamation to be registered as voters, Government officials had been prohibited by administrative instruction from voting, and Council recommended that this instruction should be rescinded. It was also recommended that wives of registered voters should be allowed to vote without possessing the property qualification in their own right, but that neither they nor Government officers should be eligible for election to Council.

Other subjects debated included land for European settlement, roads, bridges, an internal air service, import control and various aspects of the cattle industry.

The principal items discussed at the 35th Session of the African Advisory Council were a proposed increase in Native Tax, the constitution and standing rules of the Council, the salaries of teachers and the question of a Central Tribal Treasury. An encouraging feature of the session was the willingness of members to consider ways and means of making the Council a more useful body without radical alteration to its constitution.

The 57th Session of the European Advisory Council was marked by a most friendly welcome to the new Resident Commissioner. On nearly all matters discussed a unity of aim between Government and Council was evident.

Council pressed in particular for development in the Territory and for all assistance towards that end. Prospective agricultural development was given prominence and its needs were emphasised. Members were rather more favourable to the Colonial Development Corporation than at some previous sessions, since the Abattoir had proved to be a paying proposition, but they felt that profits should be properly used to compensate cattle producers in the North for their extra expense in freight to the South and the loss of condition incurred by the journey. The case for a Northern abattoir was pressed.

Other matters discussed were Licensing Boards, meat prices and grades, simpler income tax forms, poll tax, rifle clubs, borehole-drilling on the Ghanzi cattle route, Bushman tax, agricultural shows, roads and bridges, immigration and the wildebeest problem.

The High Commissioner, who was accompanied by Lady Liesching, paid his first official visit to the Territory in April, when he toured the Southern Protectorate. Kgotla meetings were held at Kanye, Ramoutsa, Mochudi and Molepolole. His Excellency toured the Northern Protectorate

in August and visited all the main centres. A feature of both tours was the loyal and warm reception accorded everywhere to His Excellency by all sections of the people.

Sir Christopher Cox, Educational Adviser to the Secretary of State for the Colonies, toured the Territory in February and visited most of the important centres.

The High Commissioner for Canada and Mrs. Gill paid a brief visit to the Protectorate in June. Mr. B. J. Schoeman, the Union Minister of Transport, visited the Chobe area on a shooting trip in July.

Sir Harold Willan, C.M.G., M.C., the Chief Justice, and Lady Willan visited the Northern Protectorate in August and Sir Harold attended a conference of Judicial Officers at Francistown. They also visited Lobatsi in December.

During September there were visits by Mr. H. Nutcombe Hume, C.B.E., M.C., Deputy Chairman of the Colonial Development Corporation, and Mrs. Hume; Dr. F. Dixey, C.M.G., O.B.E., Director of Colonial Geological Surveys; and Colonel L. van der Post, the author and explorer. The last-named spent several months in the Territory.

Mr. G. C. Wishart, the newly-appointed Regional Controller of the Colonial Development Corporation, visited Lobatsi and Mafeking in November and December.

PART II

CHAPTER 1

POPULATION

The last census was taken in 1946. The figures were: Europeans 2,379; Africans 292,755; Coloured persons and Asiatics 1,176. This gives an average density of 1.07 per square mile. The next census is due to be taken towards the end of 1956.

European statistics maintained during the year show that there were 71 births and 11 deaths in 1955, which gives birth and death rates of 29.8 and 4.6 per thousand respectively. The respective 1954 figures were 21.4 and 6.7 per thousand.

The great majority of the people live in the eastern and north-western parts of the Territory; about one-half of the population live in villages of 1,000 or more inhabitants, though many of these spend a large part of their time at outlying cattle posts.

CHAPTER 2

OCCUPATIONS

WAGES AND LABOUR ORGANIZATIONS

Over ninety-five per cent of the population is engaged in stock raising. A few Africans are employed as herds and drovers by European farmers, but the great majority are themselves the owners of livestock, which are cared for on a family or tribal basis. Native law and custom make it the duty of every male member of the tribe to do his part in the tending of the family livestock, and, in consequence, there is little paid employment in the Protectorate. The principal occupations of the small number of African wage earners are:

	<i>Approximate Number</i>	<i>Average Wages per mensem</i>
Government Service	*3,360	£5 to £59
Agriculture	3,000	£3
Building	300	£6
Trade and Industry.	2,000	£6
Domestic Service	2,000	£3

* This figure includes approximately 2,100 casual labourers.

Agricultural and domestic workers receive free rations and domestic servants are usually supplied with quarters. The majority of Government African employees are unskilled or semi-skilled, but there are also some clerks, policemen, teachers, nurses, dispensers, artisans, etc.

The normal working week is 45 hours, but there is some variation, chiefly among agricultural workers, and the hours for domestic servants are longer.

EMPLOYMENT AND WAGES

Government salaries for Europeans vary from £370 to £2,300 a year. There is a cost of living allowance which averages eight to twelve per cent of salaries for married men and half those rates for single men. A few Europeans are employed as farm managers and stores assistants.

There is no immigrant labour and little or no unemployment. About 21,000 men left the Territory during the year for work in neighbouring territories. Of these, 19,361 went on contract to the Union mines and the remainder went independently to various other forms of employment. Recruitment of labour for the mines is strictly controlled under Cap. 64 of the Laws and is mainly in the hands of two well established firms, the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association and the Native Recruiting Corporation with headquarters in Johannesburg. The former organization operates north of latitude 20° and the latter south of that parallel. The usual period of a contract is nine months, after which most recruits return home. Many return to the mines for second or third periods.

COST OF LIVING

Price indices are not kept. The average prices of the principal commodities, compared with 1939 are as follows :

	1939			1955		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Sugar per lb.			4½			7½
Tea per lb.		2	11		9	0
Coffee per lb.		1	7		7	0
Salt per lb.			1			2½
Tobacco per lb.		2	6		5	7
Rice per lb.			4½			1 6
Maize Meal per 180 lb.	1	0	7	2	4	0
Maize per 200 lb.		17	7		1 17	4½
Sorghum per 200 lb.		14	9		2 5	10
Paraffin per 4 gallons		11	10½		18	10
Soap per bar.			3½			1 8
Beef per lb.			3			1 5
Mutton per lb.						1 10
Butter per lb.		1	7			3 6
Eggs per dozen			10½			2 6
Wheat flour per 200 lb.	1	8	0	4	15	10
Brandy per bottle		6	6		13	2

LABOUR DEPARTMENT

There is no labour department. The care of labour and the administration of the laws relating to labour are in the hands of the District Commissioners.

INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS

There are no employers' organizations. Indeed, the only industries which can be described as such are the Chobe Concessions' sawmill at Serondela, a gold mine and a kyanite mine in the Francistown district, an asbestos mine at Moshaneng, a creamery and a bonemeal factory in Francistown and the Colonial Development Corporation's abattoir at Lobatsi. There is one workers' organization, the Francistown African Employees' Union. Membership is open to all, irrespective of calling, except Government and Railway employees. It has a nominal membership of 200 but has not hitherto been active.

LABOUR LEGISLATION

No labour legislation was enacted during the year.

INDUSTRIAL TRAINING

As the country is almost entirely pastoral there is little demand for industrial training. The Public Works Department trains a few mechanics and artisans and some agricultural teaching is undertaken in the schools.

CHAPTER 3

PUBLIC FINANCE AND TAXATION

The financial position of the Protectorate is as follows :

General Revenue Balance on 1.4.1954		£	419,153
			1954-55
	<i>Approved Estimates</i>	<i>Actual Figures</i>	
	£	£	
Ordinary Expenditure.	955,138	945,148	
Ordinary Revenue.	829,944	908,515	
	—125,194	—36,633	36,633
(Surplus +)			382,520
(Deficit —)			
Colonial Development and Welfare Surplus			12,569
			395,089
Depreciation of Investments			102
General Revenue Balance on 1.4.1955			394,987
Under-issues from C.D. & W. Fund on 31.3.1955			4,853
			<u>399,840</u>

REVENUE AND EXPENDITURE

Revenue for 1954-55, including receipts from the Colonial Development and Welfare Fund, amounted to £1,054,671 and expenditure including that on Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes was £1,078,735. Details are as follows :

REVENUE		EXPENDITURE	
<i>Head</i>	<i>Amount</i>	<i>Head</i>	<i>Amount</i>
	£		£
Customs and Excise	161,988	Resident Commissioner	4,053
Taxes and Duties	303,988	Administration of	
		Justice	18,782
Licences	37,790	Agriculture	21,438
Fees of Court or		Air Service	1,169
Office and Ear-		Allowances to Chiefs.	490
nings of Depart-		Audit	4,391
ments	23,268	Contributions to Native	
Posts and Telephones	166,311	Treasuries	41,773
Judicial Fines	10,073	District Administration	44,843

OCCUPATIONS, WAGES AND LABOUR ORGANIZATION

13

Revenue from Government Property	174,848	Education	50,418
Reimbursements	8,737	Forests	1,912
Interest	6,381	Medical	99,563
Miscellaneous	15,131	Miscellaneous	50,110
		Pensions and Gratuities	41,677
		Police	122,280
		Posts and Telegraphs	25,087
		Public Debt	1,335
		Public Works Department	62,756
		Public Works Recurrent	57,602
		Public Works Extraordinary	127,701
		Secretariat	20,944
		Stores Department	6,199
		Treasury	4,918
		Veterinary	90,768
		General Clerical Service	44,939
Total Ordinary Revenue	908,515	Total Ordinary Expenditure	945,148
Colonial Development and Welfare Fund	146,156	Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes	133,587
	<u>1,054,671</u>		<u>1,078,735</u>

Deficit : £24,064

The following reflects the total Ordinary Revenue and Expenditure for the past ten years :

REVENUE

<i>Year</i>	<i>Revenue</i>	<i>Grant-in-aid United Kingdom Treasury</i>	<i>Total</i>
	£	£	£
1945-46	416,080	—	416,080
1946-47	466,757	—	466,757
1947-48	483,029	—	483,029
1948-49	501,344	—	501,344
1949-50	568,438	—	568,438
1950-51	554,161	—	554,161
1951-52	770,043	—	770,043
1952-53	772,089	—	772,089
1953-54	908,255	—	908,255
1954-55	908,515	—	908,515

EXPENDITURE

<i>Year</i>	<i>Amount</i>
	£
1945-46	350,179
1946-47	404,779
1947-48	475,503
1948-49	575,683
1949-50	570,646
1950-51	569,309
1951-52	620,087
1952-53	765,311
1953-54	891,700
1954-55	945,148

Expenditure on Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes during the past ten years was as follows :

<i>Year</i>	<i>Amount</i>
1945-46	28,241
1946-47	60,098
1947-48	47,589
1948-49	65,563
1949-50	105,399
1950-51	117,413
1951-52	137,065
1952-53	182,698
1953-54	123,305
1954-55	133,587

MAIN HEADS OF REVENUE

The main heads of revenue for 1954-55 were Customs and Excise £161,988 ; Taxes and Duties £303,988 ; Posts and Telephones £166,311 and Revenue from Government Property £174,848. All Telegraph revenue accrues to the Southern Rhodesia Post Office, who operate the telegraph in the Protectorate.

PUBLIC DEBT

Public Debt amounted to £9,346 on the 31st March, 1955.

ASSETS AND LIABILITIES

The Statement of Assets and Liabilities as at 31st March, 1955, is as follows :

HEADS OF TAXATION

1954-55

I CUSTOMS AND EXCISE £161,988

In accordance with the agreement concluded between the Governments of the Union of South Africa and the Bechuanaland Protectorate the latter receives 0.27622 per cent of the total import and excise duty collected by the former. Import duty on Union manufactured spirits, sparkling and fortified wine and malt is collected by the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government on importation into the Protectorate at the following rates provided for in Proclamations 37 of 1951 and 34 of 1953 :

Whisky	3	0	0	per Imperial Proof Gallon
Brandy	1	7	6	"
Gin 'Class A'	1	7	6	"
Gin 'Class C'	2	0	0	"
Liqueurs	2	0	0	"
Sparkling Wine	9	0		per Imperial Gallon
Fortified Wine	2	11		"
Malt	4	0		per Standard Gallon

The total collections for 1954-55 amounted to £17,727.

The following table shows the total collections for the last five years under the Head : CUSTOMS AND EXCISE

<i>Year</i>	<i>Total</i>
1950-51	111,272
1951-52	132,249
1952-53	141,731
1953-54	175,961
1954-55	161,988

The estimate for 1954-55 was exceeded by £1,988.

II TAXES AND DUTIES £303,988

(a) *Native Tax*

Ordinary £129,320 : Proclamation 31 of 1949 as amended by Proclamation 81 of 1953 provides for a tax of £1. 8s. 0d. per annum payable by every male African of the apparent age of 18 years or more.

35 per cent of ordinary tax collected in respect of areas where Native Administrations have been established is paid to the respective Native Treasuries.

The following table shows the total collections for the last ten years :

<i>Year</i>	<i>Total</i> £
1945-46	78,664
1946-47	79,803
1947-48	82,564
1948-49	83,221
1949-50	86,425
1950-51	95,933
1951-52	103,531
1952-53	102,702
1953-54	133,818
1954-55	129,320

The estimate for 1954-55 was exceeded by £25,320.

(b) *Graded £2,425*

Proclamation 16 of 1949 as amended by Proclamation 82 of 1953 and High Commissioner's Notice 277 of 1955 provides for a graduated tax payable by all natives and varying from 5s. per annum (for a taxpayer owning up to 9 head of stock or earning £48 p.a.) to £10 per annum (for a taxpayer owning over 300 head of stock or earning over £500 per annum) with the exception of the Batlokwa, Bamalete and Bakgatla tribes who pay a tax based on the above assets varying from 10s. per annum to a maximum of £20 per annum. Women and minors owning less than ten head of stock are not liable for tax nor is any native under the age of twenty-one years who has attended a recognized school during the year. The estimate for the year was exceeded by £425. Government only receives Graded Tax collected in respect of districts in which there is no Native Treasury; in these areas the tax accrues to the Native Administrations.

Non-Native Poll Tax £3,255

Chapter 75 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate laws provides for a tax of £3 per annum payable half yearly in advance on the 1st July and 1st January by all males who have attained the age of 21 years, have been resident in the Protectorate for 180 days prior to the beginning of the tax year (1st July) and who are not liable to pay Native Tax. The estimate for the year was exceeded by £255.

Income Tax £103,655

(Collections were below the estimate by £36,345)

The following were the rates of tax, rebates and surcharges on taxable income for the year ended 30th June, 1954, as amended by Proclamation No. 58 of 1954.

Normal Tax

Public Companies: Five shillings and sixpence per £.

Private Companies and Unmarried Persons: Eighteen pence for each

pound increased by one-thousandth of a penny for each pound of the taxable income in excess of one pound. If the taxable income exceeds £10,000 the rate is 2s. 4d. per £.

Married Persons: Fifteen pence for each pound increased by one-thousandth of a penny for each pound of the taxable income in excess of one pound. If the taxable income exceeds £10,000 the rate is 2s. 1d. per £.

	£	s.	d.
<i>Rebates:</i> Married Person	31	0	0
Unmarried Person	23	0	0
Child under 18 years	10	0	0
Child 18-21 years (dependent)	10	0	0
Dependant	2	10	0
Insurance			

1 3 per £ of
premium with ma-
ximum of £7. 10s
(or £4 in the case
of a contributor
to a Provident or
Pension Fund).

Surcharges: Married persons : 35 per cent of the tax. Private companies and Unmarried persons : 45 per cent of the tax.

Super Tax

Private Companies and Individuals: Two shillings in the pound plus one-four-hundredth of one penny for each pound of the income subject to super tax in excess of one pound less a rebate of £210 from the tax payable. There is a surcharge of 40 per cent in the case of married persons and 45 per cent in the case of unmarried persons and private companies. If the income subject to super tax exceeds £10,000 the rate is 4s. 1d. per £.

Public Companies: These are not liable to super tax.

The tables on pages 19 and 20 show the incidence for Income Tax in the Protectorate.

Cattle Export Tax £57,126

Proclamation 10 of 1952 and Government Notice 64 of 1952 provide for a tax of £1 upon every head of horned cattle exported from the Protectorate or slaughtered in the Colonial Development Corporation Abattoir. 2s. of each tax of £1 imposed is paid into the Cattle Export Levy Fund which is used for the general benefit of the livestock industry. Collections were below the estimate by £12,874.

Transfer Duty £8,108

The Cape Act No. 5 of 1884 provides for transfer duty on immovable property at the rate of 2 per cent. Proclamation 31 of 1944 provides for a surcharge of 1 per cent on the dutiable amount which exceeds £1,000

NORMAL TAX

Classification of Assessments issued in respect of Incomes for the year ended 30th June, 1954, and of prior years during the year ended 30th June, 1955

Income Category £	Number of Taxpayers			Amount of Taxable Income			Amount of Tax Payable		
	Individuals		Total	Individuals		Total	Individuals		Total
	Married	Single		Married	Single		Married	Single	
Not exceeding 300	1	4	6	£ 109	£ 602	£ 858	£ 2	£ 19	£ 61
301-400	-	41	45	-	14366	15747	-	216	425
401-500	4	35	39	1909	15573	17482	4	520	524
501-600	16	37	54	8891	20274	29691	-	990	1159
601-700	15	28	43	9885	18290	28175	110	994	1156
701-800	34	28	63	25383	21041	47139	162	1390	1954
801-900	46	17	64	38985	14502	54353	483	1053	2126
901-1000	36	8	44	34466	7447	41913	835	481	1237
1001-1250	73	8	82	80599	8942	90589	756	425	2874
1251-1500	75	8	84	102252	10658	114206	2329	812	4908
1501-1775	36	5	42	58027	8409	68146	3945	788	3742
1776-2000	17	1	20	32218	1945	37933	2750	204	2642
2001-3000	39	3	45	90214	7024	104199	1694	758	6915
3001-4000	21	4	26	75281	12740	91054	5301	1127	6243
4001-7000	19	6	28	97884	32207	146601	4738	3075	13497
Over 7000	6	-	9	54016	-	100260	6601	-	10694
Total	438	233	694	710119	194020	988346	34052	12849	60157
			23			84207		13256	

SUPER TAX

Classification of Assessments issued in respect of Incomes for the year ended 30th June, 1954 and of prior years during the year ended 30th June, 1955

Income Category £	Number of Taxpayers			Amount of Super Taxable Income				Amount of Super Tax Payable				
	Individuals		Companies	Individuals		Companies	Individuals		Companies			
	Married	Single		Married	Single		Married	Single				
Not exceeding 2000	17	2	1	20	32118	3905	1869	37892	394	36	19	449
2001-3000	38	4	3	45	87764	9292	6961	104017	3861	374	345	4580
3001-4000	19	4	1	24	67534	12740	3033	83307	6019	969	263	7251
4001-7000	21	6	1	28	81799	32207	5393	119399	10990	4149	915	16054
Over 7000	7	—	1	8	61551	—	18799	80350	8489	—	5261	13750
Total	102	16	7	125	330766	58144	36055	424965	29753	5528	6803	42084

but does not exceed £2,000 and 2 per cent on the dutiable amount which exceeds £2,000. Collections were below the estimate by £1,392.

Death Duties £100

The rates are laid down in Cap. 71 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws and are as follows :

(a) *Estate Duty* : Upon the first £2,000 of dutiable amount $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. Upon so much of the dutiable amount as exceeds :

£2,000 and does not exceed	£3,000	—	1 per cent
£3,000	„ „ „	£7,500	— 2 „
£7,500	„ „ „	£10,000	— 3 „

Thereafter the rate of estate duty upon each pound of the dutiable amount in excess of £10,000 shall be three ten-thousandths of a pound for every completed one hundred pounds or part thereof contained in the dutiable amount, subject to a maximum rate of six shillings and eight pence upon each pound.

(b) *Succession Duty* :

Degree of relationship of Successor to Predecessor Rate of duty upon dutiable amount of succession

- | | |
|---|------------|
| (1) Where the successor is the direct descendant or ascendant of the predecessor | 3 per cent |
| (2) Where the successor is the brother or sister of the predecessor | 5 „ |
| (3) Where the successor is the descendant of the brother or sister of the predecessor | 8 „ |
| (4) Where the successor is otherwise related to the predecessor or is a stranger in blood or is in an institution | 12 „ |

Provided that :

(a) so much of any dutiable succession as exceeds ten thousand pounds in value shall be subject to an additional duty of one per cent on the amount of such excess ;

(b) where the successor is married to a person related by blood to the predecessor, the rate of the duty chargeable shall be determined by the relationship of whichever of the two spouses is more nearly related to the predecessor ;

(c) where the predecessor was married to a person related by blood to the successor, the rate of duty chargeable shall be determined by the relationship of the successor to whichever of the predecessor and his or her spouse was more nearly related to the successor.

Collections were below the estimate by £900.

Export Duty – Game, Hides, Skins, Meat etc.

Chapter 114 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws as amended by High Commissioner's Notices Nos. 34 of 1953 and 3 of 1954 provides for an

export tax on the skins of hoofed game, ivory, game – heads, meat, rhino horn, hippo tusks and teeth at a rate varying from 2*d.* per lb. in respect of hippo tusks or teeth to 5*s.* per lb. on unmanufactured ivory and rhino horn.

Export Tax Bones

Government Notice No. 74 of 1954 provides for a tax of £5 per short ton of 2,000 lb. on bones exported from the Territory with the exception of the Ghanzi district.

Auction Tax

Proclamation No. 60 of 1954 provides for auction tax at the rate of £2 for every £100 on movable property and £1 for every £100 on immovable property. The following table shows the total collections for the last five years under the Head : TAXES AND DUTIES.

<i>Year</i>	<i>Total</i>
	£
1950-51	287,229
1951-52	275,060
1952-53	296,648
1953-54	330,731
1954-55	303,989

III. LICENCES £37,790

Arms and Ammunition £838

Chapter 87 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws provides for the licensing of all fire arms and for the control and issue of permits for the purchase of arms and ammunition and for the licensing of dealers in arms and ammunition at the following rates :

(a) Licence to possess an arm:

African	Free
Any other person	5 <i>s.</i> 0 <i>d.</i> per arm

(d) Permits to purchase ammunition:

African	
For the purchase of cartridges	5 <i>s.</i> 0 <i>d.</i>
For the purchase of gunpowder and percussion caps.	2 <i>s.</i> 6 <i>d.</i>
For any other person	Free

(c) Dealers in arms and ammunition £5 p.a.

Collections exceeded the estimate by £38.

Trading £18,036

Proclamation 67 of 1953 provides for the issue of the following trading licences at the rates shown below :

- (a) Aerated or Mineral Water Dealer : £1. 10*s.* 0*d.* p.a.
- (b) Baker : £7. 10*s.* 0*d.*

(c) Banker : £50 p.a. for the first and only office and £25 p.a. for each and every other office. Business may also be transacted by an agency on not more than one day per week for fee of £5 p.a. if such agency is outside the district in which the bank is situated.

(d) Blacksmith : £2. 10s. 0d. p.a.

(e) Butcher : £7. 10s. 0d. p.a.

(f) (i) Chemist or Druggist ; (ii) General Dealer ; (iii) Motor Garage ; (iv) Wholesale Distributor : £20 p.a. where aggregate sales for preceeding year did not exceed £3,000, plus £2. 10s. 0d. for every £1,000 or portion thereof over £3,000 with a maximum of £65 p.a.

(g) (i) Restaurant : £7. 10s. 0d. p.a.; (ii) Restaurant exclusively for Native use : £3. 15s. 0d. p.a.

(h) Pawn Broker : £10 p.a.

(i) (i) Produce Buyer Resident : £3. 0s. 0d. p.a. ; (ii) Produce Buyer Non Resident : £3. 0s. 0d. per quarter.

(j) Auctioneer : £40 p.a.

(k) Broker or Agent (Except as to diamonds) : £10 p.a.

(l) Commercial Traveller : £5 p.a.

(m) Driller : £5 p.a. per drill.

(n) External Agents : Resident £20 p.a. ; Non-Resident £25 p.a.

(o) Hawker (Personal) : £5 for every 3 months plus £5 for every additional vehicle for the same period.

(p) Insurance Company or Agent : (i) For every Insurance Company Society or Association : £5 p.a. for 1st year and 3d. in the pound or part of a pound on premium payable during the preceeding year ended on the 31st December with a minimum of £5 and a maximum of £50 for the second and subsequent years ; (ii) Agent : £10 p.a.

In addition the following licences are provided for in the laws shown:

(a) Methylated Spirits Licence : £1 p.a. (Proclamation 18 of 1949).

(b) Livestock (Cap. 86 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws as amended by Proclamation 84 of 1953) : (i) Livestock Buyers : £20 p.a. (ii) Livestock Buyer's Agents : £10 p.a. ; (iii) Livestock and Produce Buyers : £3 p.a.

(c) Hide Buyers (High Commissioner's Notice 22 of 1955) : (i) Hide and Skin Buyers : £1 p.a. ; (ii) Green Hide Buyers : £1 p.a. ; (iii) Hide and Skin Exporters : £20 p.a.

Collections exceeded the estimate by £4036.

Labour Agents and Runners £555

Chapter 64 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws provides for licences for labour recruiting agents and runners at the following rates :

Agents : £25 p.a.

Runners : £1 p.a.

Collections were below the estimate by £45.

Motor Drivers and Vehicles £14,695

Vehicles. Chapter 141 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws as amended by Proclamation 75 of 1954 provides for the registration and

licensing of motor vehicles, tractors and trailers and vehicles plying for hire at the following rates :

	£	s.	d.	
Motor Cycle without side car.	1	0	0	p.a.
Motor Cycle with side car	1	10	0	p.a.

Motor Vehicles and Tractors:

Weighing 1500 lb. and under.	6	0	0	p.a.
1501 lb. to 2,500 lb.	7	0	0	p.a.
2501 lb. to 4,000 lb.	9	0	0	p.a.
4001 lb. to 6,000 lb.	11	0	0	p.a.
6001 lb. to 8,000 lb.	21	0	0	p.a.
8001 lb. to 9,000 lb.	31	0	0	p.a.
9001 lb. and over	36	0	0	p.a.

Trailers:

Weighing 1500 lb. and under.	3	0	0	p.a.
1501 lb. to 2500 lb.	4	0	0	p.a.
2501 lb. to 4000 lb.	7	0	0	p.a.
4001 lb. to 6000 lb.	12	0	0	p.a.
6001 lb. to 8000 lb.	24	0	0	p.a.
8001 lb. to 9000 lb.	36	0	0	p.a.
9001 lb. and over	42	0	0	p.a.

Licence fees in respect of tractors and trailers used solely for the purpose of farming and lumbering operations are reduced by 50 per cent.

No fee is payable on bulldozers. An additional fee of £2 p.a. is payable on vehicles and trailers plying for hire. The registration fee is 5s. per vehicle.

Drivers: Provisional licences : Motor Cycle 2s. 6d. – period of 3 months; Motor Vehicle 5s. – period of 3 months.

Drivers licence : Motor Cycle 11s. ; Motor Vehicles £1. 1s. 0d.

Certificate of Competency : 5s.

Collections exceeded the estimate by £3695.

Liquor and Hotel £616

Cape Act No. 28 of 1883 and Chapter 84 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws provide for the following liquor licences:

Retail	£40 p.a.
Wholesale	£30 p.a.
Railways	£60 p.a.

Provision is also made for midnight privileges in respect of retail licences for a fee of 10s. per extension.

Collections exceeded the estimate by £16.

Game £2,514

Chapter 114 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws as amended by Proclamations 2 of 1948 and 3 of 1952 provides for the issue of Game Licences at the following rates :

<i>Royal Game:</i>		£	s.	d.
Residents :	2 months	15	0	0
	Whole season	30	0	0
Non-Residents :	2 months	50	0	0
	Whole season	100	0	0
<i>Large Game:</i>				
Residents :	7 days	2	0	0
	14 days	4	0	0
	1 month	8	0	0
	2 months	12	0	0
	3 months	16	0	0
	Whole season	25	0	0
Non-Residents :	7 days	15	0	0
	14 days	25	0	0
	1 month	50	0	0
	2 months	75	0	0
	3 months	100	0	0
	Whole season	125	0	0
<i>Small Game:</i>				
Residents :	Whole season	1	0	0
Non-Residents :	7 days	3	0	0
	1 month	6	0	0
	Whole season	10	0	0

Collections were below the estimate by £486.

Miscellaneous £537

This represents the following licences and fees which are not classified:
Chapter 117 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws: Special Marriage at £5.

Admission Fees. (Proclamation 94 of 1955): Advocate, Attorney, Notary Public or Conveyancer : £5.

Cap 120 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws:

Medical Practitioner	5	0	0
Dentist	1	1	0
Chemist	10	0	0
Optician or Oculist	10	0	0
Nurse	10	0	0
Midwife	10	0	0

The following table shows the total collections for the last five years under the Head LICENCES :

1950-51	22,348
1951-52	27,220
1952-53	28,512
1953-54	32,313
1954-55	37,790

IV. FEES OF COURT OR OFFICE AND EARNINGS OF DEPARTMENTS £23,268

Stamp duty imposed under Chapter 76 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws and the Cape Colony Stamp and Office Fees Act of 1884 accrues to this revenue head and amounted to £7,895 for the financial year 1954-55. The following table shows the total collections for the last five years under this head.

1950-51		16,551
1951-52		23,209
1952-53		20,357
1953-54		21,619
1954-55		23,268

V. POSTS AND TELEPHONES

The following table shows the revenue and expenditure for the Posts and Telephones Department for the last nine years :

<i>Year</i>	<i>Revenue</i>	<i>Expenditure</i>	<i>Surplus</i>
	£	£	£
1946-47	30,084	11,958	18,126
1947-48	76,428	11,904	64,524
1948-49	59,220	13,785	45,435
1949-50	64,572	17,477	47,095
1950-51	69,110	14,707	54,403
1951-52	70,395	14,911	55,484
1952-53	77,731	18,208	59,523
1953-54	127,627	22,388	105,239
1954-55	166,311	25,087	141,224

Other Revenue: The following table shows collections for the last five years in respect of other revenue :

VI. JUDICIAL FINES

1950-51		£ 4,106
1951-52		5,678
1952-53		7,390
1953-54		10,708
1954-55		10,073

VII. REVENUE FROM GOVERNMENT PROPERTY £

1950-51		23,040
1951-52		* 212,758
1952-53		* 171,778
1953-54		* 167,342
1954-55		* 174,848

* Includes £140,000 wayleave paid by the Rhodesia Railways.

VIII. REIMBURSEMENTS £

1950-51		423
1951-52		2,065
1952-53		11,001
1953-54		9,935
1954-55		8,737

IX. INTEREST £

1950-51		3,426
1951-52		3,197
1952-53		5,190
1953-54		7,322
1954-55		6,380

X. MISCELLANEOUS £

1950-51		16,656
1951-52		18,212
1952-53		11,751
1953-54		24,696
1954-55		15,131

Native Treasuries

	<i>Revenue</i> 1954-55	<i>Expenditure</i> 1954-55	<i>General Revenue Balance on</i> 31.3.55
Bamangwato	51,869	54,576	71,362
Bakwena	12,629	16,436	30,409
Bakgatla	11,017	9,212	8,670
Tati	9,624	6,806	14,033
Bangwaketsi	35,169	24,420	54,395
Batlokwa	792	1,099	2,387
Batawana	12,474	10,502	17,287
Barolong	2,719	2,574	10,593
Bamalete	3,614	2,378	7,211

CHAPTER 4

CURRENCY AND BANKING

Union of South Africa currency is legal tender in terms of Chapter 77 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws. In the Northern Protectorate Southern Rhodesian currency is used to a large extent as in the Ghanzi area where South West African currency is used. Both Rhodesian and South West African currency is accepted at par. The Standard Bank of South Africa Ltd. and Barclays Bank (D. C. & O) each have branches at Francistown and Lobatsi and operate agencies from there.

CHAPTER 5

COMMERCE

A statement of imports and exports is at Appendix III. Once again the total figures reflect a favourable balance of trade, the value of the Territory's exports exceeding that of its imports by £359,152. This figure is slightly lower than the corresponding balance (£370,260) in 1954. An appreciable increase in trade is indicated by the fact that imports and exports were both higher, the former rising by £409,072 and the latter by £397,964.

The rise in imports is largely accounted for by the fact that the value of textiles imported increased by nearly £182,000, that of vehicles by nearly £140,000, that of general merchandise by more than £103,000 and that of fertilizers by more than £11,000. On the other hand, importations of livestock declined by more than £21,000, owing mainly to the fewer horses, mules, donkeys and cattle imported.

The harvest yielded large quantities of white and mixed maize (despite the adverse effect on late-planted crops of unusually heavy rains) and, with the arrangements made for processing and re-distribution, the country was largely self-supporting in food grains during the latter half of the year. During the last four years the value of maize imports has steadily declined and the 1955 figure was slightly over £26,000. No maize or maize meal was exported.

Sorghum crops generally recovered from the excessive rainfall and, with late frosts, a good harvest was reaped. Prices in the Union and the Federation were good and sorghum exports reached the record figure of nearly 104,000 bags, thereby more than doubling the value of this export, which rose from £124,750 to £259,940. The value of beans and pulses exported rose by more than £29,000 to £171,369.

Almost 75 per cent of the national income was derived from animals, mainly cattle, £2,105,667 of the total exports coming from livestock sources.

The Colonial Development Corporation's abattoir at Lobatsi completed its first year of working successfully and 67,027 head of cattle were slaughtered. The prices paid during the year continued to be the same as would have been paid had the animals been slaughtered in Johannesburg.

The value of cattle carcasses exported was £1,378,541 (an increase of £1,260,070 over the figure for the previous year, when the abattoir operated for less than three months.) This was offset by the greatly reduced number of cattle exported on the hoof, the value of which fell by £1,343,471. However, abattoir by-products were worth more than £185,000 and hide exports rose by more than £145,000. There was thus a considerable overall increase in the value of the Protectorate's cattle industry.

Butter production continued to rise and exports of this commodity amounted to 427,000 lb. worth £66,405 ; 62,900 lb. of butter was consumed in the country. A higher percentage of first-grade butterfat was received by the Tati Creamery and prices were fixed at levels designed to encourage first-grade production ; butterfat exports, which, like those of butter, were confined to the Union, rose by nearly £17,000. During the latter part of the year a campaign was launched to improve the standard of dairies in the Territory.

Another factor which contributed to the increase in exports was asbestos, the value of the output from the Moshaneng Mine rising by more than £67,000 to £165,634. Other mineral production was down. Kyanite exports declined by more than £10,000 while those of gold and silver fell to a lesser degree.

The timber company operating in the Chobe Concession went into voluntary liquidation during the year and timber production dropped appreciably, exports falling by more than £47,000.

Although there was a good demand for sheep and goats in the Union, exports to the Rhodesias fell considerably. In addition fewer sheep and goat skins left the country and there was an overall decrease of more than £33,000 in the export value of these commodities.

An export levy of £5 a ton remained in force on all bones exported from the Protectorate, except those leaving Ghanzi, and, with the Francistown bonemeal factory in full production, bone exports fell by more than £15,000 to £402. Besides selling considerable quantities of bonemeal within the Territory the factory sent 395 tons (worth £6,913) to the Union and 166 tons to Southern Rhodesia.

CHAPTER 6

PRODUCTION

LAND UTILIZATION AND TENURE

(a) Crown Lands (approximate area 165,175 square miles)

All Crown Lands are vested in the High Commissioner by Orders-in-Council of the 16th May, 1904, and the 10th January, 1910, which are printed on pages 8 and 10 of Volume I of the Laws of the Bechuanaland Protectorate. They are unalienated with the exception of a number of farms in the Ghanzi District and two areas, one at Matetsi and one on the Molopo River, which have been leased to the Colonial Development Corporation.

(b) The Native Reserves established as follows

Barolong Farms (approximately 450 square miles) defined in Cap. 29 of the Laws ;

Bamangwato Reserve (approximately 42,080 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws ;

Batawana Reserve (approximately 34,500 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws ;

Bakgatla Reserve (approximately 3,600 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws ;

Bakwena Reserve (approximately 15,000 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws ;

Bangwaketse Reserve (approximately 9,000 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws ;

Bamalete Reserve (approximately 178 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws ;

Batlokwa Reserve (approximately 56 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

All land in the Reserve is vested in the Chief and Tribe and is allocated by the Chief in his discretion. Land does not pass automatically from father to son and cannot be said to be owned by any one person, though in practice, on the death of a person to whom an area has been allocated by the Chief, his heirs usually continue to occupy the same area. No land may be alienated by a Chief or tribe.

An exception to this system has occurred in the Barolong Farms. Although this Block of farms is reserved to the Barolong tribe, it was parcelled out and allocated by a former Chief to various tribesmen for occupation and the farms pass, on the death of the owners to their heirs on a similar basis. Nevertheless the farms are deemed to be the property of the whole tribe.

(c) The European Farms

Certain area of land, known as the Lobatsi Block (approximately 214 square miles), the Gaberones Block (approximately 260 square miles) and the Tuli Block (approximately 1,930 square miles) were granted in perpetuity to the British South Africa Company, with power to sell or lease the land. The boundaries of the blocks are defined in Cap. 92 of the Laws. The blocks have been divided into farms and many of them sold with freehold titles.

(d) The Tati District

The Tati District (approximately 2,074 square miles) is owned by the Tati Company Limited, who have full power to sell or lease any portion. Right is reserved to Government to acquire sites for public buildings. Within the Tati District, an area of approximately 320 square miles is set aside as a native reserve for which Government pays to the Company £1,000 a year. No rent is payable by natives living within the reserve. The grant to the Company is governed by Cap. 90 of the Laws.

AGRICULTURE

The climatic conditions which prevailed during the 1954-55 crop season were extraordinary. Abnormally high rainfalls occurred in all districts during January-February and totals for the season were well above normal.

The heavy rain was accompanied by cool cloudy weather which not only retarded the growth of all crops but was particularly conducive to the rapid development of fungus diseases. Many fields became water-logged and crops on sandy soils became stunted and yellow.

Sorghum crops generally recovered with the advent of drier weather in March and, as frosts were not experienced until late in the winter, crops matured normally.

Grazing was plentiful in all areas except in continuously over-burdened areas where natural recovery cannot take place. Late rains ensured the availability of natural water supplies during winter and caused the early growth of grass in the spring.

The following table shows the seasonal rainfall at 12 centres in the Protectorate :

<i>Place</i>	<i>Mean Rainfall Inches</i>	<i>Season 1954-55</i>
Lobatsi	21.9	31.6
Kanye	20.6	27.2
Gaberones	20.5	23.4
Molepolole	19.2	28.5
Mochudi	18.8	24.7
Mahalapye	18.7	34.8
Serowe.	16.9	38.5

Francistown	18.1	31.5
Kasane	26.6	44.9
Maun	17.2	34.3
Ghanzi	17.9	20.0
Tsabong	11.8	13.6

Early planted maize crops yielded extremely well but late crops grown in light soils did not recover from the effects of the heavy rains. Appreciable quantities of white and mixed maize, however, became available after harvest and the arrangements made for the processing and re-distribution of this grain enabled the country to be largely self-supporting in food grains during the latter half of the year.

Considerable quantities of other grains and pulses, viz. sorghum, millet, beans, groundnuts etc. also became available after harvest for local consumption and for export to adjoining countries where good prices were obtained.

The cool dull weather favoured the development of fungus diseases, particularly of sorghum. Seedling blights were widespread and older plants were affected by *Ramulispora sorghii* a fungus disease not previously reported. Aphids again caused damage. In certain areas, severe losses were caused by depredations of birds (Quelea finches).

The number of staff engaged in extension work was reinforced by the appointment of additional demonstrators under Colonial Development and Welfare Scheme D 680. Certain of these men were posted to new areas and others were deployed to increase the scope of the work in areas where the response from the people has been good. Conditions varied widely from area to area and the results obtained from the three-acre demonstration plots varied correspondingly. Some plots became waterlogged and, in many instances, heavy rains prevented timely cultivation. Nevertheless, some excellent yields were recorded, notably in the Bamaletse reserve where the highest yield was 16 bags (200 lb. each) per acre. There, the average yield from all plots was 964 lb. per acre compared with the figure of 170 lb. per acre from a sample of lands planted in the traditional method.

Peasants were again encouraged and assisted to purchase implements from the proceeds of sales of their surplus grain.

Although lower yields were recorded, progress was maintained in the Unit Agricultural Project at Ranaka where the more advanced peasants have adopted crop rotations and have already begun to erect contour banks on sloping lands with suitable implements made available by the Department. Three dam sites in the area have been surveyed and it is hoped that one dam will be built shortly.

The full programme of experimental and investigational work planned was successfully carried out at the Mahalapye, Morale and Lobatsi stations. The object of this work is to provide fundamental data on which the recommendations and advice of the Department can be based. The work includes variety trials with the main crops grown, fertilizer and manurial trials, agronomic investigations, plant breeding and selection projects, grazing and pasture management experiments.

Exceptionally high yields were recorded for most crops ; maize yields of over 20 bags per acre being recorded. Grain sorghum yields were adversely affected by fungus attacks.

The response to kraal manure and superphosphate dressings on the phosphatic deficient soils of the south was again very significant.

Systematic insecticides were used experimentally to protect sorghums from aphid attacks and proved to be very effective.

Varieties of cowpeas introduced from the Union proved to be higher yielding than many of the locally grown types. Further trials are, however, necessary before the bulking and distribution of seed of these varieties can be recommended.

Further introductions of sorghums, both grain and sweet types, have been made from the United States of America and neighbouring territories. These are being grown under observation to determine their adaptability to local conditions.

Further progress has been made with the pearl millet breeding project and it is anticipated that a synthetic polycross variety will be available at the end of next season. Several pure lines are already available.

The paramount importance of clean cultivation under conditions which exist in this country was again demonstrated. The importance of this fact in relation to African lands cannot be too strongly emphasized, as weed can nullify the advantages of such practices as manuring, fertilizing and the use of adapted varieties.

Results from grazing trials show that at the present rate of stocking, i.e. 1 animal unit to $13\frac{1}{3}$ acres, there is no significant difference in the productivity of natural pasture when subject to different grazing systems. The principal consideration appears to be the observance of a stocking rate within the carrying capacity of the veld. Rehabilitation of misused veld can generally be rapidly achieved by complete resting for one or two growing seasons or, more slowly, by a split season two-camp grazing system if complete rest is impracticable.

Plans for the control of soil erosion include the provision of fencing material with which severely overgrazed areas can be fenced to exclude stock and permit natural rehabilitation. Funds available during the year have been allocated to the Werda area where a curtain fence parallel to the Molopo river will be erected by the local inhabitants.

Funds made available by the Ngwato Tribal Administration were used to ring fence a small sponge area near Palapye. The effect on the stream emanating from this area has been remarkable and further work of this nature is planned for next year.

As a result of the prolonged rainy season, dairying commenced earlier than usual and continued until July when production virtually ceased. Butter production at the Tati Creamery amounted to 483,869 lb. During the year, 427,000 lb. was exported and 62,900 lb. was consumed in the country. There was a slight increase in the percentage of 1st-grade butterfat received by the Creamery. Prices were fixed at levels designed to encourage the production of 1st-grade butterfat and during the latter part of the year a determined campaign was launched to improve the standard of local dairies.

FORESTRY

The timber company operating in the Chobe Concession went into voluntary liquidation during the year and consequently the output of timber dropped appreciably after the end of July.

Routine duties consisting of the burning of firebreaks to protect the forest area, fire patrols within the forest area, check measuring of logs, supervision of felling practices and clearing of slash etc. were carried out by the Forester assisted by a small African staff.

The Forester resigned at the end of November.

The main species felled during the year were Mukwa (*Pterocarpus angolensis*) and Mukusi (*Baikiaea plurijuga*). Logs of the former species were exported in the round for processing into plywood.

VETERINARY AND LIVESTOCK

Grazing remained fairly good throughout the year, although deterioration occurred during the dry and cold winter months. The overgrowth of grass led to increased damage by fires, which were more extensive than usual and destroyed large areas of potential grazing from June to October.

In the Bakwena Reserve grazing was excellent in the desert areas, but elsewhere, in the over-stocked areas round Molepolole and in the Lethlakeng and Kudumalapye valleys there was early deterioration, which was aggravated later in the year by extensive grass fires.

At Gaberones heavy rains in the early part of the year resulted in rapid growth of grass of reduced nutritive value. Considerable dispersion of stock was allowed by the presence of abundant surface water and there was some recovery of grazing. Towards the end of the year the grazing in this area was better than it had been for many years.

In the Bamangwato Reserve grazing was good during the early part of the year, but later, with the drying of outlying pans, stock tended to concentrate round permanent water supplies, particularly along the Botletle River at Rakops, and there was much trampling and consequent denudation. Grass fires in this district began in May and by October half the grazing was estimated to have been destroyed.

Over-stocking continued to be a major problem in the eastern Bangwaketse Reserve and although plentiful grazing existed to the west, stock owners were reluctant to move away.

In Ngamiland grazing was generally good, except towards the latter part of the year when large areas were destroyed by grass fires. Trampled grazing round Maun early in the year was followed by an alarming spread of weeds of *Crotalaria* sp., and poisoning among stock was common at this time.

Grazing of a plentiful but poor nature was available throughout the year at Ghanzi, although here again extensive damage was caused by grass fires, the situation only being saved by early rains towards the end of the year.

In the Lobatsi, Francistown and Palapye Districts grazing was also good. At Palapye, however, grass fires caused extensive damage west of the railway line. Several farms on the Tuli Block were completely burnt out when fires spread from the Reserve.

In the European farming areas progress in animal husbandry continues, particularly in the Tuli Block. Here bulls of good type and conformation are continually being introduced and with the camping of farms, improved breeding policies and supplementary feeding, considerable improvement has occurred in stock destined for fattening. Drilling took place over most of this area during the year and irrigation of fodder crops for cattle is practised on several farms.

Although little progress in animal husbandry can be reported from the reserves, there has been some development. In Gaberones, Africans are becoming more interested in obtaining bulls of a better type and several have shown a marked aptitude for appreciating a good quality animal. This movement has been helped by tribal law, which has made the castration of all scrub bulls compulsory. The formation of syndicates in the Bakgatla Reserve, for the equipping and maintenance of boreholes, is having the effect of bringing the herds of the more progressive owners together, thereby forming useful nuclei for further development.

Cattle castrations increased by 34 per cent (32,446 in 1955, compared with 24,142 in 1954) and small stock castrations by 79 per cent (13,540 in 1955 compared with 7,546 in 1954).

The general trend of livestock is shown in Appendix IV.

Progress was reported from the Livestock Improvement Centre at Goodhope, where the selection of breeding stock and the culling of cows has resulted in the production of good quality calves which, when mature, will be put out into the Reserve as stud bulls or breeding heifers. Two boreholes were equipped here, one of which was supplied with a reservoir.

At the Leupane Livestock Improvement Centre herds of both black and red and white Tswana cattle are being developed in addition to the Afrikaner. Drastic culling of cattle has also taken place at this centre. Fifty young bulls of good type were sold during the year.

Progress continues on the farm at Ramathlabama. During the year five pedigree Afrikaner heifers were purchased, all of which calved down to service by a pedigree Afrikaner bull. They will form the nucleus of a pedigree herd. A calf crop of 83 per cent was obtained. All cattle maintained excellent condition throughout the year.

The Veterinary bulletin in English was published regularly throughout the year, in addition to which a simplified version in the vernacular enjoyed its usual wide circulation. Two thousand copies of the simplified version were distributed monthly to all schools, District Commissioners and cattle guards.

Only eight outbreaks of anthrax were recorded during the year, with a total mortality of 60 cattle. A total of 1,080,715 inoculations were made during the annual inoculation campaign.

Annual free vaccinations against blackwater and contagious abortion were carried out during the year in the Southern Protectorate, excluding the Crown Lands of the Kalahari. The good effects of these campaigns

are already noticeable, losses from blackwater having fallen to four per cent of those recorded in other areas. Abortions among cattle receiving annual inoculations amount to 15 per cent of those in the remainder of the Territory. Abortions in the Palapye area, where brucellosis is particularly rife, comprise more than half of the total losses in the whole Territory. A survey to determine the incidence of the disease, based on the ring test, is to be made in the Palapye District shortly.

Two outbreaks of rabies, both of which were confirmed, occurred in the Palapye District during the year. From Francistown 27 outbreaks of clinical rabies were reported, but none was confirmed by laboratory examination. Free vaccination against this disease was given from the 1st April, 1955.

Sheep scab remained a problem in the Bangwaketse Reserve, several outbreaks being reported. A total of 112,947 sheep were dipped, most of these in the annual dipping campaign in the Lobatsi, Kanye and Gaborones Districts and along the Molopo.

Routine treatment for trypanosomiasis of all cattle leaving Ngamiland was continued during the year, in addition to the usual curative treatment carried out in Ngamiland itself. A total of 7,582 cattle were treated with antrycide and 841 with dimidium bromide. The use of the latter drug is shortly to be abandoned in favour of the newer and more efficacious ethidium bromide.

Lumpy skin disease again made its appearance in the last quarter of the year and by the end of the year most districts had reported some outbreaks. Mortality from this disease was low, varying from three to 40 per cent of cattle in affected herds. Increased losses from malignant catarrh occurred on the Tuli Block, where 369 cattle died of this disease. A further ten deaths were reported from the Tati.

No outbreaks of foot and mouth disease occurred during the year.

Botulism (aphosphorosis) was common in many districts, the deaths of 1,762 cattle and 53 sheep being attributed to this cause. Sales of botulinus vaccine declined somewhat during the year, but increasingly large numbers of farmers began to feed bonemeal, which was readily available from Francistown or Lobatsi.

More than double the number of deaths occurred from paratyphoid in calves (3,478, compared with 1,391 in 1954), in spite of a great increase in the use of vaccine as a preventative, 15,758 animals being inoculated compared with 10,814 in 1954. This disease will not be controlled effectively unless better systems of calf husbandry and rigid control of dairying are adopted.

Among tick-borne diseases, heartwater was responsible for the death of 961 cattle and 4,295 small stock. The effective use of vaccine is rendered impossible in many districts owing to its short life and the poor communications. Anaplasmosis was particularly prevalent in the Lobatsi District and along the Molopo. *Babesia bovis* infection was recorded for the first time in the Protectorate, one bull having died from this infection in Ngamiland.

Considerable propaganda on tick control, both by word of mouth and

demonstration, was conducted by departmental officers during the year. Increased interest was shown, particularly by European farmers.

A little progress can be reported in the control of streptothricosis on the Chobe, where an isolation and treatment centre has been established at Kachikau. Reported deaths from this disease amount to 748 cattle.

Reported losses from helminthiasis were few.

The Lobatsi abattoir completed a very successful first year's operation. The quality of the meat exported was good and favourable reports were received about its condition on arrival. Meat inspection and grading were carried out by Government officers. High quality by-products were easily and successfully marketed in neighbouring territories. There is already a marked improvement in the quality of the hides being exported, resulting from the continuous propaganda and demonstration made by hide improvement officers and professional members of the Veterinary Department.

Considerable interest has been shown in pig breeding in the Tati District.

FISHERIES

There is no fishing industry, though the people living on the Okovango and Chobe Rivers catch a certain amount of fish for local consumption. The fish is netted from canoes.

MINING

The Geological Survey, with headquarters at Lobatsi, consists of six professional officers and is responsible for the mineral development of the Territory. The function of the survey is primarily the geological mapping of the whole Protectorate, and particularly of areas likely to be mineralized. The preliminary exploration of promising mineral deposits is also undertaken and a special survey of the potential coalfields of the Protectorate is in progress. Geophysical methods of prospecting are used as well as diamond drilling. The officers of the survey also give advice on the siting of water boreholes.

In view of the major part which the production of cattle plays in the economy of the Protectorate additions to the staff of the survey have been proposed in order to enable more time to be devoted to the development of water supplies in the grazing areas.

Mineral exports during the year were as follows :

	<i>Amount</i>	<i>Value</i>
		£
Gold (oz.)	560	6,845
Silver (oz.)	189	62
Kyanite (short tons)	840	8,400
Asbestos Chrysotile (short tons)	1,560	165,634

The gold, silver and kyanite are produced in the Tati Concession, the mineral rights in which are owned by the Tati Company. The chrysotile asbestos, which is of excellent quality, is all produced from a mine at Moshaneng near Kanye in the Bangwaketse Reserve and is worked by a mining company on a royalty basis. The royalty accrues to the Bangwaketse Tribal Treasury. The Geological Survey advises on the development of the mines and was responsible for the discovery of the kyanite deposit. Regular inspections of the mining operations are carried out by an inspector of mines whose services are lent by the Government of Southern Rhodesia.

Geological field work takes place during the dry season from April to November or December and during the rest of the year the geologists are centred at the Lobatsi headquarters and engaged in working up the results of the field season. The premises in Lobatsi are small but contain the necessary equipment for the examination of specimens and the drafting of maps. There is a small reference library and essential mining and geological periodicals are taken : a collection of typical rocks and minerals of the Territory is on display to the public.

A chemical and mineralogical laboratory has been built up in Lobatsi and is in charge of the Chemist-Petrologist. The instruments and facilities provided are not elaborate but the necessary service of analysing and reporting on specimens collected by the public and the survey staff is provided. During the field season all the material sent in by field officers is given a preliminary examination by the Chemist-Petrologist and his report advises them on the value of their discoveries. Information from all water boreholes in the Territory as to the quantity and quality of the supply and the strata traversed is collected and indexed. An efficient plant has been constructed for the preparation of thin sections of rocks and minerals and is operated by an African technician. Polished sections of ore-minerals are also made and studied in the laboratory. A card index of all mineral occurrences of possible value in the Protectorate has been compiled.

Considerable interest was shown by mining companies during the year in the mineral potentialities of the Protectorate, and it is hoped that concessions for detailed exploration of some promising areas may be negotiated. A detailed report on the work of the Geological Survey at the Bushman Mine copper deposit 70 miles north-west of Francistown was cyclostyled and widely distributed. The mining of this deposit was abandoned in 1918, but the recent investigation suggests that a sufficiently large body of ore may exist to be payable in view of the prevailing level of the price of copper.

This year's field work was mainly devoted to the investigation of the coal resources adjacent to the line of the Rhodesia Railway in the Palapye and Artesia-Debeeti areas, and to the further exploration of the asbestos producing area near Kanye. A start was made on the regional geological mapping of these areas. In view of the lack of topographical maps print reductions to a scale of 2 miles to the inch were prepared by the Directorate of Colonial Surveys and from these the geologists have constructed maps which will give a reasonably accurate picture of the chief topographi-

cal features, roads and villages, and will be of value for development purposes as well as serving as a base for the geological mapping. By the end of the year about 1,650 square miles of mapping had been completed.

The Geological Survey owns two diamond drills and one rotary shot drill. These drills were employed in the investigation of the potential coal-field areas and 5,121 feet of core-drilling was completed during the year. A number of samples of coal were analysed and a preliminary report is in preparation.

A considerable development of water boring in the Territory is planned for the next four years and the Geological Survey will be responsible for the selection of drilling sites. In preparation for this undertaking a compilation of all the data available from previous drilling was made for the purpose of preparing maps showing the underground water resources of the Protectorate, and arrangements are ready for the adequate study and filing of all the hydrological and geological information which will be derived from future boreholes. Thirty-four drilling sites were selected by the Geological Survey during the year, of which 14 were drilled, 11 being successful, 2 abandoned for mechanical reasons, and one blank.

MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES

There are none.

CO-OPERATIVE SOCIETIES

There are no established societies.

CHAPTER 7

SOCIAL SERVICES

1. EDUCATION

The problems of administration and control of education in Bechuana-land present unusual difficulties resulting from a number of factors, the chief of which are :

- (1) the Territory's great size and extraordinary difficulties of communication and travel ;
- (2) the limited financial resources ; and
- (3) the very small part played by mission societies and other voluntary agencies in education.

EDUCATION DEPARTMENT

From April, the administrative and inspectorate establishment of the Education Department has comprised the Director, a Senior Education Officer, five Education Officers of whom one is an African, twelve Supervisors of Schools and a Welfare Officer. For the greater part of the year, as a result of failure to recruit staff, absence of staff on leave and resignations, the effective strength of the Department comprised the Director, two Education Officers (from September one), five Supervisors of Schools and the Welfare Officer.

With improved conditions of service more adequate staff may be recruited in 1956.

During February, Sir Christopher Cox, the Educational Adviser to the Secretary of State for the Colonies, toured the Territory, visited typical institutions and gave valuable advice on ways and means of educational development.

AFRICAN EDUCATION

The Education Department exercises professional control and direction of all education in the Protectorate and is directly responsible for the administration of the Teacher Training College and of schools in the Crown Lands. Tribal schools are tribally financed, with the exception of Moeng College, which, like the four mission schools, is Government-aided.

The schools of the Protectorate comprise 1 Teacher Training College conducted by Government; 2 Secondary Boarding Schools, of which one is the Bamangwato Tribal College at Moeng, the other the Roman Catholic St Joseph's College at Khale; 152 primary schools of which 125 are conducted by tribal School Committees, 24 by Government in the Crown Lands and 3 by Missions. The total numbers of pupils enrolled in 1955 were: at the Teacher Training College 53; in secondary schools 242; in primary schools 20,475. Of the total number of pupils 12,561 were girls and 8,231 boys.

The Dutch Reformed Church also conducts a small grant-aided Home-crafts Centre which offers a two-year course for girls and a one-year course for teachers already qualified who wish to specialize in the teaching of homecrafts subjects. Enrolment in 1955 was 22 of whom 7 were teachers.

The above statistics indicate generally increasing enrolments with a growing proportion of boys, the increase in numbers being particularly evident in secondary education.

From June, 1954, to the end of 1955, the Education Department has been engaged in compiling a comprehensive survey of short-falls of buildings, equipment and staff in primary education and in drafting schemes to meet these deficiencies over set periods. These schemes are being submitted through district officers to the various tribes and are finding ready acceptance.

The average school-going age is difficult to assess with accuracy, as many children do not know their ages and as the age of admission varies between 6 and at least 12 years. An average admission age of $8\frac{1}{2}$ years might be approximately correct. Average school life is not more than 4 years. The present tendency is to send more boys to school at an earlier age, instead of their being employed as cattle-herds until ten to 12 years of age before seeking schooling.

The existing temporary Teacher Training College, with accommodation for approximately 50 students, will be replaced in 1956 by a new training school at Lobatsi of double that capacity. From the present college and from extra-territorial sources an annual average number of 30 teachers is recruited to meet wastage and to replace unqualified teachers. The total number of teachers is over 600, of whom about 45 per cent are unqualified.

For practically all secondary education and for all vocational and higher education, the Bechuanaland Protectorate was, until 1953, dependent on the Union of South Africa. From 1954, the Union ceased to accept any new extra-territorial non-European secondary and vocational pupils; its Universities will accept a quota of students from Nyasaland, the Rhodesias and the High Commission Territories until 1958. The University College of Rhodesia and Nyasaland will open in 1957. Meanwhile the Protectorate has extended facilities for secondary education. A Colonial Development and Welfare grant of £30,000 has been made available for the completion of Moeng College, which will be conducted as a Territorial institution, Government meeting recurrent costs. St. Joseph's College has been extended and Government is contributing towards increased junior secondary day school facilities in the larger centres of population.

Students taking vocational training and higher teacher training are being placed in Basutoland institutions, although it is anticipated that similar facilities will become available in Bechuanaland within the next few years.

The number of Protectorate African students attending university is small, comprising two in the United Kingdom, two at Roma College, Basutoland, and three at Fort Hare in the Union.

EUROPEAN EDUCATION

For the small but rapidly increasing European community, 9 primary schools are conducted. At Ghanzi, the most remote European settlement in Southern Africa, a boarding school capable of accommodating 60 pupils was opened in 1953. This school is run on farm-school lines, offering practical rural training as well as the usual academic subjects.

The number of pupils attending Protectorate European schools increased from 290 in 1954 to 330 in 1955, with a slight majority of boys. About two-thirds of the pupils come from Afrikaans-speaking homes.

Older children, and those for whom no local primary education exists, attend schools in the Union of South Africa and in Southern Rhodesia. Exact figures are not available but the number must be almost 200, most of whom receive Government grants or bursaries.

COLOURED EDUCATION

The true Eurafrikan community in Bechuanaland is small and most of their children attend African Tribal schools. However, 5 small schools are classified as "Coloured" and are attended by 210 pupils of mixed race, taught by 11 teachers of whom 5 are qualified.

COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE FUND

Under Scheme D. 1045 and subsidiary schemes, a sum of £90,090 was made available for capital and recurrent expenditure on improvement in educational facilities in Bechuanaland for the period 1st April, 1948, to 31st March, 1956. Of this sum £3,500 was provided for capital expenditure on the Lobatsi European School and £14,500 for the Ghanzi European Boarding School; £39,000 is earmarked for an African Teacher Training College.

The balance of £34,000 has been in large part devoted to recurrent expenditure in encouraging agricultural and homecrafts education.

Under a separate scheme a grant-in-aid of £1,000 was made to St. Joseph's College. This grant, supplemented by a considerably larger Mission contributoin, was used to increase secondary class-room and boarding facilities necessitated by increased enrolment subsequent to the Union ban on Protectorate African pupils.

Towards the end of the year a further Colonial Development and Welfare grant of £30,000 was approved for the erection and equipment of a class-room block at the Moeng College which, under a revised constitution, will become a Territorial institution instead of a Tribal school.

FINANCE

Estimated expenditure on education in the Protectorate for the calendar year 1955 was as follows :

From Government sources.	£ 60,000
From Tribal sources	70,000
From Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes.	3,000
From Missions (approximately)	6,000
	139,000



Photo: G. C. TAYLOR

Bechuanaland Protectorate Police Trooper.

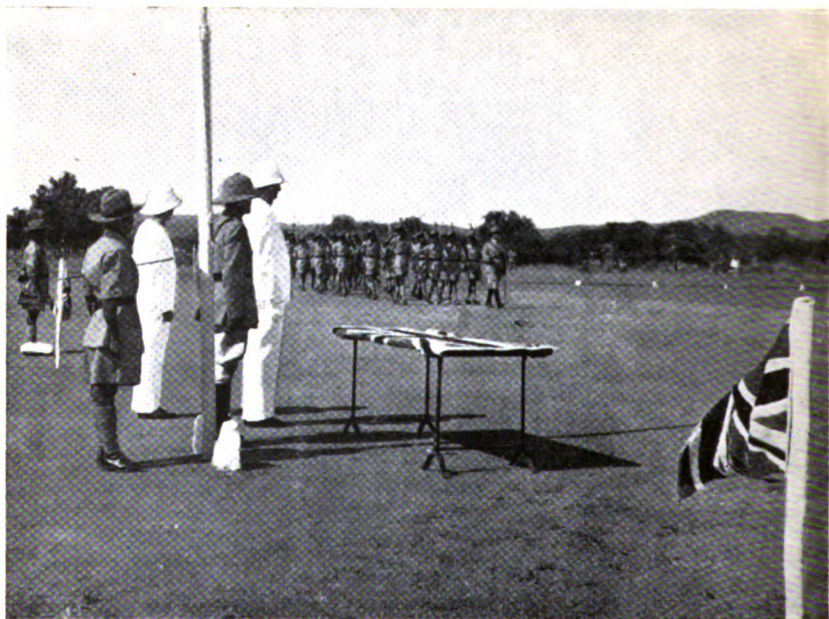


Photo : C. A. SPENCER

Passing-out parade, Bechuanaland Protectorate Police, Gaborones, 1955.

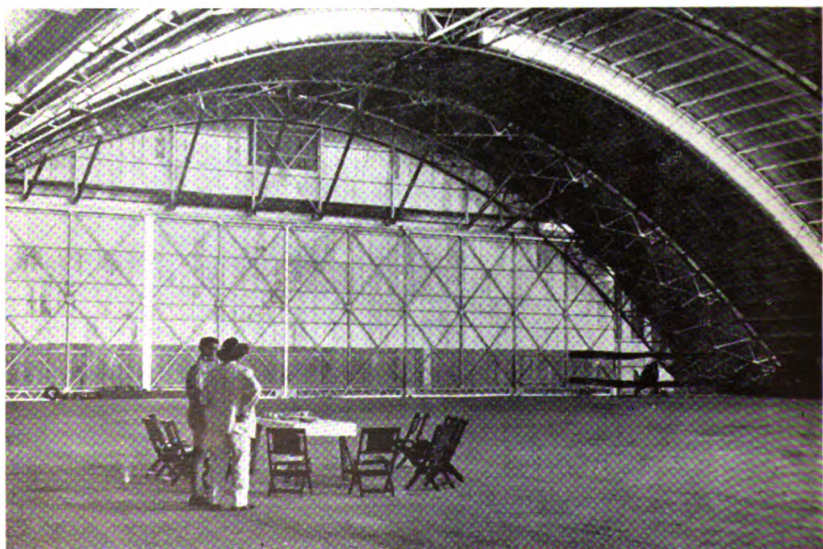


Photo : G. J. L. ATKINSON

Witwatersrand Native Labour Association's hangar at Francistown – the largest of its type in Southern Africa.

During 1955, 445,689 out-patients sought treatment at the various medical centres, compared with 371,874 during the previous year ; 10,146 patients were admitted to Government and missionary hospitals compared with 10,136 during 1954. The classification of diseases in accordance with the World Health Organization's nosological returns is at Appendix VII. This classification deals only with first attendances, of which there were 116,442, and includes both in-patients and out-patients. The proportion of males to females was 1 : 1.5. Among hospital cases there were 232 deaths, 2.21 per cent of the total number admitted.

Mining remains the principal occupation of the migratory indigenous male population. Of recruits medically examined by territorial medical officers during the year 657 or 1.12 per cent were rejected as unfit, mainly because of poor physique, under-age and chest conditions. These miners proceed mainly to the Rand and Orange Free State Gold Mines, to the Cape manganese mines and to a lesser extent to the coal mines.

40,510 recruits and repatriates passed through the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association depot at Francistown during 1955. Of these, 6,245 were from this Territory. The air transport of mine recruits and repatriates from and to the Northern Protectorate and Nyasaland and to and from Francistown, the Bechuanaland headquarters of the Witwatersrand Native Labour Organization, continues to prove a great success and has found much favour among the miners. During 1955, 39,161 miners were transported by air and 1,429,884 miles were flown without a single mishap. The setting up of air transport headquarters at Francistown has resulted in greatly increased activity at that centre and the European population has consequently increased considerably. Despite the repeal of the yellow fever regulations hitherto in force in the Bechuanaland Protectorate, the Union Government has not as yet withdrawn the requirements whereby recruits from the Northern Protectorate have to undergo yellow fever inoculations and surveillance for eight days before being flown to Francistown, whence they entrain for the Union mines. These restrictions are now under review.

All mine labourers who are repatriated because of illness or injury are notified to the Director of Medical Services who informs the medical officer or medical missionary of the district from which the recruit originally emanated. This enables supervision to be maintained for those requiring it and is of particular value in cases repatriated because of pulmonary tuberculosis.

HOSPITALS AND DISPENSARIES

The number of beds provided at Government hospitals increased from 342 to 352 as follows :

Lobatsi	111
Lobatsi Mental Home	21

Serowe	111
Francistown	58
Maun.	38
Mahalapye	13
Total	352

Late in the year the construction was begun of a 20-bed extension to the Francistown hospital for 20 pulmonary tuberculosics. It was expected that this unit would be completed early in 1956.

A start was also made with the erection of a new Health Centre at Gaberones with accommodation for six in-patients. This centre lies within a 50-mile radius of three other hospitals so that the need for in-patients' accommodation other than for emergencies or for patients in transit to other hospitals is not really an acute one.

The Central African Federation authorities in Southern Rhodesia continued, during 1955, to accept from this Territory mental patients who are dangerous or who are likely to benefit from modern institutional treatment. This, together with the provision of 10 additional beds at the Lobatsi Mental Home, has eased considerably the calls for accommodation of an urgent nature which in the past often could not be met. The policy of placing under the care of relations those harmless mental patients for whom no treatment is of avail continues to be pursued.

There are also the following numbers of beds provided at Mission hospitals and at Kazungula :

	<i>Beds</i>
<i>Kanye</i> : Seventh Day Adventist Mission	72
<i>Kanye</i> : United Free Church of Scotland	33
<i>Khale</i> : Roman Catholic Mission	5
<i>Maun</i> : London Missionary Society (Maternity Centre)	22
<i>Mochudi</i> : Dutch Reformed Church Mission	21
<i>Molepolole</i> : United Free Church of Scotland	60
<i>Ramoutsa</i> : Hermannsburg Lutheran Mission	13
<i>Kazungula</i> : W.N.L.A. Depot	6
Total	232

The total number of beds provided in the Territory at the end of 1955 was therefore 584 or, based on the last available census figures, 1.9 beds per 1,000 of the population.

There are Government dispensaries at :

Gabane	* Makobo's Kraal	*Sehitwa
Gaberones	*Moeng	Shakawe
Ghanzi	Nokaneng	Shoshong
*Good Hope	Palapye	Tsau
*Kalamari	*Palla Road	Tsane
Kalkfontein	Rakops	
Machaneng	Ramoutsa	
Mahalapye	Sefhare	

* No Government buildings available but accommodation improvised for visits which take place at least monthly, usually weekly.

A European district nurse was appointed during the year and posted to Ghanzi, 200 miles from the nearest hospital and medical officer at Maun. Quarters are in the course of erection. Temporary buildings are in use as a dispensary, but provision has been made for the construction of a more elaborate type of dispensary with in-patient accommodation for about 6 Africans. The district nurse provides maternal and child welfare services in addition to the ordinary therapeutic measures in a district remote from medical attention, and her appointment promises to do much to assist in the welfare of the 48 children at the Ghanzi European Boarding School.

Tribal initiative has provided funds for the erection of two dispensary units in the Bokalaka area. It is hoped to post to this area a full time African dispenser who will travel between the two units. A doctor from Francistown will also visit the district at regular intervals.

The following outlying centres are visited by missionary medical officers at regular intervals :

Ga-Thamaga, Moshupa, Kakia, Tsane, Ranaka, Digiwana, Mola-poabojang, Mmathethe, Magweraapitse, Mokgomanen, Pitsane-Molopo, Tshidilamolomo, Moshaneng.

Plans to augment considerably the number of beds provided for cases of pulmonary tuberculosis are now under discussion. It is also hoped to increase still further the number of district dispensary units provided in order to have available a network of such units throughout the 275,000 square miles of the Territory. The aim is to train sufficient dispensers and doubly-certificated nurses to enable at least one of each class of person to be posted to these units so that the male dispenser can cope with routine curative services and at the same time advise on the simple rules of public health and sanitation while the nurse will provide ante-natal, post-natal and child welfare services.

The professional staff consists of the director, a medical officer of health, 11 medical officers, 4 matrons or sisters-in-charge, 10 nursing sisters and one district nurse. There are also 3 health inspectors and 2 rodent inspectors. The recruiting position for doctors was, for the first time for many years, quite satisfactory save for periods when officers were absent on overseas leave. There remained, however, a shortage of nursing staff, the shortage being about one-third of the approved complement for most of the year.

Five missionary doctors served through most of the year. One mission hospital was without a doctor for 11½ months, but was able to recruit a doctor on a temporary basis late in December pending the appointment of a more permanent officer during the first quarter of 1956. One Government medical officer had to be seconded to a mission hospital on a full-time basis for a period whilst another Government doctor had to visit another mission hospital at least weekly while that hospital was without a doctor.

The training of African nurses remains a three-years' course in general medical and surgical nursing and a one-year course in midwifery, at the end of which candidates receive a local certificate and are recognized as staff nurses. The control of all nursing staff is borne by the High Commission Territories' Nursing Council on which all three High Commission Territories are represented.

The 1955 nursing examination results were as follows :

	<i>Number of Candidates</i>	<i>Passed</i>	<i>Failed</i>
Final General Medical and Surgical	16	13	3
Midwifery	6	6	—
Second Year	23	11	12
First Year	24	18	6

There were ten passes with merit, and one pass with honours.

Pupils dispensers and sanitary inspectors receive training under the direction of medical officers and health inspectors and are required to pass local examinations.

One Government medical officer obtained the diploma in tropical medicine and hygiene of London during the year under review. Another medical officer began the first part of the course for the diploma in public health in Edinburgh.

The World Health Organization awarded a Fellowship to one nursing sister to enable her to take the two years' sister tutor's course of the London College of Nursing. On her return, this nurse will be in charge of nurse training at Lobatsi.

The Director of Medical Services attended the fifth session of the regional committee for Africa of the World Health Organization in Madagascar. Considerable financial provision has been made in the W.H.O. and U.N.I.C.E.F. budgets for assistance in a number of projects, among which are :

- (a) Tsetse-fly control
- (b) Tuberculosis
- (c) Treponematoses
- (d) Diphtheria-Whooping Cough Prophylaxis
- (e) Development of Rural Health Services and Health Education
- (f) Environmental Sanitation Survey.

The total allocation during the period 1954-55 was \$210,053.

It is expected that W.H.O. will shortly provide an experienced Health Educator to set up a centre in the Territory from which propaganda specimens can be supplied to schools, hospitals and villages, and to train local health personnel in this very important aspect of preventive medicine.

W.H.O. has also agreed to second a consultant in environmental sanitation to study the Protectorate's problems and advise on the best methods of improving water supplies and refuse and nightsoil disposal.

In the 1954 Report, a brief reference was made to the W.H.O.-U.N.I.C.E.F. assisted project into the investigation and treatment of the

treponematoses. The objectives were to make a thorough study of the non-venereal treponematoses known locally as "dichuchwa" and to permit indirectly the collection of other health data ; to train local professional and auxiliary personnel in the epidemiology, diagnosis and modern therapy of the disease ; to encourage active case finding and treatment by existing medical centres to the extent that there would be developed, following a preliminary study of one year, a mass treatment campaign covering the whole Protectorate, the results of the campaign to be followed up and consolidated by existing local health and medical personnel.

The phase of investigations is now mainly over and a detailed report which incorporates considerable new and useful information has been submitted to W.H.O. A start was made during the year under review with the mass treatment programme, which has got off to a good start. By the end of 1955 124,079 persons, that is roughly 40 per cent of the total population, had been reviewed and had received treatment either curatively or as contacts.

Hotels throughout the Territory were inspected by the Medical Officer of Health and detailed reports were submitted to Liquor Licensing Courts.

EPIDEMIC AND GENERAL DISEASES

Malaria

This disease prevails in limited areas. N'Gamiland and Francistown, together with villages along the Botletle stream, the Makarikari swamp and the Chobe River sections all reported cases throughout the year ; whereas further south, as at Molepolole and Kanye, the outbreaks were more seasonal. Malaria is difficult to control because the agricultural section of the population lives mainly in large groups of villages for part of the year and moves to agricultural holdings for the planting and reaping seasons during other months. During the periods of agricultural activity the people are more liable to be exposed to malaria and are too scattered to make use of hospital or dispensary facilities existing in or near their home villages. The actual number of cases treated in hospital constitutes but a small proportion of the number of infected Africans. The actual number of cases reported during the year was 2,109, as follows (1954 figures in brackets) :

Francistown	325	(315)
Gaberones	22	(10)
Kanye	120	(16)
Lobatsi	15	(8)
Mahalapye	36	(17)
Maun	861	(807)
Mochudi	26	(23)
Molepolole	497	(120)
Serowe	207	(156)
	<u>2,109</u>	<u>(1,472)</u>

Tuberculosis

The survey of 1952 revealed 1·3 per cent active pulmonary cases in more than 21,000 persons who were X-rayed. Since then modern drugs and antibiotics have been used in ever-increasing amounts and all mission treatment centres are provided with such items by Government free of cost. In addition to the basic diagnostic X-ray apparatus and hospital accommodation already existing, there was begun during 1955 a new tuberculosis block of 20 beds at Francistown and plans were formulated to increase the bed provision for such cases at many other centres. The total number of cases of tuberculosis reported during the year was 2,079 compared with 2,278 during 1954.

Diphtheria and Whooping Cough

Diphtheria and whooping cough, together with pneumonia, measles and mumps are among the most frequent diseases in the Territory. Monthly returns do not indicate the actual extent of the outbreaks, which are often not reported. Diphtheria in particular has increased considerably during recent years and during the year a successful approach to W.H.O.-U.N.I.C.E.F. was made for assistance to conduct a mass immunisation campaign during 1956-57. Children up to the age of 6 years will be inoculated against both diphtheria and whooping cough while those in the age group 6-18 years will be immunised against diphtheria alone.

Plague

No human cases were encountered during 1955. The plague control staff functioned smoothly. In the north, rodent activity was minimal, large areas of ground being still under water from excessive floods. In the Southern Protectorate there was considerably more rodent activity, but no mortality was reported. Owing to reports of possible resistance to D.D.T., as already suspected in some other countries, especially on the part of the chicken flea, a confirmed plague-vector, the use of D.D.T. in talc was discontinued and a mixture containing D.D.T. and B.H.C. was substituted.

Smallpox

Not a single case was reported during the year despite the wave of epidemics which swept down from the Northern African territories. Intensive vaccination was carried out as a precaution.

Yellow Fever

Following consultations with W.H.O., the yellow fever regulations imposed by Government Notice No. 24 of 1954 were repealed. The restrictions imposed on mine recruits, which necessitate inoculation, the issue of unofficial yellow fever certificates and surveillance for 8 days when recruited from certain areas, remain in force until such time as the Union Government agrees to their withdrawal.

Sleeping Sickness

Only four human cases were reported during the year. One case was symptomless and was discovered in the course of routine blood examinations of tsetse fly control labour.

Surveys

During the year, Dr. F. Zumpt, Senior Entomologist of the South African Institute for Medical Research, Johannesburg, undertook an arthropod survey. Much useful information was gathered and a valuable collection of specimens, including several not previously described, was sent to the British Museum. A further survey was begun towards the end of the year with the primary object of mapping and identifying the ticks of domestic animals and native huts with particular emphasis on the distribution and infectivity of *Ornithodoros moubata*.

3. HOUSING AND TOWN PLANNING

The majority of the people live in the traditional type of hut with mud walls and a thatched roof. The type and soundness of construction vary considerably, but on the whole the huts are maintained in good condition. They are usually constructed by the owner and his family, sometimes with help from friends, on land allocated by the Chief or local headman. Even in the towns there is little or no overcrowding and there are no slums.

A few of the wealthier Africans have European-type houses built.

Europeans usually live in detached houses of brick or concrete.

Public Health Regulations, made under Cap. 49 of the Laws, are administered by the Medical Officer of Health and Health Inspectors in the major centres of population. It is not always possible for the smaller centres to be inspected regularly but the absence of overcrowding makes rigid enforcement of many of the regulations unnecessary.

Twenty-seven prefabricated houses were completed and other houses, both for Europeans and Africans, were under construction by the Government at the end of the year.

4. SOCIAL WELFARE

Many social problems are satisfactorily solved according to long established tribal custom. The sense of communal obligation is very real and the care of orphans, the aged and infirm is voluntarily undertaken by relatives according to a definite order of responsibility which is laid down in tribal law.

An annual Government provision of £600 is available, if required, for the relief of destitution, and Government or mission hospitals and clinics are established at strategic points to deal with serious illness or disease.

Throughout the entire sphere of social welfare official schemes are designed to augment, rather than to replace, those operating within the tribal framework.

YOUTH MOVEMENTS

Membership of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Boy Scouts Association has reached a new record of 1,940, divided among 38 groups. Two training camps were held during the year, resulting in the award of six Wood Badges. Four first-class badges, approximately 100 second-class badges, and a large number and variety of proficiency badges were earned by African Scouts.

The Girl Guide figures show a total membership of 2,614 in 49 groups. One African Guide was awarded the Silver Cross for her gallantry in rescuing three children from a blazing hut, the award being made by Lady Stratheden during her visit. Another distinguished visitor was Miss Marjorie Grant, Chief Commissioner for the Union, who spent two weeks among B.P. Guides. Eight African Guides and two Guiders represented the Bechuanaland Protectorate at the Livingstone Centenary Camp in Northern Rhodesia, where they met Guides from many parts of Africa.

The Boys Brigade Company at Maun numbers 55 members and their captain reports a full programme and satisfactory progress during the year.

MOBILE CINEMA

The mobile cinema gave more than 60 shows during the year to average audiences of about 1,500 people. Its visits are still as popular as ever and it continues to play a useful part in preparing the ground for various development campaigns. During the year, for example, a census film has been widely shown in preparation of the population census of 1956.

COMMUNITY CENTRES

Centres and clubs are established at Serowe, Mahalapye and Francistown, where members enjoy a wide variety of sports and games and cultural activities. At Maun the community has raised some £1,500 towards the cost of a community hall, which it is hoped will soon be erected.

CHAPTER 8

LEGISLATION

The following were the principal enactments during the year :

- (1) Proclamation No. 80 (of 1954), Acquisition of Property : Made provision for the acquisition of property for public and other purposes and for settling the amount of any compensation to be paid or any matter in dispute.
- (2) Proclamation No. 1, Commissioners of Oaths : Made provision for the appointment of Commissioners of Oaths.
- (3) Proclamation No. 10, Weights and Measures : Amended the law relating to the standards of weights and measures in use.
- (4) Proclamation No. 24, Patents and Designs Protection (Amendment) : Provided for the protection of inventions the subject of patents subsisting in the United Kingdom and in the Union of South Africa, and of designs the subject of design registrations subsisting in those two countries.
- (5) High Commissioner's Notice No. 85, Air Navigation (Registration and Licensing) Regulations : Provided for the registration of aircraft and the licensing of operating crews and aerodromes.
- (6) High Commissioner's Notice No. 86, Air Navigation (Investigation of Accidents) Regulations.
- (7) High Commissioner's Notice No. 87, Air Transport (Licensing of Air Services) Regulations.
- (8) High Commissioner's Notice No. 102, Control of Flying Regulations: Provided air corridors for use in non-international flights and set up a system of air traffic control.
- (9) High Commissioner's Notice No. 122, Hides and Skins Regulations : Provided stringent and up-to-date standards in relation to all phases of the hide and skin industry.
- (10) Proclamation No. 47, Appeals to Privy Council Order in Council, 1954, Commencement : Appointed the 15th April, 1955, as the date of commencement of the Order in Council.
- (11) High Commissioner's Notice No. 141, Court of Appeal Rules : published Rules of the Court of Appeal made by the President thereof.
- (12) High Commissioner's Notice No. 156, Export Control Regulations.
- (13) Proclamation No. 66, Townships : Provided for the creation and regulation of townships.
- (14) Proclamation No. 79, Income Tax (Rates) : Fixed the rate of normal and super income tax to be levied for the year of assessment ended on the 30th June, 1955.
- (15) Proclamation No. 94, Legal Practitioners : Consolidated and amended the law relating to the admission and enrolment of legal practitioners to practise in the Territory.

CHAPTER 9

JUSTICE, POLICE AND PRISONS

1. JUSTICE

In criminal matters the Court of Appeal, High Court and Subordinate Courts are governed by the Criminal Procedure and Evidence Proclamation. This Proclamation follows the criminal law in force in the Union of South Africa.

In civil matters, except where native law and custom is involved, the Roman Dutch Common law in force in the Union of South Africa is followed. This is so because in the Bechuanaland Protectorate the Cape of Good Hope laws promulgated up to the 10th June, 1891, remain in force, except where repealed or altered by Proclamation by the High Commissioner.

The Bechuanaland Protectorate Courts of Law consist of :

COURT OF APPEAL

A Court of Appeal for all three Territories was established on the 15th April, 1955, under the Basutoland, Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland Court of Appeal Order in Council, 1954. This Court is composed of the Chief Justice, who is President, and other Judges of Appeal.

Thus, for the first time, litigants can appeal from High Court decisions to a local Court of Appeal, instead of having to appeal direct to the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. The further right of appeal to the Judicial Committee is retained.

Circumstances in which an appeal lies to the Court of Appeal, and Court rules governing appeals, are the subject of local legislation.

HIGH COURT

The High Court is a Superior Court of Record and, in addition to any other jurisdiction conferred by local law, possesses and exercises all the jurisdiction, power, and authorities vested in the Supreme Court of South Africa.

Although the decision in every case, civil and criminal, is vested exclusively in the presiding Judge, he sits with four Assessors (two Administrative Officers and two Africans) who act in an advisory capacity.

In practice all four Assessors sit in every criminal trial and in every criminal appeal.

In civil cases the practice is for the Judge to sit alone where only law, other than native law and custom, and not fact only, is involved. Where native law and custom is involved the Judge sits with all four Assessors or with two African Assessors only, depending on the character of each particular case.

SUBORDINATE COURTS OF THE FIRST,
SECOND AND THIRD CLASS

In the twelve districts of the Territory there are Subordinate Courts of the First, Second and Third Class presided over by Administrative Officers.

(a) *Criminal*

(i) *First Class*: Can impose sentences up to a maximum of two years with or without hard labour, or a fine up to one hundred pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum imprisonment of two years is not exceeded. In certain cases and subject to certain safeguards a whipping not exceeding fifteen strokes with a cane may be imposed.

(ii) *Second Class*: The maximum sentence is imprisonment with or without hard labour up to one year, or a fine not exceeding fifty pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum sentence of one year is not exceeded. A whipping not exceeding eight strokes with a cane may be imposed in certain cases and subject to certain safeguards.

(iii) *Third Class*: The maximum sentence is imprisonment with or without hard labour up to six months, or fine not exceeding twenty-five pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum sentence of six months is not exceeded. A Third Class Court cannot impose a sentence of whipping.

Subordinate Courts have no power to try a person charged with treason, murder, rape, sedition or an offence relating to coinage or currency, except that the Attorney-General may remit a rape case for trial by a Subordinate Court.

(b) *Increased criminal jurisdiction*

The Attorney-General may remit a case (not being treason, murder, sedition or an offence relating to coinage or currency) to a Subordinate Court for trial with increased jurisdiction, after the holding of a preparatory examination. When so remitted with increased jurisdiction the powers of punishment are :

(i) *First Class*: Imprisonment up to four years ; fine not exceeding two hundred pounds.

(ii) *Second Class*: Imprisonment up to two years ; fine not exceeding one hundred pounds.

Note: There is no remittal to a Third Class Court and therefore no increased jurisdiction for such a Court.

(c) *Criminal Review*

In criminal cases all sentences by Subordinate Courts of the First Class are subject to review by the High Court when the punishment imposed exceeds six months' imprisonment or a fine exceeding fifty pounds.

As regards the Second and Third Class Subordinate Courts they are also subject to review by the High Court when the punishment imposed exceeds three months' imprisonment or a fine exceeding twenty-five pounds.

(d) *Civil*

In civil cases Subordinate Courts of the First Class have jurisdiction in all actions where both parties are Africans, subject to the right of such Courts to transfer cases to the Native Courts for hearing, and in all other actions where the claim or value of the matter in dispute does not exceed five hundred pounds, and of the Second Class where the matter in dispute does not exceed two hundred and fifty pounds. Third Class Subordinate Courts can try civil action between Europeans when the claim is not more than ten pounds.

NATIVE COURTS

These are governed by Cap. 5 of the Laws.

JUDICIAL AND LEGAL DEPARTMENTS

JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT

This department is headed by the Chief Justice, who is also Chief Justice of Basutoland and Swaziland. He is resident in Basutoland because there is more work there than in each of the other two Territories.

During the year a Puisne Judge was appointed for all three Territories. Like the Chief Justice, he is stationed in Basutoland.

The Chief Justice, now that a Puisne Judge has been appointed, confines his activities to the Court of Appeal, Criminal Review cases, the supervision of the work of Subordinate Courts, etc., and the administrative side of the Judicial Department.

Under the Chief Justice there are the Registrar, High Court, and the various Presiding Officers of the Subordinate Courts—that is the Administrative Officers in their judicial capacity.

The following statistics for 1955 are of interest :

(a) *High Court*

In criminal trials five persons were indicted of whom all were eighteen years or over. There were six charges against those persons on which there were three convictions and three acquittals ; one of those convictions was for murder.

Criminal Review cases from Subordinate Courts totalled one hundred and seventy. There were nineteen criminal appeals of which fourteen were dismissed, three allowed and two were pending at the end of the year.

There were twenty civil cases of which sixteen were disposed of and four were pending at the end of the year.

There was only one civil appeal from Subordinate Courts.

(b) *Subordinate Courts*

In criminal cases there were convictions on 5,401 charges and acquittals on 305 charges. Apart from a number of petty offences not classified under any particular heading, most of the charges were in respect of theft, common assault, traffic, liquor and drug offences.

Including those pending at the end of 1954, and those registered in 1955, there were 727 civil cases of which 509 were heard. The reason the remainder were not heard is because the parties did not set them down for hearing.

LEGAL DEPARTMENT

The Legal Department is responsible for the drafting of the bulk of legislation emanating from the Territory, and the scrutiny and finalization of legislation drafted departmentally, together with certain other legal duties including the drafting of various instruments required by Government, the control of Crown leases and the advising of Government on matters of law generally.

The duties of the Legal Department also comprise those of the office of Registrar and Master of the High Court, and of the Registries of Deeds ; Patents, Trade Marks and Designs ; Births, Marriages and Deaths ; and Brands.

During the year 29 new estates were filed in the Master's office, and the following new registrations were effected :

(a) *Deeds*

(i) 127 transfers of immovable property, the purchase prices or valuations thereof totalling £233,246.

(ii) 50 bonds, the total amount secured being £158,325.

(b) *Trade Marks, Patents and Designs*

7 Patents ;

64 Union Trade Marks ;

17 United Kingdom Trade Marks.

(c) *Births, Marriages and Deaths*

75 Births (71 European, 3 Asiatic, 1 Coloured), 8 were late registrations ;

370 Marriages (all races, marriages in Christian form) ;

12 Deaths (11 European, 1 Coloured) 2 were late registrations.

(d) *Brands*

498.

2. POLICE

The authorized establishment of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Police Force was 52 European officers and subordinate officers, and 332 African policemen. There was a shortage of 7 sub-inspectors at the end of the year. Of the 12 sub-inspectors recruited during 1955, seven came from the United Kingdom and five from the Union of South Africa.

Patrols totalling 935,343 miles were carried out by horse, motor vehicle, foot, camel, canoe, cycle, air, donkey, mule and train.

Crime statistics for 1955 reveal that the total number of cases handled by the police was 6,933. This represents an increase of 924 over the previous year. Of the above crimes, contravention of the liquor law was the most prevalent, and 522 cases were investigated by the police : 209 cases of stock theft were reported to the police. These involved 822 head of stock of which 478 were recovered. Of the stock theft cases investigated in 1955, 145 were sent for trial, and convictions were obtained in 133 cases, resulting in 170 African males and 3 African females being convicted. Thirty-three cases were found to be false on enquiry, 14 were closed undetected, 10 were withdrawn before issue of process and 61 cases were still under investigation at the end of the year.

Six African police constables were sent to the Northern Rhodesia Police for training as wireless operators during 1955.

During the year, 44 African recruits underwent training, nine completed refresher courses and 24 attended promotion courses at the Police Depot at Gaberones.

The police are responsible for immigration control. During the year 42 new passports were issued, 68 renewed and 22 visas were issued. In addition, 94 certificates of identity and 432 certificates of residence were issued. Twelve Europeans and four Coloureds were declared prohibited immigrants : 239 clandestine African immigrants were returned to Southern Rhodesia, 19 to Northern Rhodesia and 69 to the Union of South Africa.

3. PRISONS

There are two gaols in the Territory at Gaberones and Francistown and there are lock-ups at Lobatsi, Mochudi, Tsabong, Maun, Kasane, Serowe, Palapye, Mahalapye, Machaneng, Kanye, Molepolole and Ghanzi. The prisons and lock-ups are in charge of the District Commissioner in each district ; at Francistown and Gaberones gaols there is a European gaoler but all the lock-ups are staffed with African warders. There is a permanent wardress at Francistown and another at Gaberones and if a female prisoner is admitted to one of the lock-ups, temporary wardresses are engaged. At Maun, Serowe and Gaberones there are gaol cooks ; at the other prisons and lock-ups the cooking is satisfactorily done

by prisoners. The average daily prison population for all gaols was 371·3.

Offences against prison discipline, not including escapes, amounted to 53; 28 prisoners escaped, all from working parties outside the prisons; 20 of them were recaptured.

The health of the prisoners during the year was good, the daily average on the sick list being only 11·4. There are no facilities for the education of prisoners though elementary peasant agriculture is taught on the gaol plot at Gaberones gaol.

Remission of sentences is governed by paragraphs 153–158 of the Prison Regulations (Cap. 54 of the Laws), which provide that every prisoner serving a sentence for a period exceeding one month shall, according to his conduct and industry, be allowed an ordinary remission not exceeding one-third of his sentence. Remission can be forfeited for prison offences or generally bad behaviour.

Power is also vested in the High Commissioner to allow special remissions.

There are no approved schools or similar institutions in the Territory nor are there any arrangements for the aftercare of discharged prisoners, but District Commissioners are very ready to render them any assistance possible.

CHAPTER 10

PUBLIC UTILITIES AND PUBLIC WORKS

At Francistown there is an electricity supply owned and operated by the Tati Company. The Colonial Development Corporation at Lobatsi has installed a power station and supplies its own works and buildings, the hotel and a number of private persons. Each Government hospital in the Territory generates its own electricity (all have X-ray apparatus) and a few residents and hotels have installed private electric plants. The Government workshop at Gaberones also has its own plant. At each district headquarters and at Palapye, Mahalapye and Ramathlabama the Government provides a water supply for its own use and for its employees but it is not generally available for the public.

Apart from these services, and from the railway, telegraph and telephone system, there are no public utilities.

The work of the Public Works Department covers and includes all activities connected with:

- (a) Construction and maintenance of roads and bridges;
- (b) Construction and maintenance of buildings;
- (c) Provision and maintenance of water supplies;
- (d) Maintenance of waterways.

- (e) Maintenance of mechanical transport and running of garages and central workshops ;
- (f) Construction and maintenance of aerodromes and emergency landing grounds ;
- (g) Geodetic and topographical surveys ;
- (h) Town planning and development.

WATER SUPPLIES

Surface water development was carried out under Colonial Development and Welfare Scheme D. 990 and D. 990 A which provided for the expenditure of £19,844 for the year.

During the year three new stock dams were built and two stock dams, damaged by floods, were completely rebuilt. All the 17 dams in the Bamangwato Reserve were subject to flood damage of a minor nature. These were repaired. One tribal dam was desilted and work is in progress on one other dam.

The number of stock dams now completed is as follows :

Bakgatla Reserve	7
Bangwaketse Reserve	18
Bakwena Reserve	21
Batlokwa Reserve	1
Bamalete Reserve	1
Bamangwato Reserve	17
Total	65

Following the subsiding of flood waters, the work on the 60-million gallon dam at Palapye proceeded favourably. The wall of this dam is of double arch buttress-arch concrete construction and is now complete. The dam is full and it yet remains to fence off the gathering grounds and instal special paved cattle drinking areas. This is an anti-erosion measure. This dam was built to supply the Railways with water and is on a repayment basis of 10 per cent of cost over 15 years.

Other water supplies are obtained from boreholes financed from Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes D. 678 and D. 678 A, an expenditure of £48,413 being allowed.

During the year 70 holes were drilled with a total footage of 13,104 feet. There were 43 successful boreholes and 27 were blank ; 4 boreholes were awaiting completion, one was cleaned out and three were deepened and re-tested. Footage drilled on productive bores was 7,948, and on blank bores 4,396. On uncompleted, cleaned and deepened bores, the footage was 760. The total yield obtained was 53,626 gallons per hour.

Of seven drilling rigs, two were not in operation for eight months, one for two months and the remaining four for one month each during the year.

The new heavy capacity 60 RL drill was put into operation in November and has been on test before proceeding to the Ghanzi cattle route.



Photo : A. G. TILBURY

Cattle drinking, Shashi River, Matangwan.



Photo : G. J. L. ATKINSON

The Tati River, dry most of the year, provides water at no great depth.



Photo : G. J. L. ATKINSON

Typical African hut near Francistown.

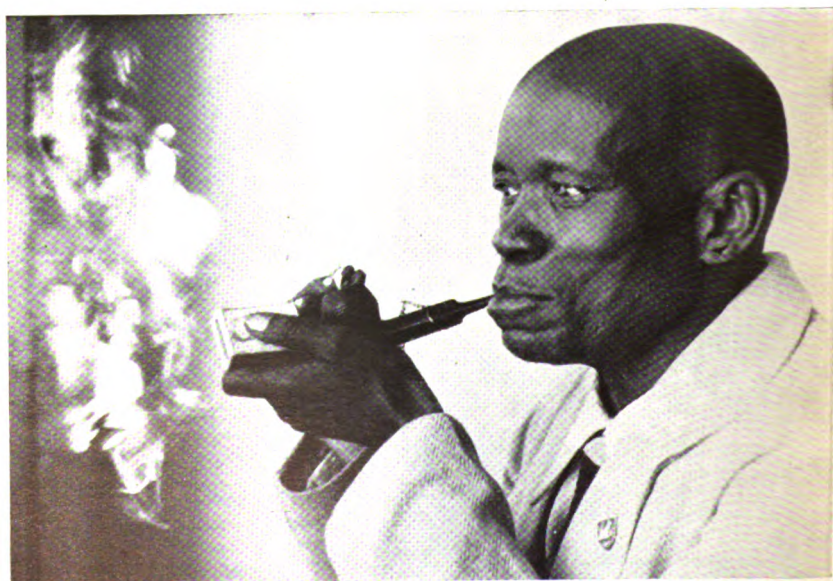


Photo : G. J. L. ATKINSON

African tax collector, Tati District.

TRANSPORT

The Government Workshops at Gaberones carried out 729 Government jobs, and 143 repairs were effected for the public unable to obtain service elsewhere.

Besides repairing and maintaining Government vehicles and plant, the workshops have installed pumping plants and manufactured sundry items.

A new engine test bed and airbrake was installed for running in and testing re-conditioned engines, both diesel and petrol.

SURVEYS

Twenty-four building lots were pegged and surveyed.

A detailed plan of Bo-Schwela Kloof was prepared.

Preparatory to the survey of the Lobatsi area on a 1 in 480 scale for town planning purposes, a triangulation net has been laid down.

Surveys have been carried out for the following :

Proposed Indian Settlement in Lobatsi ;

Proposed extension to St. Theresa's Mission at Lobatsi ;

Teacher Training Centre at Lobatsi ;

Proposed Colonial Development Corporation housing site at Lobatsi ;

Extensive survey of Ghanzi for town planning purposes.

BUILDINGS

Funds to a total value of £124,000 were approved for new buildings. During the year under review, the following were completed :

Mafeking

Six prefabricated houses ;

Additional offices – Public Works Department ;

Additional offices – Veterinary Department ;

Additional offices – Medical Department ;

Additional office – Secretariat.

Lobatsi

Second section of new Veterinary offices ;

Three prefabricated houses ;

African quarters.

Gaberones

European school additions ;

Six prefabricated houses ;

Security Camp – Police Department.

Molepolole

One prefabricated house.

Mochudi

Additions to Police Office.

Mahalapye

Three prefabricated houses.

Serowe

One prefabricated house.

Makoba

One prefabricated house.

Palapye

Veterinary Department offices.

Francistown

Four prefabricated houses ;

New offices – Public Works Department ;

New T.B. wing to hospital.

Maun

Two prefabricated houses.

Mamono

Police camp

The following work was started and is still under construction :

Lobatsi

High Court.

Under Colonial Development and Welfare Grants :

Maun

Two prefabricated houses – Tsetse Fly Control.

Lobatsi

Teacher Training Centre – Education Department.

Ramathlabama

The Farm School – Veterinary Department.

CHAPTER 11

COMMUNICATIONS

RAILWAYS

The main railway line from Cape Town to the Rhodesias passes through the Protectorate entering at Ramathlabama 886 miles from Cape Town and leaving at Ramaquabane 394 miles further north. The single track line runs roughly parallel to the eastern boundary of the Protectorate at an average distance from it of about 50 miles. The railway within the Protectorate formed part of the undertakings owned and operated by the

Rhodesia Railways Limited which have been transferred to a statutory body established under the laws of Southern Rhodesia and operating under the laws of the three territories of Southern Rhodesia, Northern Rhodesia and the Bechuanaland Protectorate.

ROADS, BRIDGES AND VEHICLES

The roads in the Protectorate are of earth or sand formed to shape and camber, the only exceptions being where they pass through townships and have been gravelled (and in two cases tarred) for short lengths. The aggregate length of gravelling is a fraction of one per cent of the total road mileage and the roads must therefore be classified as earth roads only.

The sum of £27,500 was voted for road maintenance. This is an increase on the amount provided in the previous year.

The Public Works Department maintained approximately 450 miles of main road during the year. In addition to this, approximately 140 miles of new roads have been constructed in the Tuli Block, and work is proceeding on a further 60 miles from Baines Drift Police Post to the Macloutsie river. Twelve miles of road on the Francistown - Border section was completed.

District and by-roads are given as much attention as possible by District Commissioners who receive small allocations of funds to carry out essential maintenance and road repairs.

Under Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Scheme D.1036, two low level bridges were completed across the Lotsani River. On the Lobatsi-Kanye road, three bridges had to be widened and strengthened to allow for the passage of heavy traffic from the Moshaneng asbestos mine. Fifteen pipe culverts have been provided where necessary. On the Zeerust-Lobatsi road, one stone packed pipe bridge was completed.

Sections for concrete type grid gates are being produced in Mafeking, and it is hoped to replace the obsolete narrow rail types now in existence.

Road signs have been purchased and are being erected where necessary.

The numbers of registered motor vehicles in use at the end of the year were 714 cars, 739 commercial vehicles, 64 tractors, 29 trailers and 6 motor cycles.

RIVER AND LAKE TRANSPORT

There is no public service but canoe transport is used to some extent on the Okovango and Chobe Rivers.

AIR

There are aerodromes at Gaberones, Mahalapye, Francistown, Maun, Serowe, Tsabong, Ghanzi, Lobatsi, Molepolole, Palapye and Rakops, and emergency landing strips at Makalamabedi, Mosetse, Odeakwe, Artesia and Mabeleapudi.

Normal maintenance of all airfields was continued. The windsock on Serowe aerodrome was moved to a new position to prevent accidents. Palapye airstrip was re-positioned to give longer length and a second strip is being prepared at 90° to the first.

POSTS AND TELEGRAPHS AND WIRELESS COMMUNICATIONS

The main centres of population adjacent to the railway line are connected to the South African and Southern Rhodesian telegraph system. Lines north of Lobatsi are operated by the Southern Rhodesia Government and those south of that town by the Union Government.

There is an extensive wireless service in the Protectorate. The first installations were erected in 1935 and the system was originally intended only for official administrative communication with stations remote from the telegraph line. Public demand, however, soon made it necessary to accept telegrams from the public for transmission over the system, which is now linked with the telegraph services of the Union and Southern Rhodesia through the Government wireless network controlled from Mafeking. Some years later a Police wireless system was established and though this is primarily for the transmission of Police and other official messages, telegrams from the public are accepted at those stations at which there is no other form of telegraphic communication.

Altogether there are 47 stations, 29 of which are owned by Government and are controlled by the Commissioner of Police. There are 16 commercial stations, 10 of which are owned by the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association and one by the Moshaneng Asbestos Mine. At Maun, the South African Government controls a large aeradio station with several transmitters, and there is a station at the Bamangwato College at Moeng. In addition there are a number of amateur radio stations in the Protectorate.

There are 9 post offices in the Territory at Francistown, Palapye, Serowe, Mahalapye, Gaberones, Lobatsi, Kanye, Maun and Mochudi at which money order and savings bank business is transacted. In addition there are 21 postal agencies at the smaller centres.

During the year 53,363 telegrams were sent and 41,477 were received through the post offices and agencies in the Territory. Money orders issued totalled 16,783 worth £52,534. 11s. 7d. Money orders paid numbered 968 and were worth £11,459. 10s. 5d. There were 4,173 savings bank deposits totalling £53,223. 17s. 7d. and 3,794 withdrawals totalling £54,145. 13s. 0d. Union and British Postal Orders issued totalled 30,169, worth £14,845. 8s. 0d. The number of these postal orders paid was 7,006, and they were worth £5,463. 9s. 7d.

CHAPTER 12

PRESS, BROADCASTING, FILMS AND
GOVERNMENT INFORMATION SERVICES

No newspapers are published in the Protectorate. South African and Southern Rhodesian newspapers circulate.

The Government wireless station in Mafeking, in addition to providing the link between the Protectorate wireless system and the South African and Southern Rhodesian telegraph systems, broadcasts light musical programmes twice a day by arrangement with the South African Broadcasting Corporation.

There are no cinemas in the Protectorate though in the larger centres films are shown in a local hall or hotel. There is a Government-owned mobile cinema van of which the operations are recorded in Chapter 7 (4).

There is no information service but the Government Secretary and Heads of Departments issue monthly news letters to officials, suitable portions of which are conveyed to the public.

CHAPTER 13

LOCAL FORCES

There are none.

PART III

CHAPTER 1

GEOGRAPHY AND CLIMATE

The Territory of the Bechuanaland Protectorate is bounded on the south and east by the western boundary of the Union of South Africa, which follows the Notwani, Marico and Crocodile or Limpopo rivers, on the north-east by Southern Rhodesia and on the north and on the west by the Caprivi Zipfel and by the Territory of South West Africa, with the Kalahari desert extending over most of the western areas west and south of N'gamiland as far as latitude 27 degrees. This is not a desert in the commonly accepted sense of the word, but consists of vast expanses of undulating sand-belts with out-crops of lime-stone here and there. Large areas are wooded like park lands studded with camelthorn and other indigenous trees. In the limestone belts water is sometimes found at depths from 30 to 100 feet so that it is possible that under the deep over-burden of sand there may exist untapped reservoirs of water. The northern and south-western corners of the Kalahari have the least vegetation and most sand dunes but elsewhere the grasses are excellent, and this is the natural habitat of the true aboriginal bushmen who lead a primitive nomadic existence, living chiefly on the flesh of game shot with poisoned arrows, supplementing this with wild fruits and roots.

The Protectorate has not been surveyed as a whole but its area is estimated at 275,000 square miles. The mean altitude is about 3,300 feet.

There is beautiful scenery in the north-western part of the Protectorate, in the Okovango delta into which the great Okovango River, flowing inland from the north-west, benevolently pours its flood waters, which, in seasons of heavy rainfall, flow as far south-east as the Makarikari salt lake and south and south-west into Lake Ngami. The Chobe area is also notable for its scenic beauty especially along the Chobe river, which flows into the Zambesi 60 miles west of the Victoria Falls.

The eastern portion of the country also has some fine hill scenery. The remainder, though it appears at first sight to be very flat, is in reality undulating and is rich in grasses, shrubs and trees. The south-eastern half is similar to the bushveld of the northern Transvaal. There are occasional outcrops of limestone and the surface is generally sandy and, except where boreholes and dams have been established, waterless. Old and well defined river courses which now-a-days flow only during the annual rains, indicate, however, that at one time the country was well watered,

as is still the case north and north-east of Lake Ngami. In certain areas elsewhere good underground waters exist and are being developed as funds permit.

The Protectorate as a whole is a natural game reserve for most species of the fauna and Government policy is aimed at their preservation.

Only four towns have a population of over 10,000 according to the 1946 census; they are Kanye 23,000; Serowe 16,000; Molepolole 15,000; and Mochudi 12,000.

CLIMATE

The climate of the country, on the whole, is sub-tropical, but varies with latitude and altitude.

Latitude 22 degrees South passes through the centre of the country, and the northern areas of the Protectorate accordingly lie within the tropics.

The average rainfall in the Territory is 18 inches, but this varies from nearly 27 inches in the north to 9 inches or less in the western Kalahari.

By far the greatest area of the more populated portion of the Protectorate lies within an extensive saucerlike depression having an altitude of 3,000 feet bounded by higher ground at the extreme south (Hildavale) and the north-east (Southern Rhodesia) where the altitudes are over 4,000 feet. There are also elevations at Kanye, Serowe and Ghanzi of 4,000 to 5,000 feet.

The climate of the higher parts of the Territory is sub-tropical, varying to temperate. During the winter the days are pleasantly warm and the nights cold, with occasional frosts. The summer is hot but relief is sometimes obtained by a prevailing north-east breeze which generally springs up in the early part of the night. In the more low-lying parts during the winter, lasting from the beginning of May to the middle of August, it is pleasantly warm by day and comfortably cool at night, but in summer, which commences properly in October, the days are very hot and the nights uncomfortably warm. In August, as a rule, the annual seasonal winds from the west coast commence and, dessicated by the sand of the Kalahari, they resemble a "Simoon" and often continue until the equinox in September, sweeping across the whole country and carrying volumes of sand and dust.

The atmosphere throughout the year is very dry and this helps to mitigate the high temperatures, though to Europeans this dryness and strong sunlight week after week, without clouds to soften it, has the effect of producing nervous irritability, particularly in Europeans whose occupation is sedentary and does not permit of enough outdoor life.

If the necessary precautions are taken to guard against malaria, which is universal in the low-lying areas of the Territory, and provided sufficient outdoor exercise is taken, the climate is well suited to Europeans and their families.

CHAPTER 2

HISTORY

The picture presented by Southern Africa in the first quarter of the 19th century, north of the narrow strip which then comprised the extent of the European settlement, was a dismal one of savage tribal wars, pillage and bloodshed. The primary cause of these conditions was the expansion of the Zulus who, under Chaka, a military genius who had created out of a comparatively insignificant people a disciplined and war-like nation, waged incessant and merciless war on those people unfortunate enough to be within their reach. These activities, like a stone thrown into a pond, created waves far beyond the impact of Zulu warriors. In order to escape the Zulus, tribes on their borders fled to all points of the compass, despoiling on their way the tribes in their path and thereby setting up a general movement of destructive migration.

The most ferocious of these predatory bands were the followers of an amazon called Mma-Ntatisi and her son Sekonyela. These marauders – part refugees and part banditti – came from tribes living in the neighbourhood of what is now Basutoland. They banded themselves together into some sort of cohesive army and advanced northwards and westwards, harrying and destroying everything that stood in their way.

In a different category were the Matebele. These were originally a group of Chaka's people under Mzilikazi, one of Chaka's principal captains. On one of his raids Mzilikazi embezzled the booty and deemed it prudent not to return home. He moved north-westwards and, after a destructive march, established himself in the neighbourhood of what is now Zeerust, where he conducted bloody and profitable raids in systematic fashion on the tribes within his reach. The forays of Chaka's disciplined and merciless impis, the wholesale pillage of the hordes of Mma-Ntatisi, the murderous exodus of the Matebele as well as endless migrations by other less important tribes, themselves torn by internecine quarrels, had reduced the country to a pitiable state of misery and confusion. Yet it was at this time, in 1820, that Robert Moffat of London Missionary Society, undaunted by the dangers of such an undertaking, established his mission at Kuruman in the country later to become British Bechuanaland, and now incorporated in the Cape Province of the Union of South Africa.

Among the people most conveniently situated to receive Mzilikazi's onslaughts were those known as Bechuana, of Sotho stock – and hence related to the people of what is now Basutoland, and to several other tribes – who lived in the western Transvaal and westwards towards the Kalahari. Like other Basuto people their early history is shrouded in legend.

As regards the principal tribes of the group the generally accepted tradition is that they are descended from a people ruled by a chief named Masilo who may have lived about the middle of the 17th century. Masilo

had two sons, Mohurutshe and Malope. The former founded the line of the chiefs of the Bahurutshe, while the latter had three sons, Kwena, Ngwato and Ngwaketse. Ngwato and Ngwaketse at different times broke away from Kwena's tribe and went with their followers to live at a distance from each other. The Bahurutshe were set upon first by Mma-Ntatisi's horde and then by the Matebele. The home of this tribe is in the western Transvaal but scattered elements have attached themselves to the present ruling tribes of the Protectorate. A small group maintains some sort of independent existence near Francistown. The Bangwaketse, after several migrations, finally settled in their present country around Kanye while the Bamangwato founded a colony in the vicinity of Shoshong in the country occupied by the tribe to-day. The descendants of the Kwena section now live around Molepolole. Among the Bamangwato a further split occurred : Tawana, one of Chief Mathiba's sons, seceded at the end of the eighteenth century, and formed a new settlement in N'gamiland. The Batawana are still the ruling community in that area. Other important tribes of the Bechuana are the Bakgatla, the Bamalete and the Batlokwa. These are fairly recent immigrants into the Protectorate from the western Transvaal having arrived here in the nineteenth century. The Barolong, the greater number of whom to-day live in the Union, trace the genealogy of their chiefs to one Rolong, who lived at a time even more remote than did Masilo. The Barolong are settled along the southern border of the Protectorate and round Mafeking.

Soon after Moffat's arrival the existence of the tribe and of the mission was threatened by a horde of Bahlakwana and Maphuting, Sotho marauders from the east like the followers of Mma-Ntatisi, and set in motion by the same causes. Moffat acted with much vigour and enlisted the help of the Griqua half-casts who lived about 100 miles to the south of his station. These came to his aid and inflicted much execution on the invaders who had by then outrun their supplies and were not used to firearms. In the following year Moffat obtained an extraordinary ascendancy over Mzilikazi and, though the Matebele ceaselessly and mercilessly raided the unhappy Bechuana tribes to the north (among the worst sufferers being the Bakwena) the Mission at Kuruman and the peoples in its immediate surroundings remained inviolate.

The 50 years between 1820 and 1870 were periods of chaos and anarchy, of internecine quarrels and struggles which it would be tedious to recapitulate in detail. Internal and inter-tribal difficulties were complicated by the impact on these borders of the Boer trekkers. To the latter, however, belongs the credit of ridding the immediate neighbourhood of the Matebele; after several engagements with the Boer, disastrous for his tribe, Mzilikazi removed himself northwards in 1838, preying whenever he got the chance on the weaker people on the way, Bechuana and Makalanga. To these tactics few of the Bechuana chiefs made effective resistance with the exception of chief Sekgoma of the Bamangwato who was made of sterner stuff than the rest, and who in 1840 inflicted several minor reverses on Matebele raiding parties. In the meantime David Livingstone who had married Robert Moffat's daughter, Mary, established a mission among the Bakwena where he stayed until the early fifties.

In 1872 there acceded to the chieftainship of the Bamangwato (descendants, it will be remembered, of the adherents of Ngwato, son of Malope) the most remarkable African of his time and possibly one of the most remarkable of any time. This was Khama III, the son of Sekgoma I. His youth had been troubled by dissensions within the tribe and by the ever present peril of the Matebele. During the first few years of his reign he much enhanced the standing of his tribe until the Bamangwato were amongst the most prominent of the people of this part of Africa. He was no mean strategist, had a well trained and well equipped little army and earned the respect of Lobengula, son of Mzilikazi, and with it some assurance of immunity from the depredations of that potentate. A lifelong and rigid adherent of Christianity, he introduced numbers of reforms into the life of the tribe, one of the most important, and the one on which Khama himself set most store, being the total prohibition of alcoholic liquor. No detail of tribal administration escaped his attention and he devoted himself with energy and singleness of purpose to the uplifting of his people. Though the weaker tribes still had to submit to the ravages of Lobengula's Matebele, by the middle "seventies" there was some stability and order in the life of these regions, and the Bamangwato, under Khama's domination, and for that matter the other Bechuana tribes, enjoyed conditions less turbulent and chaotic than at any other time earlier in the century.

It was at this time, however, that the Bechuana began to feel the effect of forces that were entirely to alter their lives and to remould their destinies. Hitherto they had seen little of the white man. A few traders and hunters had indeed penetrated into their territories but these expeditions had been few and far between and, except at large centres like Shoshong, no permanent relations had been established. The only Europeans who had lived among them were the missionaries, men like Moffat and Livingstone and that remarkable missionary-administrator, MacKenzie. Now began the exploration of Africa, the division of the continent among the nations and the exploitation of its resources. Embittered relations between the Boers from the Transvaal and the Bechuana tribesmen (particularly the Barolong and the Batlhaping) prompted the latter to address appeals for assistance to the Cape authorities while Khama, shortly after his accession, made representations to the High Commissioner that his country be taken under British protection. These appeals were powerfully seconded by Cecil Rhodes, who appreciated the importance of Bechuanaland as the "Suez Canal to the North" and was determined to keep it open for the furtherance of his plans for the occupation and development of the land beyond the Limpopo. But the British Government showed no anxiety to assume such new responsibilities and it was not until 1884 that the Home Government sent the Missionary John MacKenzie to these territories as Deputy Commissioner. Finally in 1885 Sir Charles Warren, with the concurrence of Khama and the other principal chiefs, proclaimed the whole of Bechuanaland to be under the protection of Her Majesty the Queen. The southern part of the Territory, which included Mafeking, Vryburg and Kuruman, was later constituted a Crown Colony and eventually became part of the Cape Colony. It is now in the Cape Province

of the Union of South Africa and is known as Bechuanaland and some times as British Bechuanaland. The northern part, thenceforward known as the Bechuanaland Protectorate, which stretches as far north as the Zambesi river, has remained to this day under the protection of the British Crown.

Meanwhile British expansion northwards continued and, with the occupation of what is now Southern Rhodesia, Rhodes's description of Bechuanaland as the "Suez Canal to the North" was fully justified.

In 1895 the British Government showed itself in favour of handing over the Administration of the Protectorate to the British South Africa Company. Chiefs Khama of the Bamangwato, Bathoen of the Bangwaketse and Sebele of the Bakwena went to England to protest against the suggested transfer and an agreement was reached that if they gave up a strip of land on the eastern side of the Protectorate for the construction of a railway (through which the railway runs to-day) they should remain, as they desired, under the protection of the British Crown.

So began the modern era in the Protectorate. The country is administered by a Resident Commissioner who lives in Mafeking and is responsible to the High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland (formerly styled the High Commissioner for South Africa). In the areas reserved for the occupation of their tribes the chiefs exercise a large measure of independent administration, with the advice of District Commissioners and technical officers of the Central Government.

Khama died in 1923. The Native Authority of the tribe is Rasebolai, the grandson of Khama's younger brother, Kgamane. The tribal capital is at Serowe. Bathoen of the Bangwaketse and Kgari of the Bakwena are grandsons respectively of chiefs Bathoen and Sebele who visited England in 1895.

Of the other descendants of Masilo, Moremi III, chief of the Batawana of N'gamiland and descendant of Tawana, son of Mathiba, died in 1946. His son, Letsholathebe, is still a minor and the tribe is administered by a regent. The chiefly line of the Bahurutshe, if indeed it is represented at all, has no political importance in the Protectorate though this tribe is generally respected as the senior among the tribes of the Bechuana.

CHAPTER 3

ADMINISTRATION

The constitutional position in the Bechuanaland Protectorate is governed by various Orders in Council and Proclamations, of which the most important is the Order in Council of Her Majesty Queen Victoria dated the 9th May, 1891. That Order in Council empowered the High Commissioner to exercise on Her Majesty's behalf all the powers and jurisdiction

which Her Majesty at any time before or after the date of the Order had or might have within the Protectorate and to that end empowered him further to take or cause to be taken such measures and to do or cause to be done all such matters and things within the Protectorate as are lawful and as in the interest of Her Majesty's Service he might think expedient, subject to such instructions as he might from time to time receive from Her Majesty or through a Secretary of State.

Other provisions of the Order in Council empowered the High Commissioner :

- (1) to appoint administrative and judicial Officers and to assign their functions to them subject to the preservation of his own powers and authorities in their entirety ; and
- (2) to provide by proclamation from time to time for the administration of justice, the raising of revenue and generally for the peace, order and good government of all persons within the Protectorate including the prohibition and punishment of acts tending to disturb the public peace.

In issuing this proclamation the High Commissioner was instructed by the Order in Council to respect any native laws and customs by which the civil relations of any native Chiefs, tribes or population under Her Majesty's protection were at that time (viz. in May, 1891) regulated, except in so far as the same might be incompatible with the due exercise of Her Majesty's power and jurisdiction or which were repugnant to humanity.

The Order in Council required the High Commissioner to publish his proclamations in the Gazette and reserved to Her Majesty the right to disallow any such Proclamations. The Order in Council provided also that, subject to any proclamation lawfully issued by the High Commissioner, any jurisdiction exercisable otherwise than under this Order in Council of 1891, whether by virtue of any Statute or Order in Council or of any treaty, or otherwise, should remain in full force.

Her Majesty reserved the power to revoke, alter, add to or amend this Order in Council at any time.

All references to Her Majesty in the Order in Council were declared by it to include Her Majesty's Heirs and Successors.

The Protectorate is administered by a Resident Commissioner under the direction of the High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland (formerly styled the High Commissioner for South Africa).

The Territory comprises Crown Lands, European Blocks of farms, and Native Reserves and is divided, for administrative purposes, into the following districts, under District Commissioners who are assisted by a force of police :

N'gamiland (including the Batawana Reserve) Headquarters at Maun.
 Ngwato (including the Bamangwato Reserve and some Crown Lands)
 and the Tuli Block – Headquarters at Serowe.

Gaberones (including the Gaberones Block and the Batlokwa and Bamalete Reserves) Headquarters at Gaberones.
Francistown (including the Tati Concession and some Crown Lands) Headquarters at Francistown
Kgatleng (Bakgatla Reserve) Headquarters at Mochudi.
Kweneng (Bakwena Reserve) Headquarters at Molepolole.
Ngwaketse (Bangwaketse Reserve) Headquarters at Kanye.
Lobatsi (including the Lobatsi Block, the Barolong Farms Native Reserve and some Crown Lands) Headquarters at Lobatsi.
Kgalagadi (Crown Lands) Headquarters at Tsabong.
Ghanzi (Ghanzi Farms and Crown Lands) Headquarters at Ghanzi.
Kasane (Crown Lands) Headquarters at Kasane.

In the native areas the method of administration is that generally known as "indirect rule". Native Administrations were formerly established and the powers and rights of Native Authorities were defined in the Native Administration and Native Courts Proclamations, Chapters 56 and 5 of the Laws of the Bechuanaland Protectorate. In 1938 Native Treasuries were successfully established in 8 out of 9 Native Reserves, and a Treasury was established in the ninth in 1951. Government pays 35 per cent of each Native Administration's collection of Native Tax to the Tribal Treasury concerned; other sources of revenue are tribal levies, rates and stand-rents in addition to graded tax.

In the preparation of estimates and the general management of their treasuries the chiefs and finance committees, under the guidance of District Commissioners, display an intelligent and keen appreciation of their responsibilities.

There is an African Advisory Council which meets once a year under the presidency of the Resident Commissioner, and this is attended by the Chief and tribal representatives from the various Native Reserves and non-tribal areas.

A European Advisory Council meets under the presidency of the Resident Commissioner, usually twice a year. There are eight members who are elected to represent the interests of the European residents in the eight electoral areas into which the Protectorate is divided.

A joint Advisory Council, consisting of the eight members of the European Advisory Council and eight members from the African Advisory Council, usually meets twice a year.

CHAPTER 4

WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

The weights and measures in use in the Bechuanaland Protectorate are those which are in use in the Union of South Africa.

CHAPTER 5

READING LIST

- DORNAN, S. S. *Pygmies and Bushmen of the Kalahari*. Seeley Service, London : 1925.
- LIVINGSTONE, D. *Missionary Travels and Researches*. 1895.
- MOLEMA, S. M. *The Bantu Past and Present*. An Ethnological and Historical Study of the Native Races of South Africa. W. Green and Sons, Ltd.
- *Chief Moroka*. His Life, His Times, His Country and His People. Methodist Publishing House, Cape Town.
- POLE EVANS, I. B. *A Reconnaissance Trip through the Eastern Portion of the Bechuanaland Protectorate and an Expedition to N'gamiland*. Government Printer, Pretoria : 1948.
- PERHAM, M. & CURTIS, L. *The Protectorates of South Africa*. (The question of their transfer to the Union.) Oxford University Press, Humphrey Milford : 1953.
- SCHAPERA, I. *The Bantu Speaking Tribes of South Africa*. George Routledge & Sons, Ltd., London. Maskew Miller Ltd., Cape Town : 1937.
- *A Handbook of Tswana Law and Custom*. Oxford University Press ; 1939.
- *Migrant Labour and Tribal Life*. Oxford University Press : 1947.
- *Married Life in an African Tribe*. Faber and Faber, London : 1940. 364. pp
- *Native Land Tenure in the Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Loveday Press : 1943. xiv+283 pp.
- SILLERY, A. *The Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Oxford University Press : 1952.
- *Sechele*. George Ronald, Oxford : 1954.

APPENDICES

APPENDIX I
STATEMENT OF COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE GRANTS AS AT 31st MARCH 1955

I Scheme	II Due to C. D. & W. Fund at 31.3.54 £ s. d.	III Due from C. D. & W. Fund at 31.3.54 £ s. d.	IV Receipts 1954-55		V Repayments to C. D. & W. Fund 1954-55 £ s. d.	VI Credited to C. D. & W. Revenue 1954-55 £ s. d.	VII Debited to C. D. & W. Expenditure 1954-55 £ s. d.	VIII Due to C. D. & W. Fund at 31.3.55 £ s. d.	IX Due from C. D. & Fund at 31.3.55 £ s. d.
			From C. D. & W. Fund £ s. d.	Other £ s. d.					
D. 678 and 678 A Under ground Water Develop- ment.	10908 14 3		31010 0 0			34226 10 11	34226 10 11	7692 3 4	
D. 679 Extension of Livestock and Agricultural Ser- vices.	6361 6 2			25 10 0		6386 16 2	6523 18 5		137 2 3
D. 680 & 680 A Development of African Agricul- tures.	5894 16 10					5894 16 10	8460 11 4		2565 14 6
D. 681 & 681 A Control of Tsetse Fly		98 13 0	7638 0 0	132 1 9		7610 3 10	7618 2 7	53 6 2	
D. 940, 940 A, 940 B 940 C Geological Survey		3430 6 8	34904 0 0	88 1 5		30339 14 4	26909 7 8	4652 7 1	
D. 990 and 990 A Surface Water									

Development D. 1036 Erection of Bridges	549 5 10	21713 0 0			20975 9 7 20975 9 7 1286 16 3
D. 1037 Develop- ment of Medical Ser- vices	882 15 0	5245 0 0			5247 1 7 5247 1 7 880 13 5
D. 1044 Equip- ment of Work- shops	944 0 11	3090 0 0	50 8 6		3090 0 0 2202 1 5
D. 1045, 1045 A, 1045 B & 1045 C, Development of Education	50 8 6		50 8 6		
D. 1180, 1180 A, 1180 B, 1180 C, 1180 D & 1180 E, Topographical Survey	677 0 3	2156 0 0	17 14 1		2361 14 0 2379 8 1 471 6 3
D. 1409 and 1409 A, Water Develop- ment	1216 11 7	5037 0 0			5037 0 0 5913 4 3
D. 1412 Ngamiland Waterways	2382 18 6				2382 18 6
D. 1805 & 1805 A, Foot and Mouth Disease Control	764 4 1				764 4 1 1317 7 6
D. 1930 St. Jo- seph's College, Khalé	12287 2 5	33030 0 0	9627 3 2		23423 8 7 20763 9 4 9606 11 5
D. 2014 Trepone- matosis Control	1000 0 0				1000 0 0
D. 2069 Geological Investigations	110 18 4	24 0 0			119 2 0 119 2 0 15 16 4
	29531 19 3 18027 3 1	144527 0 0	9940 18 11		680 0 0 682 10 8
					146156 1 11 143338 5 4 28041 18 9 5407 9 0

Notes: •£553 3s. 5d. and £2 10s. 8d. over spent on Schemes D. 1412 and D. 2069 respectively to be met from Protectorate Funds.

APPENDIX II

REPORT ON THE PROGRESS OF COLONIAL
DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE SCHEMES

TO THE 30th SEPTEMBER, 1955

Schemes D. 678 and 678A – Underground Water Development

Drilling was carried out for the following purposes :

- (a) For village and cattle water supplies in the Tribal reserves ;
- (b) For the Teacher Training Centre at Lobatsi, Police Camps and Quarantine and Government farms ; and
- (c) For Railway Water Supplies.

The results of the year's work done are summarised in the table below :

<i>Locality of Holes drilled or purpose</i>	<i>Number</i>		<i>Number</i>		<i>Yield in G.P.H.</i>	
	<i>Indivi- dual</i>	<i>Totals</i>	<i>Indivi- dual</i>	<i>Totals</i>	<i>Indivi- dual</i>	<i>Totals</i>
<i>Tribal Reserve</i>						
Bamangwato . . .	14		1,949		6,670	
Bakwena	8		2,417		3,150	
Bangwaketse . . .	1		202		500	
Tati	6		512		5,020	
Bakgatla	0*		76		240	
Batawana	9	38	1,080	6,236	1,930	17,510
<i>Government</i>						
T.T.C. Police etc. .	11		1,816	1,816	12,080	12,080
Vet. Govt. farms and L.I.C.	12	23	2,933	2,933	10,580	10,580
Railway drilling . .	9	9	896	896	3,735	3,735
Ghanzi Cattle Route	3	3	982	982	360	360
Total.		73		12,863		44,265

* *Note:* Footage on holes cleaned out and deepened.

Six rigs were in operation during the period ; three rigs being out of operation for an average of five months, on account of overhauls and resignations of drillers. Drilling on the Ghanzi Cattle Route was postponed until the arrival of the heavy capacity rig which is capable of drilling to 1,500 foot depth.

Drillers are becoming increasingly difficult to engage, owing to better prospects obtaining in the neighbouring countries of the Federation and the Union of South Africa.

Under section "B" of this scheme, at Francistown a larger delivery main $\frac{1}{3}$ mile in length has been laid to serve the 30,000 gallon reservoir completed the previous year. At Lobatsi a larger delivery main was laid in order to supply the African Police lines. At Mahalapye a site for a new 50,000 gallon reservoir was blasted and prepared and pumping facilities were extended. At Mochudi increased storage for rain water conservation was installed.

Scheme D679 – Livestock and Agricultural Development

(a) *Veterinary*: The revised scheme has been continued throughout the year. This provided for the employment of one Veterinary Officer and two Livestock Officers, who have continued to be employed within the framework of the Department. Monies and other charges for travelling allowances and so forth, have been used appropriately. No actual courses at the school have been carried out, but preparatory work has been started on the curriculum for the school and before the end of the financial year a course in hide preparation will be given.

On capital works no progress can be reported excepting the fact that at long last the contractors have announced that they will not only be able to produce the pre-fabricated building, but that there is every possibility that the building will be erected before the end of the financial year. In anticipation of this, a certain amount of equipment is being purchased for the school.

During the year supplementary funds* (£10,000) were provided to be spent over the years 1955 to 1957. No actual expenditure has as yet been made, but orders have been placed for water piping and for a Dutch barn, which will serve as the basis of the farm buildings, and before the end of the financial year it is hoped that the Dutch barn will be erected and the water reticulation put down. In addition, it is hoped that considerable progress will have been made in the erection of labour lines.

(b) *Agriculture*: The Agricultural Officer's post under this Scheme remained vacant during the year. One Agricultural and Livestock Officer resigned at the beginning of the year and a replacement was appointed in June. The two Agricultural and Livestock Officers continued to be responsible for agricultural extension work and the supervision of African staff employed under Scheme D 680. All the Junior Service posts were occupied.

Schemes D 680 and D 680 A – Development of African Agriculture

The Agricultural Officer employed under this Scheme resigned in January and efforts to obtain a replacement have so far been unsuccessful. The recruitment of demonstrators continued and by the middle of the year all the 48 posts were filled. It has been possible not only to commence extension work in new areas such as the Barolong farms, the Bokalaka

district etc. but also to increase the scope of the work in other districts where the attitude of the people favoured the progress of the work.

While the season was a difficult one due to high rainfall, the results obtained from demonstration plots were very satisfactory. Overall yields were lower than the previous year but, on the other hand, exceptional yields of up to 16 bags (200 lb.) per acre were recorded from plots in the Bamalete reserve. The mean yield from a sample of lands in this reserve planted in the traditional African method was 170 lb. per acre compared with 964 lb. per acre obtained from 35 demonstration plots. Extension work was also continued at the Ranaka Unit Agricultural project where suitable sites were selected for the building of dams. Implements were also made available for the construction of dams and for other soil conservation works.

Schemes D. 681, D. 681 A and D. 681B – Control of Tsetse Fly

The Tsetse Fly Control Officer has been present and in charge of all technical operations throughout the year under the guidance, as to policy, of the Tsetse Development Committee under the Chairmanship of the District Commissioner, Ngamiland.

Record floods arrived during the first quarter so that most effort for sometime was expended in restoring communications. Hunting operations and fly-round work continued but suffered as a result.

The visits of Mr. R. D. Pilson, E.A.T.T.R.R.O. Ecologist, and Dr. E. A. Lewis, W.H.O. Scientific Consultant and former Director of E.A.T.T.R.R.O. were the more notable features of the second quarter of the year. Both examined the problem, the former from the fly-vegetation angle and the latter from the Administration, Organization and Policy points of view, and voiced approval for the new scheme of discriminative clearing with some suggestions and much helpful advice.

The new scheme D 681 B was approved in June and the immediate employment of a new Field Officer was effected. July and August were spent in preliminary preparations for clearing operations which were commenced on 1st September. By the end of the year between 2,500 and 3,000 acres of bush were cleared. This was achieved at the approximate rate of 1.2 clearing man-days per acre and would work out in the region of 4s. per acre.

Three new fly-rounds were instituted in the clearing operations area in January, 1955, and a further one in August just before operations commenced. These, together with the two other rounds instituted in September, 1954, have been patrolled almost continuously. A fly-vegetation pattern seems to be appearing showing that Tsetse exist in the fairly open double-canopy vegetation throughout the year, in the dense fringing forest of the rivers in the hot dry months only, and in the very open single canopy vegetation in the wet months and the cold dry months. This indicates that the fly can and does exist in the double canopy vegetation, but will retreat to denser vegetation in adverse conditions and flood out into lighter vegetation when conditions are very favourable.

Bush clearing operations have eliminated the top canopy of the double-canopy vegetation on two fly-rounds and have resulted in an immediate

drop in fly population on these two rounds. At the end of December these rounds had an apparent density of 3.3 and 0 whereas the four untouched rounds were 26, 30, 40 and 42 in terms of adult males per 10,000 yards.

Surveys and reconnaissance fly-rounds showed there are no substantial advances in the Maun Area but that there is an expansion of the Tsau-Nokaneng bulge north of Nokaneng.

Arboricide experiments in the application of paraffin and diesoline to the bark of trees and ring-barking were undertaken on 25 trees of 4 species in Spring. The experiment will be repeated in Autumn.

Major repair work was done on 18 miles of the outer fence and minor repairs were done on a further 14. The water had not receded sufficiently to complete major repairs.

Game destruction was continued with more hunters under increased supervision. The destruction of Wart-hog increased by 100 per cent over 1954 figures. Many more small game were shot. Destruction of most other game dropped except that of buffalo and kudu which stayed the same. The total was slightly greater than that of 1954, but by next year we may find numbers of all game shot decreasing, showing that at last we are eliminating and not merely controlling game.

Two pole bridges, one 30 yards long and the other 120 yards long, were built.

Transport difficulties have been considerable. The floods made it impossible to get around in the operational area except by dug-out canoe until October.

Every effort has been made to train local Africans in the fly-round work and labour supervision. Progress has been slow.

Schemes D 940, D 940 A, B, and C – Geological Survey

The past year has been notable for the interest taken in the mineral resources of the Protectorate by prominent mining houses. The Geological Survey has done its best to encourage this development and to ensure that the results are turned to the best interests of the Protectorate and its inhabitants. A report on an investigation of the Bushman Mine copper deposits was cyclostyled and sent to mining firms known to be interested in the production of copper.

The work of the Geological Survey has continued along much the same lines as during the previous years. The investigation of the copper deposits of the Bushman Mine was completed by the end of November and a comprehensive report illustrated with maps and plans was ready in February. The emphasis of the work on the coal deposits has been shifted to points which are within easy reach of the Railway and core-drilling has proceeded near Debeeti and to the west of Palapye. A detailed geological map of the area surrounding the Moshaneng asbestos mine was also completed and a report prepared at the request of the operators of the mine.

As in past years the shortage of staff has prevented the Geological Survey from taking its full share in the development of underground water supplies. Only in the neighbourhood of Lobatsi has geological and geophysical work been undertaken in the siting of boreholes. The Survey

has continued to keep in touch with the Boring Branch of the Public Works Department and advice has been given on numerous occasions by Headquarters staff on the depth to which boreholes should be taken. The system of recording and tabulating the borehole logs and samples received from the field has been overhauled and a series of borehole maps prepared showing the location and essential data of all the boreholes of which records can be traced.

In January 1955 a report was submitted to Government describing the Lobatsi water supply and pointing out that the chief source tapped by the existing boreholes was a ground-water basin of saturation underlying the Colonial Development Corporation Lobatsi Abattoir. It was shown that a supply of some 60,000,000 gallons yearly for the abattoir, township and railway might have to be drawn from this source. The trans-Kalahari stock route from Ghanzi to the Lobatsi Abattoir was inspected and a report submitted. It was pointed out that water was difficult to obtain as out of 29 boreholes drilled since 1952 only 7 had been successful. These seven boreholes are along the portion of the route between Tsane and Ghanzi and will provide adequate watering points for stock making this journey.

On the 230-mile distance between Tsane and Kanye the only existing borehole is one drilled in 1950 at Kakia, to the south of the direct route, by the Geological Survey. During the present drilling campaign not a single successful borehole was obtained. Full co-operation was maintained between the Public Works Department and the Geological Survey during the progress of the work, and following the study of the geology of the stock route made by Mr. van Straten the reasons for failure are now understood and a report will be available shortly. It is proposed that further drilling should be undertaken when a new deep drilling rig on order for the Public Works Department is available. The prospects of developing potable water along this difficult section of the route are not good, and it has been recommended that a reconnaissance be made to seek a route on which the hydrological conditions are more favourable.

A geological and geophysical investigation was also undertaken to obtain a water supply for a Teachers Training College which it is proposed to site at Lobatsi. Three boreholes yielding 950, 750 and 2,000 gallons per hour respectively have now been drilled.

The laboratory has continued to provide chemical and petrological services for Government Departments and the Public. A study of the copper ores of the Bushman Mine was completed for inclusion in the final report on this deposit.

A large part of the work of the laboratory consists in compiling and filing water borehole records and examining and classifying sludges from boreholes submitted by the Public Works Department and private drillers. A complete check on all available borehole records was made in order to compile a series of 1 : 500,000 borehole maps of the whole Protectorate. The organization for receiving, studying and storing borehole samples submitted to the Geological Survey has been overhauled and is ready to deal with the bulk of samples expected when the Borehole Record and Sampling Proclamation is approved.

Work in the drawing office has consisted in the completion of about

30 maps and diagrams by geologists in illustration of their work. A start has been made on the preparation of topographical map sheets to a scale of 1 : 125,000 (approx. 2 miles to one inch) each covering one quarter of a degree square. These maps are based on photo-print laydowns provided by the Directorate of Colonial Surveys and they will have a fair degree of accuracy.

Scheme D 990 and 990 A – Surface Water Development

Four new stock dams were completed during the year, giving a total storage capacity of 98·6 acre feet and capable of watering some 3,900 head of large stock for part of the year.

Three existing dams, which were damaged by floods early in 1955, have to be completely rebuilt. One has been completed and work is in progress on the other two. All the dams in the Bamangwato Reserve were inspected and minor repairs were carried out.

Work has commenced on a twin arch-buttress concrete dam on the Lotsani River at Palapye. This is for Railway Water Supplies and is being done on a repayment basis. The dam, when completed, will hold 60 million gallons of water. Special paved drinking areas will be provided at intervals for cattle. These will be fenced off to stop erosion. Work is proceeding favourably on this scheme and concreting of the footings commenced in August.

Scheme D 1036 – Erection of Bridges

Two cement causeways were built across the Mahalapye river. One at Mahalapye and the other on the Back line fence in the Tuli Block.

One bridge was widened and strengthened on the Lobatsi-Kanye road and 10 culverts were built on the Ramathlabama - Gaberones road.

One low level bridge was completed over the Magoje river in the Tuli Block. A second bridge over the Lotsani River has been commenced, but work has been suspended pending the replacement of the Construction Foreman who had to be dismissed.

Scheme D 1037 – Development of Medical Services

The only structure still to be completed under the Scheme is the new Health Centre at Gaberones. A site has now been chosen, materials collected and a start made with actual construction. Owing to the increased building costs it was not found possible to complete the unit with the original allocation of £3,500 and a further £2,000 was transferred from item 2 – Ambulances and Replacements – making the estimated total cost of the unit £5,500. It is hoped that it will be possible to take occupation shortly.

Three new vehicles were purchased during the year at a total cost of £2,900. One vehicle was sent to Ghanzi where new medical services in charge of a senior service district nurse recently came into existence. The second vehicle was sent to Serowe where extensive travelling is necessary. The older vehicle from Serowe is now undergoing a complete overhaul at the end of which it will be posted to Gaberones in conjunction with the

new Health Centre referred to above. The third vehicle was sent to the United Free Church of Scotland Mission Hospital at Kanye.

The ambulances purchased under this Scheme have all performed yeoman service and filled a long-felt want. On an average each vehicle performs 10,000 miles annually, most of this travelling being over bad roads thus intensifying wear and tear and necessitating fairly frequent overhauls at considerable cost.

The salaries of the Senior Service Health Inspector, one Sanitary Inspector, one Lorry Driver and one Lorry Labourer, all Junior Service, continued to be paid from this Scheme. This staff were employed throughout the year under review.

Schemes D.1045 and D 1045 A, B and C – Development of Education

Efforts to find an adequate water supply by drilling on suitable sites at Kanye for the Teacher Training College had finally to be abandoned. A suitable site was thereafter found at Lobatsi and a good supply of water has now been located by drilling. Building is about to commence, but owing to costs having risen during the long period during which water was sought at Kanye, additional funds will be required.

Scheme D 1805 and D 1805 A and B – Disease Control

During the year the contractors on the Central Bamangwato fence completed their contract. The fence, however, does not reach the Southern Rhodesian border and is short by about 25 miles. It is unlikely that this final portion will be completed owing to the fact that the rains have now started and since this portion lies in black cotton soil, it is inaccessible. The clearing and completion of the fence will therefore have to be done departmentally. Sufficient materials are on hand to complete this portion when conditions permit.

The fencing of the Makoba and Dukwe quarantines has been completed in spite of great difficulties encountered at Dukwe through having to clear through belts of extremely thick Mopane forest. In the Dukwe area there are a number of elephant, but so far they appear to have taken little dislike to the fence and it is encouraging to note that during the past 12 months no damage has been done to the fence.

Constructional work for housing continues but has been held up due to a shortage of cement (this shortage is general throughout Southern Africa). African lines and ablutions have been completed at Dukwe and the European house is nearing completion. Water supplies have been laid at Makoba and at Dukwe.

The small amount of money remaining under the various sub-heads of D 1805 will be spent during this financial year, although the actual construction work will have to be continued by departmental Works Foremen in 1956.

D 1805 B : Progress on the Makalamabedi fence northwards has been slow, but the clearing for this fence has now been completed and the contractor is waiting upon transport contractors to deliver a sufficiency

of material to Makalamabedi before starting operations. As soon as the material has been delivered, it is estimated that the contractor will be able to complete the construction of the fence in one month. If the transport is speeded up, it is highly probable that the fence will be completed before the end of the financial year.

In general it can be stated that the fencing has stood up extremely well to the onslaughts of game and fire. Maintenance of the fence lines has not always been satisfactory due to a lack of staff and also due to climatic conditions, which, during the rains, make it impossible to patrol the fence because of flooding. The quarantines have been used throughout the year and we can now feel that this large expenditure on the erection of fencing and quarantines is having a beneficial effect both in controlling the spread of disease through game and by bovines.

Scheme D 1930 – Development of Education, St. Joseph's College

Building of new class-rooms and dormitories at an estimated cost of £3,000 is now in progress. The St. Joseph's Mission will meet the additional costs.

Scheme D 2014 – Treponematosi Control

£1,200 was allocated under this Scheme towards the territory's contribution of £3,140 for the period under review. Other Bodies participating in the Scheme and making considerable financial assistance are W.H.O., U.N.I.C.E.F. and the South African Institute for Medical Research. It was not possible to appoint a Medical Officer as provided for but W.H.O. continued to pay the salary and allowances of the Field Officer in charge of the project. All the Junior Service personnel detailed as items 3-7 of Head 12 B of the 1955-56 Estimates were employed.

The investigatory phase terminated during the year under review and the mass treatment campaign commenced. It is hoped to treat all persons either curatively or prophylactically and to cover as nearly as possible 100 per cent of the territory's population. By September 1955 nearly 60,000 persons had been treated.

Scheme D 2515 – Soil Conservation

The funds available for fencing, during the current financial year, have been allocated for use in the Werda area on the Molopo River, where the necessity for remedial measures is very urgent. Labour has been supplied free by the community inhabiting the area.

Rehabilitation of the area adjacent to the river is being effected by the erection of a "curtain" fence parallel to the river at a distance of one mile. Stock will have access to the water points in the river through fenced corridors.

APPENDIX III

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE : IMPORTS - 1953, 1954, 1955

U : From Union of South Africa - N : From Northern Rhodesia - S : From Southern Rhodesia - O : From other countries

Commodity	From	1953		1954		1955	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Sorghum (Bags)	U S Total	5,501 28 5,529	12,524 45 12,569	78 - 78	126 - 126	263 - 263	738 - 738
Maize and Maize meal (Bags)	U Total	36,016 36,016	72,690 72,690	12,100 12,100	30,576 30,576	13,938 13,938	26,134 26,134
Wheat and Wheat Meal (Bags)	U S O Total	16,887 635 - 17,522	61,369 1,128 - 62,497	19,577 340 3 19,920	64,629 725 7 65,361	17,235 - - 17,235	58,612 - - 58,612
Horses, Mules and donkeys	U S O Total	350 7 1,175 1,532	6,791 55 8,641 15,487	796 41 - 837	13,012 233 - 13,245	25 - - 25	608 - - 608
Cattle	U S O Total	2,162 448 12 2,622	33,540 8,130 360 42,030	231 85 - 316	7,290 2,790 - 10,080	120 12 - 132	3,849 360 - 4,209
Sheep and goats	U S Total	2,309 20 2,329	6,897 48 6,945	1,408 55 1,463	4,224 148 4,372	471 - 471	1,491 - 1,491
Pigs.	U S Total	15 - 15	15 - 15	- 4 4	- 6 6	- - -	- - -

IMPORTS AND EXPORTS

85

IMPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	From	1953		1954		1955	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Poultry.	U S Total	Figures not available		423	106	-	-
				150	37	-	-
				573	143	-	-
Vehicles	U S N O Total	-	75,003	-	78,649	-	150,115
		-	6,588	-	6,723	-	70,946
		-	38	-	-	-	-
		-	3,928	-	-	-	4,222
		-	85,557	-	85,372	-	225,283
General Merchandise	U S N O Total	-	830,895	-	895,380	-	980,438
		-	243,147	-	265,336	-	270,466
		-	8,956	-	519	-	13,484
		-	18,451	-	29,254	-	29,676
		-	1,101,449	-	1,190,489	-	1,294,064
Other foodstuffs	U S N O Total	-	482,707	-	193,620	-	194,612
		-	26,895	-	21,910	-	24,783
		-	473	-	-	-	307
		-	470	-	383	-	282
		-	510,555	-	215,913	-	219,984
Textiles	U S N O Total	-	341,938	-	321,302	-	429,502
		-	148,967	-	111,117	-	177,354
		-	4,094	-	-	-	4,162
		-	9,738	-	3,628	-	7,006
		-	504,737	-	436,047	-	618,024
Fertilizers	U S Total	-	1,627	-	1,693	-	13,103
		-	245	-	-	-	245
		-	1,873	-	1,693	-	13,348
GRAND TOTAL			2,416,404		2,053,423		2,462,495

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE : EXPORTS - 1953, 1954, 1955

U : To Union of South Africa - N : To Northern Rhodesia - S : To Southern Rhodesia - O : To other countries

Commodity	To	1953		1954		1955	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Sorghum (Bags) . . .	U	23,800	34,224	81,393	121,150	101,631	254,078
	S	4,213	6,125	2,400	3,600	1,450	3,704
	N	187	562	-	-	890	2,158
	Total	28,200	40,911	83,793	124,750	103,971	259,940
Maize and maize meal (Bags)	U	312	388	-	-	-	-
	Total	312	388	-	-	-	-
Beans and Pulses (Bags) .	U	12,190	21,320	61,690	111,700	34,299	77,174
	S	4,475	8,389	21,000	33,000	36,117	90,292
	N	1,720	3,762	-	-	1,450	3,300
	O	9,823	17,784	-	-	270	603
	Total	28,208	51,245	82,690	141,700	72,136	171,369
Groundnuts (Bags) . . .	U	-	1,262	8,280	12,400	2,100	3,150
	Total	-	1,262	8,280	12,400	2,100	3,150
Wheat (Bags)	U	-	-	-	-	3,230	8,075
	Total	-	-	-	-	3,230	8,075
Tobacco (Bags)	U	-	32	-	-	-	-
	Total	-	32	-	-	-	-
Butter (lb.)	U	478,576	74,378	286,608	44,543	427,000	66,405
	O	-	-	105,250	17,103	-	-
	Total	478,576	74,378	391,858	61,646	427,000	66,405
Butterfat (lb.)	U	185,354	26,427	228,848	34,000	335,543	50,953
	Total	185,354	26,427	228,848	34,000	335,543	50,953

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	To	1953		1954		1955	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Eggs (doz.).	U S Total	1,607 — 1,607	161 — 161	3,422 4 3,426	428 1 429	2,747 — 2,747	343 — 343
Cattle (live)	U S N O Total	33,008 1,046 25,712 11,356 71,116	733,190 21,776 518,349 234,526 1,507,841	26,031 2,744 30,958 9,046 68,779	572,682 61,448 614,496 194,970 1,443,596	— — 6,307 — 6,307	— — 100,125 — 100,125
Cattle (Carcases) (lb.). .	U N O Total	— — — —	— — — —	800,776 1,126,928 740,614 2,668,318	35,008 49,994 33,469 118,471	13,976,191 12,109,064 6,127,420 32,212,675	577,284 535,491 265,766 1,378,541
Sheep and Goats	U S N O Total	6,806 18,435 2,547 233 28,021	17,356 47,008 6,495 594 71,453	4,757 13,374 2,365 65 20,561	14,271 38,115 7,744 182 60,312	6,862 6,991 831 — 14,684	20,586 17,655 2,456 — 40,697
Pigs	U S N O Total	513 384 — — 897	4,104 2,688 — — 6,792	712 131 197 141 1,181	4,282 884 1,330 952 7,448	— 738 314 265 1,317	— 5,535 3,611 3,048 12,194
Poultry	U S N Total	8,019 210 — 8,229	2,005 52 — 2,057	21,045 15 41 21,101	5,261 4 14 5,279	21,440 — — 21,440	5,360 — — 5,360

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	To	1953			1954			1955		
		Quantity	Value £		Quantity	Value £		Quantity	Value £	
Hides (lb.)	U	471,003	32,382		919,162	50,781		4,825,771	164,603	
	S	923,919	63,519		135,910	6,397		142,399	14,487	
	N	11,421	785		14,637	924		-	-	
	O	90,262	6,206		99,514	6,219		535,919	30,426	
	Total	1,496,605	102,892		1,169,223	64,321		5,504,089	209,516	
Skins (Sheep and goats) (Pieces)	U	28,818	6,634		32,616	11,997		20,808	7,543	
	S	9,547	2,199		28,667	10,516		295	107	
	N	-	-		-	-		-	-	
	O	3,610	827		-	-		3,761	1,363	
	Total	41,975	9,660		61,283	22,513		24,864	9,013	
Skins and Karosses (Wild animal) (Pieces). . . .	U	30,773	18,044		21,604	11,309		23,086	18,978	
	S	3,595	2,324		3,283	3,376		101	1,010	
	N	-	-		-	-		2	3	
	O	11,723	8,792		19	190		6,344	1,591	
	Total	46,091	29,160		24,906	14,875		29,533	21,582	
¹ Miscellaneous animal products	U	-	14,543		-	10,111		-	16,191	
	S	-	8,310		-	898		-	7,293	
	N	-	-		-	5,713		-	660	
	O	-	4,476		-	4,286		-	709	
	Total	-	27,329		-	21,008		-	24,853	
Abattoir by-products . .	U	-	-		-	-		-	32,533	
	S	-	-		-	-		-	39,672	
	N	-	-		-	-		-	69,422	
	O	-	-		-	-		-	44,056	
	Total	-	-		-	-		-	185,683	
Bones (lb.)	U	1,396,078	8,551		2,351,670	15,600		102,185	402	
	Total	1,396,078	8,551		2,351,670	15,600		102,185	402	

¹ Up to 1954 this included biltong, ostrich feathers, hair, horns and hooves, reins and strops, wool, ostrich skins, wildebeest tails, hippo strops and whips, calf skins, ivory, ostrich eggshell, game trophies, one lion cub, casein, game meat, offal, hide trimmings, tallow, bonemeal, gail and casings, but, for 1955, Abattoir by-products are shown separately. Miscellaneous products in 1955 include in addition reptile skins, quills, fat, live game and compost.

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	To	1953		1954		1955	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
* Timber (cubic feet) . .	U	99,885	56,283				
	S	46,448	26,084	210,832	122,020	133,994	74,672
	N	41,193	28,774				
	O	1,343	380				
	Total	188,869	111,521	210,832	122,020	133,994	74,672
Gold (oz.)	S	1,109	14,008	1,216	14,956	560	6,845
	Total	1,109	14,008	1,216	14,956	560	6,845
Silver (oz.)	S	464	142	292	90	189	62
	Total	464	142	292	90	189	62
Asbestos (short tons) . .	U	548	61,862	885	98,400	1,560	165,634
	Total	548	61,862	885	98,400	1,560	165,634
Kyanite (tons). . . .	O	1,960	16,210	2,054	18,513	840	8,400
	Total	1,960	16,210	2,054	18,513	840	8,400
Other articles	U	-	3,873	-	10,237	-	10,473
	S	-	-	-	2,150	-	439
	N	-	-	-	4,476	-	6,921
	O	-	-	-	1,493	-	-
	Total	-	3,873	-	18,356	-	17,833
GRAND TOTAL . .			2,168,155		2,423,683		2,821,647

* The 1955 totals are for exports to the Union and the Rhodesias.

APPENDIX IV LIVESTOCK CENSUS 1955

Year	Bulls	Cows and Heifers	Oxen and Steers	Calves	Total Cattle	Sheep	Goats	Horses	Mules	Donkeys	Pigs	Poultry	Dogs
1944	22,688	448,536	237,386	188,292	896,902	—	568,276	4,102	142	22,566	4,508	—	—
1945	22,509	446,157	244,464	190,045	920,175	—	555,778	4,126	111	17,912	3,536	—	—
1946	22,715	463,101	274,327	198,646	958,789	—	—	3,999	147	20,670	3,487	96,601	—
1947	22,187	472,936	272,312	199,505	966,940	187,728	426,738	3,399	139	21,157	3,140	84,783	—
1948	24,000	478,875	283,625	192,000	978,500	198,569	440,000	4,154	154	22,000	2,497	88,569	—
1949	25,012	468,786	273,145	216,008	982,951	214,229	443,993	4,329	138	18,292	3,445	107,764	—
1950	25,543	515,698	282,556	266,169	1,049,966	217,288	477,277	5,053	133	19,938	3,457	96,040	—
1951	22,841	526,108	288,108	189,033	1,026,845	197,798	475,271	6,618	269	19,915	2,31	74,390	—
1952	26,891	532,057	287,886	207,462	1,054,296	216,000	509,015	7,048	285	22,488	3,676	148,710	—
1953	42,757	544,439	289,196	221,289	1,097,681	227,941	497,654	6,674	308	24,812	4,029	156,044	—
1954	44,772	583,968	276,823	198,840	1,104,403	191,519	442,224	7,183	376	25,871	5,184	169,037	26,507
1955	45,401	596,613	296,115	214,345	1,152,494	152,660	304,641	7,356	429	26,581	4,651	78,804	27,517

CASES REPORTED TO AND DEALT WITH BY THE POLICE: 1955

POLICE CASES

16

Offences	Pending at 31.12.54	Total Reported in 1955	Pending Investigation at 31.12.55	Referred to Native Courts	Not taken to Court				Taken to Court			
					Total	Civil no case in law or found false	Evidence insufficient trial or undet.	Accused dead or insane	Total	Convicted	Dismissed	Nolle Prosequi Awaiting trial
<i>Against Lawful Authority</i>												
Against Public Order...	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Perjury ..	16	76	18	1	18	14	4	1	55	3	3	3
Escape and Rescue ..												
<i>Against Public Morality</i>												
Rape and Indecent Assault	11	58	18	1	7	5	2	1	43	39	4	1
Other ..	3	10	2	1	2	1	1	1	8	7	1	1
<i>Against the Person</i>												
Murder and Manslaughter	10	32	11	1	14	3	11	1	14	3	1	3
Attempted murder ..	2	9	2	1	1	1	1	1	8	6	2	2
Assault G.B.H....	2	127	17	18	4	4	1	1	97	89	8	1
Assaults ..	21	407	33	25	32	11	21	1	329	311	18	9
<i>Against the Property</i>												
Theft and other stealings	84	457	95	27	121	99	22	1	295	270	25	3
Robbery and Extortion	4	10	1	1	3	3	1	1	10	9	1	1
Burglary, House and Store Breaking	44	135	63	5	60	56	4	1	48	47	1	3
False Pretences, Cheating etc.	11	33	7	1	6	5	1	1	30	27	3	1
Receiving Stolen Property	7	7	2	1	3	3	1	1	7	7	1	1
Arson ..	2	6	2	2	3	3	3	1	3	2	1	1
Stock Theft ..	61	209	61	25	63	30	33	1	120	108	12	1
Other ..	3	13	1	1	4	4	1	1	11	11	1	1
<i>Against the Local Laws</i>												
Road Traffic ..	6	119	6	1	8	5	3	1	111	109	2	1
Liquor Laws ..	15	522	10	1	4	3	1	1	522	517	5	1
Other ..	156	4240	117	271	355	201	154	1	3582	3549	33	8
Gambling ..												
	460	6473	525	374	705	445	260	1	5297	5180	117	29

APPENDIX VI
PERSONS DEALT WITH BY THE COURTS: 1955

District	Convicted												First offenders Ad or warning			
	Total arrested to court or summoned to court	Acquitted	Nolle prosecute	Awaiting trial at 31.12.55	Total	Death		Imprisonment			Whipping			Fine		
						M	F	M	F	J	M	J(c)		M	F	J(c)
	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	M	F	M	F	J	M	J(c)	M	F	J(c)	(10)
• Chobe (Headquarters Kasane)	161	7	-	-	155	-	-	28	-	-	1	1	118	7	-	-
• Francistown	1,056	62	-	-	998	-	-	377	25	-	5	10	402	123	3	53
• Gaborone	174	9	-	-	165	-	-	58	-	-	-	-	75	25	6	6
• Ghanzi	299	11	-	-	292	-	-	61	-	-	4	8	191	17	-	11
• Kgalega (Headquarters Tsabong)	259	15	-	-	244	-	-	27	-	-	-	1	200	16	-	-
• Kgatleng (Headquarters Mochudi)	249	18	-	-	231	-	-	79	-	-	-	-	129	20	-	3
• Kweneng (Headquarters Molepolole)	113	5	4	1	103	-	-	28	2	-	-	1	46	26	-	-
• Lobatse (Headquarters Serowe)	281	2	-	1	278	-	-	33	3	4	-	-	183	51	4	-
• Ngamit (Headquarters Maun)	217	3	9	-	206	-	-	81	4	-	1	-	112	2	-	6
• Ngwato (Headquarters Serowe)	1,024	40	-	-	985	-	-	169	17	-	1	18	544	163	-	73
• Nkwaketse (Headquarters Kanye)	142	2	-	-	140	-	-	19	-	-	-	1	120	-	-	-
• Tuli Block (Headquarters Macheaneng)	181	35	-	-	146	-	-	47	-	-	-	-	95	4	-	-
Total	4,156	209	13	2	3,943	-	-	1,007	51	4	12	41	2,215	454	7	152

M : Male Adults — F : Female Adults — J : Juveniles (under 18)

- Chobe : 1 male adult was sentenced to both Imprisonment and whipping ;
- Francistown : 4 male adults were sentenced to both Imprisonment and whipping ;
- Ghanzi : 4 male adults were sentenced to both Imprisonment and whipping ;
- Kgalega : 1 male adult was sentenced to both Imprisonment and whipping ;
- Ngwato : 1 male adult was sentenced to both Imprisonment and whipping ;

APPENDIX VII

**RETURN OF DISEASES, INJURIES AND CAUSES OF DEATH FOR
THE YEAR 1955**

IN-PATIENTS OUT-PATIENTS

DISEASES	Remaining in Hos- pital at end of 1954	Yearly Total		Total Cases Treat- ed	Remaining in Hos- pital at end of 1955	Male	Female
		Admissions	Deaths				
1. Tuberculosis of respiratory system	75	310	15	385	77	502	579
2. Tuberculosis of meninges and central nervous system	1	18	1	19	2	4	6
3. Tuberculosis of intestines, peritoneum and mesenteric glands	5	23	4	28	3	25	32
4. Tuberculosis of bones and joints	19	37	—	56	13	38	28
5. Tuberculosis, all other forms	1	41	—	42	3	167	168
6. Congenital syphilis	2	12	1	14	—	550	637
7. Early syphilis	—	19	—	19	—	836	1034
8. Tabes dorsalis	—	5	—	5	—	1	—
9. General paralysis of insane	—	—	—	—	—	1	—
10. All other syphilis	—	34	2	34	1	1562	2567
11. Gonococcal infections	2	111	1	113	3	2453	3631
12. Typhoid fever	1	6	1	7	—	2	4
13. Paratyphoid fever and other Salmonella infections	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
14. Cholera	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15. Brucellosis (undulant fever)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
16. (a) Bacillary dysentery	2	37	5	39	2	276	257
(b) Amoebiasis	—	23	1	23	2	24	16
(c) Other unspecified forms of dysentery	1	12	—	13	—	275	337
17. Scarlet fever	—	—	—	—	—	4	3
18. Streptococcal sore throat	—	36	—	36	—	613	790
19. Erysipelas	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
20. Septicaemia and pyaemia	—	4	1	4	—	6	—
21. Diphtheria	2	41	12	43	1	31	17

This form is adapted in accordance with the "Manual of the International Statistical Classification of Diseases, Injuries and Causes of Death, World Health Organization, Geneva, 1948"

22. Whooping cough	4	65	4	69	2	650	780
23. Meningococcal infections ..	-	10	1	10	-	3	8
24. Plague	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
25. Leprosy	1	1	-	2	1	16	16
26. Tetanus	1	5	2	6	1	4	2
27. Anthrax	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
28. Acute poliomyelitis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
29. Acute infectious encephalitis ..	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
30. Late effects of acute poliomyelitis and acute infectious encephalitis ..	-	1	-	1	-	-	-
31. Smallpox	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
32. Measles	-	65	1	65	6	354	533
33. Yellow fever	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
34. Infectious hepatitis	-	10	1	10	-	21	22
35. Rabies	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
36. (a) Louse-borne epidemic typhus	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(b) Flea-borne epidemic Typhus (murine)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(c) Tick-borne epidemic typhus	-	3	-	3	-	-	-
(d) Mite-borne typhus	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(e) Other and unspecified typhus	-	1	-	1	-	5	1
37. (a) Vivax malaria (benign tertian)	-	2	-	2	-	2	-
(b) Malariae malaria (quartan)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(c) Falciparum malaria (malignant tertian)	1	234	3	235	2	702	720
(d) Blackwater fever	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(e) Other and unspecified forms of malaria	-	70	-	70	-	174	204
38. (a) Schistosomiasis vesical (S. Laematobium)	-	8	-	8	-	21	13
(b) Schistosomiasis intestinal (S. mansoni)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(c) Schistosomiasis pulmonary (S. japonicum)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(d) Other and unspecified schistosomiasis	-	-	-	-	-	21	9
39. Hydatid disease	-	1	-	1	-	-	1
40. (a) Onchocerciasis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(b) Loiasis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(c) Filariasis (bancrofti)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(d) Other filariasis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
41. Ankylostomiasis	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
42. (a) Tapeworm infestation and other cestode infestations	-	26	-	26	-	190	205
(b) Ascariasis	-	6	-	6	-	169	157
(c) Guinea worm (dracunculosis)	-	-	-	-	-	3	1
(d) Other disease due to helminths	-	7	-	7	-	49	76
43. (a) Lymphogranuloma venereum	-	1	-	1	-	22	18
(b) Granuloma inguinale, venereal	-	2	-	2	-	-	-

43. (c) Other and unspecified venereal diseases					7	4
(d) Foodpoisoning infection and intoxication		3	3	-	5	5
(e) Relapsing fever		3	3		24	34
(f) Leptospirosis icterohaemorrhagica (Weil's disease)					-	-
(g) Yaws					3	-
(h) Chickenpox		7	7	1	83	92
(i) Dengue					-	-
(j) Trachoma		9	9		22	44
(k) Sandfly fever					-	-
(l) Leishmaniasis					-	-
(m) a Trypanosomiasis gambiensis					-	-
b Trypanosomiasis rhodesiensis		4	4	2	-	-
c Other and unspecified Trypanosomiasis					-	-
(n) Dermatophytosis					5	9
(o) Scabies		27	27		1465	1737
(p) All other diseases classified as infective and parasitic					41	35
44. Malignant neoplasm of buccal cavity and pharynx ..		1	1		38	57
45. Malignant neoplasm of oesophagus	1	2	3		2	2
46. Malignant neoplasm of stomach		4	4		54	42
47. Malignant neoplasm of intestine, except rectum		3	1	3	-	2
48. Malignant neoplasm of rectum		2	1	2	3	2
49. Malignant neoplasm of larynx		1	1		-	1
50. Malignant neoplasm of trachea, and of bronchus and lung not specified as secondary					-	1
51. Malignant neoplasm of breast		3	-	3	-	11
52. Malignant neoplasm of cervix uteri	1	10	1	11	1	20
53. Malignant neoplasm of other and unspecified parts of uterus		4	1	4	2	11
54. Malignant neoplasm of prostate		1	1	1	2	-
55. Malignant neoplasm of skin		8	8	3	13	31
56. Malignant neoplasm of bone and connective tissue ..	1	4	5		6	4
57. Malignant neoplasm of all other and unspecified sites		14	1	14	1	45
58. Leukaemia and aleukaemia ..		1	1	1	-	1
59. Lymphosarcoma and other neoplasms of lymphatic and haematopoietic system					-	-

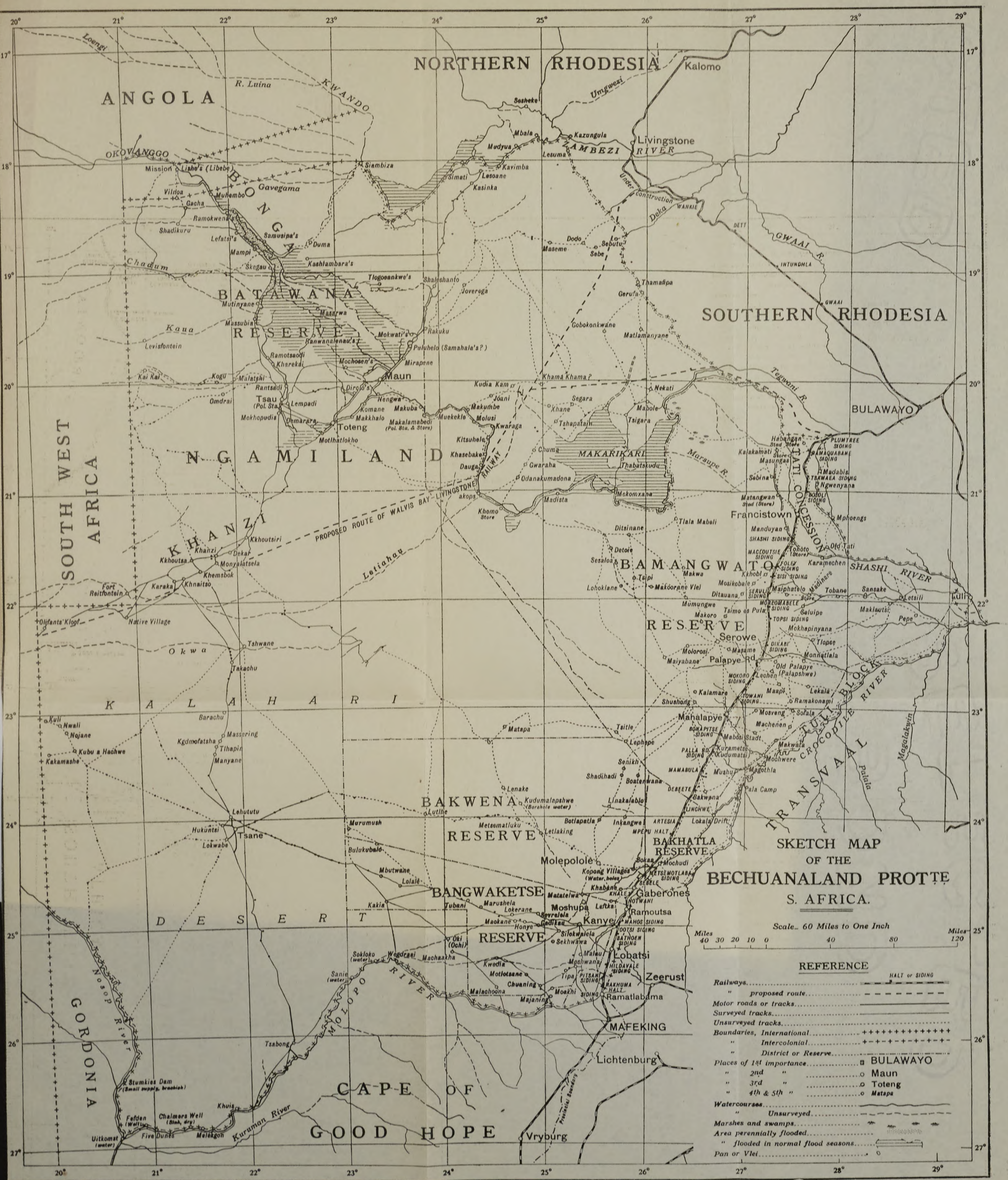
60. Benign neoplasms and neoplasms of unspecified nature	3	135	2	138	4	115	314
61. Nontoxic goitre		2	1	2		—	7
62. Thyrotoxicosis with or without goitre		1		1		—	6
63. Diabetes mellitus						—	—
64. (a) Beriberi		1		1		23	29
(b) Pellagra		28		28		240	311
(c) Scurvy		5		5		170	207
(d) Other deficiency states	3	66	9	69	3	485	760
65. (a) Pernicious and other hyperchromic anaemias	1	5		6		40	42
(b) Iron deficiency anaemias (hypochromic)		11		11	3	117	573
(c) Other specified and unspecified anaemias		5		5		113	293
66. (a) Asthma		98		98		416	559
(b) All other allergic disorder, endocrine, metabolic and blood diseases		37	3	37	3	341	398
67. Psychoses	21	16		37	24	21	24
68. Psychoneuroses and disorders of personality	1	12		13	2	64	121
69. Mental deficiency		8		8		18	20
70. Vascular lesions affecting central nervous system		14	3	14		18	21
71. Nonmeningococcal meningitis		9	2	9		4	3
72. Multiple sclerosis						—	—
73. Epilepsy	2	16		18	1	59	64
74. Inflammatory diseases of eye	2	91		93	4	1084	1256
75. Cataract	1	21		22		39	38
76. Glaucoma		3		3		11	9
77. (a) Otitis externa		5		5		179	194
(b) Otitis media and mastoiditis		29		29	2	354	407
(c) Other inflammatory diseases of ear		2		2		275	386
78. (a) All other diseases and conditions of eye		28		28		430	482
(b) All other diseases of the nervous system and sense organs	—	13	—	13	1	218	268
79. Rheumatic fever	3	20	—	23	—	110	108
80. Chronic rheumatic heart disease	—	64	9	64	2	90	106
81. Arteriosclerotic and degenerative heart disease	1	23	6	24	—	33	39
82. Other disease of heart	8	34	8	42	—	231	280
83. Hypertension with heart disease	—	27	6	27	2	49	28
84. Hypertension without mention of heart	—	32	1	32	—	46	50
85. Diseases of arteries	—	11	1	11	1	9	8
86. Other diseases of circulatory system	—	29	2	29	1	85	107
87. Acute upper respiratory infections	3	168	—	171	3	2001	2386
88. Influenza	2	50	—	52	—	728	871

89. Lobar pneumonia	6	226	10	232	3	331	339
90. Bronchopneumonia	3	247	16	250	7	258	293
91. Primary atypical, other and unspecified pneumonia . .	1	72	1	73	—	129	125
92. Acute bronchitis	1	47	1	48	—	957	1028
93. Bronchitis, chronic and unqualified	—	100	—	100	—	1824	2072
94. Hypertrophy of tonsils and adenoids	—	94	—	94	3	393	585
95. Empyema and abscess of lung	1	8	4	9	1	7	3
96. Pleurisy	8	46	—	54	1	82	94
97. (a) Pneumoconiosis	—	—	—	—	—	24	—
(b) All other respiratory diseases	—	33	1	33	—	968	1172
98. (a) Dental caries	—	8	—	8	—	960	1372
(b) All other diseases of teeth and supporting structures	—	35	1	35	—	413	441
99. Ulcer of stomach	—	6	—	6	—	11	—
100. Ulcer of duodenum	—	1	—	1	—	15	17
101. Gastritis and duodenitis . .	—	37	1	37	—	555	721
102. Appendicitis	2	79	2	81	1	52	65
103. Intestinal obstruction and hernia	1	32	2	33	—	241	242
104. (a) Gastro-enteritis and colitis between 4 weeks and 2 years	—	100	11	100	2	1209	1289
(b) Gastro-enteritis and colitis, ages 2 years and over	—	106	—	106	—	738	791
(c) Chronic enteritis and ulcerative colitis	—	1	—	1	—	42	59
105. Cirrhosis of liver	1	12	3	13	—	35	31
106. Cholelithiasis and cholecystitis	—	7	—	7	—	29	46
107. Other diseases of digestive system	4	80	2	84	2	2806	4626
108. Acute nephritis	—	12	2	12	—	66	49
109. Chronic, other and unspecified nephritis	2	12	2	14	1	148	94
110. Infections of kidney	—	35	—	35	—	199	249
111. Calculi of urinary system . .	—	2	—	2	—	13	34
112. Hyperplasia of prostate . .	1	9	—	10	1	10	—
113. Diseases of breast	1	20	—	21	—	—	237
114. (a) Hydrocele	—	14	—	14	—	35	—
(b) Disorders of menstruation	1	115	—	116	—	—	4107
(c) All other disease of the genito-urinary system . .	10	318	1	328	8	1059	4261
115. Sepsis of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium . .	—	38	—	38	1	—	74
116. Toxaemias of pregnancy and the puerperium	1	10	—	11	1	—	29
117. Haemorrhage of pregnancy and childbirth	4	50	1	54	—	—	41
118. Abortion without mention of sepsis or toxæmia	3	117	1	120	5	—	248
119. Abortion with sepsis	—	26	—	26	1	—	42

120. (a) Other complications of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium ..	8	140	10	148	9	-	1062
(b) Delivery without complications ..	35	1740	-	1775	43	-	-
121. Infections of skin and subcutaneous tissue ..	4	170	-	174	2	2852	3495
122. Arthritis and spondylitis ..	1	44	-	45	2	423	502
123. Muscular rheumatism and rheumatism, unspecified ..	2	59	-	61	-	1919	2279
124. Osteomyelitis and periostitis ..	5	30	1	35	3	65	29
125. Ankylosis and acquired musculo-skeletal deformities ..	1	5	-	6	1	15	11
126. (a) Chronic Ulcer of Skin (including tropical ulcer) ..	1	17	-	18	-	138	119
(b) All other diseases of skin ..	-	90	2	90	1	1094	1377
(c) All other diseases of musculo-skeletal system ..	1	42	-	43	1	467	658
127. Spina bifida and meningocele ..	-	3	1	3	-	2	4
128. Congenital malformations of circulatory system ..	-	3	-	3	-	1	-
129. All other congenital malformations ..	-	21	2	21	-	40	45
130. Birth injuries ..	-	2	1	2	-	2	5
131. Postnatal asphyxia and atelectasis ..	-	10	1	10	-	-	-
132. (a) Diarrhoea of newborn (under 4 weeks) ..	-	6	-	6	-	32	23
(b) Ophthalmia neonatorum ..	-	27	-	27	-	2	1
(c) Other infections of newborn ..	-	2	1	2	-	47	43
133. Haemolytic disease of newborn ..	-	1	1	1	-	1	-
134. All other defined diseases of early infancy ..	5	19	2	24	-	201	181
135. Ill-defined diseases peculiar to early infancy and immaturity, unqualified ..	-	179	5	179	3	153	176
136. Senility without mention of psychosis ..	-	11	3	11	-	52	67
137. (a) Pyrexia of unknown origin ..	1	46	3	47	-	71	82
(b) Observation, without need for further medical care ..	30	1795	-	1825	45	862	6336
(c) All other ill-defined causes of morbidity ..	2	203	2	205	6	733	1539
Accidents, Poisonings, and Violence (External Cause) A.E.							
138. Motor vehicle accidents ..	1	38	1	39	1	55	22
139. Other transport accidents ..	5	49	2	54	4	84	30
140. Accidental poisoning ..	1	13	1	14	1	17	7
141. Accidental falls ..	4	194	1	198	8	786	564
142. Accident caused by machinery ..	1	16	-	17	2	64	12
143. Accident caused by fire and explosion of combustible material ..	-	76	9	76	5	522	382

144. Accident caused by hot substance, corrosive liquid, steam and radiation . . .	5	73	1	78	3	160	144
145. Accident caused by firearm . .	—	8	1	8	—	16	—
146. Accidental drowning and submersion	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
147. Foreign body entering eye and adnexa	2	13	—	15	1	117	78
Foreign body entering other orifice	—	28	—	28	—	74	68
Accidents caused by bites and stings of venomous animals and insects . .	2	42	—	44	2	138	100
Other accidents caused by animals	—	41	—	41	6	222	75
All other accidental causes . .	7	96	—	103	6	593	329
148. Suicide and self inflicted injury	1	6	1	7	—	8	4
149. Homicide and injury purposely inflicted by other persons (not in war)	4	116	4	120	3	223	223
150. Injury resulting from operations of war	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total	352	10146	232	10498	381	45670	70772

MORIJA PRINTING WORKS
MORIJA — BASUTOLAND



SKETCH MAP
OF THE
BECHUANALAND PROTTE
S. AFRICA.

Scale: 60 Miles to One Inch
Miles 40 30 20 10 0 40 80 120

REFERENCE	
Railways.....	HALT or SIDING
" proposed route.....	
Motor roads or tracks.....	
Surveyed tracks.....	
Unsurveyed tracks.....	
Boundaries, International.....	+++++
" Intercolonial.....	+++++
" District or Reserve.....	+++++
Places of 1st importance.....	■ BULAWAYO
" 2nd ".....	○ Maun
" 3rd ".....	○ Toteng
" 4th & 5th ".....	○ Matapa
Watercourses.....	
" Unsurveyed.....	
Marshes and swamps.....	
Area perennially flooded.....	
" flooded in normal flood seasons.....	
Pan or Vlei.....	

ANNUAL REPORTS

BASUTOLAND	GOLD COAST	N. RHODESIA
BECHUANALND	HONG KONG	NYASALAND
PROTECTORATE	JAMAICA	SARAWAK
BRITISH GUIANA	KENYA	SIERRA LEONE
BR. HONDURAS	FED. OF MALAYA	SINGAPORE
BRUNEI	MAURITIUS	SWAZILAND
CYPRUS	NIGERIA	TRINIDAD
FIJI	NORTH BORNEO	UGANDA

BIENNIAL REPORTS

ADEN	GIBRALTAR	ST. VINCENT
*BAHAMAS	*GILBERT AND	*SEYCHELLES
*BARBADOS	ELLICE IS.	SOLOMON IS.
BERMUDA	*GRENADA	*SOMALILAND
CAYMAN IS.	LEEWARD IS.	*TONGA
DOMINICA	NEW HEBRIDES	TURKS AND
*FALKLAND IS.	*ST. HELENA	CAICOS IS.
*GAMBIA	ST. LUCIA	ZANZIBAR

* These territories will produce a Report for 1954-55 and the remainder for 1955-56.

A standing order for selected Reports or for the complete series will be accepted by any one of the Bookshops of H.M. Stationery Office at these addresses :

†York House, Kingsway, London W.C.2 ;

†423 Oxford Street, London W.1. ;

13a Castle Street, Edinburgh 2 ;

39 King Street, Manchester 2 ;

2 Edmund Street, Birmingham 3 ;

109 St. Mary Street, Cardiff ;

Tower Lane, Bristol 1 ;

80 Chichester Street, Belfast.

A deposit of £6 (six pounds) should accompany standing orders for the complete series.

†Post Orders for these Bookshops should be sent to P.O. Box 569, London, S.E.1.

Orders may also be placed through any bookseller



316.81
G798
1956
unb



Bechuanaland Protectorate 1956

LONDON
HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE

1957

COMMONWEALTH RELATIONS OFFICE

Gt. Brit. Africa and the Commonwealth

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE

Report for the Year
1956

LONDON

HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE

1957

CONTENTS

PART I

General Review	page 3
--------------------------	--------

PART II

<i>Chapter</i> 1	Population	11
2	Occupations, Wages and Labour Organisation .	11
3	Public Finance and Taxation	14
4	Currency and Banking	30
5	Commerce	30
6	Production	32
7	Social Services	
	Education	43
	Public Health	47
	Housing and Town Planning	51
	Social Welfare	52
8	Legislation	53
9	Justice, Police and Prisons	55
10	Public Utilities and Public Works	61
11	Communications	66
12	Press, Broadcasting, Films and Government Information Services	69
13	Local Forces	69

PART III

<i>Chapter</i> 1	Geography and Climate	70
2	History	72
3	Administration	79
4	Weights and Measures	78
5	Reading List	78
APPENDICES: Official Publications		80

A map will be found facing the last page

316.81

G 798

PART I

GENERAL REVIEW OF THE MOST IMPORTANT EVENTS AND DEVELOPMENTS OF THE YEAR

During the financial year 1956-57, for the first time since 1940-41, the Bechuanaland Protectorate was subsidized by a grant-in-aid from the United Kingdom in order that the standard of administration should be raised to a level comparable with that of neighbouring countries. The estimated amount required for the financial year 1956-57 was £165,000 and the draft estimates for 1957-58 have been prepared on the assumption that a further grant-in-aid of £635,000 will be made during that year.

In addition to this external aid, approval was received in 1956 for grants from the Colonial Development and Welfare Fund to allow for expenditure totalling £1,300,000 between 1955 and 1960 on schemes designed to improve the economy of the Territory such as soil conservation, geological survey, and surface and underground water supplies. Other schemes are designed to raise the standard of Government agricultural, educational, medical, road construction and veterinary services.

Twenty-one Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Schemes were in operation during the year. A statement showing the year's working of each scheme will be found in Appendix I, and there are notes on the progress of the schemes in Appendix II.

Revenue during the financial year 1955-56 amounted to £1,153,694 and expenditure to £1,277,775 (both inclusive of Colonial Development and Welfare Fund schemes), which resulted in a deficit of £124,081 compared with a deficit of £24,064 at the end of the previous financial year.

The public debt amounted to £100,371 on the 31st March, 1956, compared with £9,346 the previous year. The marked increase was due largely to the raising in March, 1956, of an inter-Colonial loan for European Government housing. This loan (£92,360) was raised at $5\frac{3}{4}$ per cent. In November, 1956, a loan of £34,630 at $5\frac{3}{4}$ per cent. was raised for African Government housing and a further European housing loan amounting to £115,370 at $5\frac{3}{4}$ per cent. was raised in the same month. It is hoped to raise a further loan of £160,000 in 1957-58 for housing of European and African officials.

A population census was taken during the year for the first time since 1946. The figure for Africans was not available at the end of the

year, but that for Europeans showed an increase of 40 per cent. from 2,379 to 3,173. The rise in the European population was especially marked in the Tati District where, largely as a result of sales of agricultural land which took place in 1955 and 1956, there was an increase of 56 per cent. from 427 to 667. A classification of home languages shows that 1,709 Europeans are Afrikaans-speaking and 1,427 English-speaking. The main religious denomination among the Europeans is the Dutch Reformed Church, of which there are 1,466 adherents compared with 810 Anglicans, 260 Methodists, 191 Roman Catholics and 115 Presbyterians. Twelve Europeans had incomes of £5,000 a year and over.

The figure for people of mixed descent declined by 37 per cent. from 1,081 to 676. In all previous censuses, however, there have been marked fluctuations in the figures for Euraficans, who tend to be absorbed into either the African or European communities, depending upon their dominant characteristics. This trend is particularly noticeable in Kanye and in the Kgalagadi and Molepolole Districts where the Coloured community as such has almost completely classified itself as either European or African.

The number of Asians in the Protectorate has steadily increased from 52 in 1921 to 248 in 1956. This increase was especially marked between 1946 and 1956, when their number was more than doubled. It is interesting to note that, whereas in 1946 only 18 of the 94 Asians claimed British nationality, 240 did so in the latest census.

An event of great political importance was the settlement of the Bamangwato problem announced by Her Majesty's Government in September. This settlement was made possible by Seretse Khama's renunciation of the Chieftainship for himself and his children and allowed him to return to the Bamangwato Reserve as a private citizen. It was agreed that early steps should be taken to form a Tribal Council on which both Tshekedi Khama and Seretse Khama would be permitted to serve and that, when Seretse had returned to the Reserve, Tshekedi Khama should be released from his undertakings to refrain from political activities.

On the 26th of September the Resident Commissioner read an announcement conveying the British Government's decision to the Tribe at Serowe, and during the course of the day the same announcement was made at 16 other centres in the Reserve by District Officers. In his speech at Serowe the Resident Commissioner urged the people to unite and settle their differences so that all might work together for the good of the Tribe.

At all centres the announcement was received calmly, and initial satisfaction was expressed at the prospect of Seretse's early return. Seretse returned from the United Kingdom in October and soon afterwards personally informed the Tribe of his decision both at Serowe and at meetings at all the major centres in the Reserve. At these meetings the settlement was accepted by the people with barely a dissentient voice and this augured well for the future. Both Seretse Khama and Tshekedi Khama affirmed their intention to support Rasebolai

Kgamane, the African Authority, and it was possible to report at the end of the year that political agitation and intrigue, which in recent years has become part of the way of life of the Bamangwato Reserve, had largely disappeared. Mrs. Seretse Khama and her two children returned to Serowe at the beginning of November.

It is an essential part of the settlement that a Tribal Council of an advisory nature, based on a system of Area Councils in the Reserve, should be established and a committee composed of Government and Tribal members was appointed to submit recommendations on the constitution and organization of such Councils. This committee sat for the first time in December and further meetings were due to take place the following month.

The Colonial Development Corporation's abattoir at Lobatsi completed another successful year of operation. The number of cattle processed during the year was 68,715 compared with 67,084 in 1955. Carcase meat was sold mainly to the traditional markets of the Union of South Africa, Northern Rhodesia and the Belgian Congo.

Trading conditions for the marketing of this meat were difficult since the Union Meat Board abolished controlled prices on the 16th January, 1956, and substituted floor prices, with the obligation that all meat marketed in the controlled areas of the Union should be auctioned at Union auction floors in these areas. This new system of marketing had disadvantages for the Lobatsi Abattoir since selling prices depended, to some extent, on market conditions on the day the meat arrived at the auction floors.

Sales of carcase meat to northern markets continued at a high level during 1956 although, at times, the Northern Rhodesian demand was affected by local strikes. There was also a relaxation of Federal inter-territorial meat controls.

Bechuanaland producers continued to receive Johannesburg parity during 1956 for all cattle offered for slaughter at the abattoir but, owing to the abolition of Witwatersrand controlled prices, Johannesburg parity now became a fluctuating price. It was necessary to evolve a simplified pay-out system which would obviate the abattoir having to pay on actual day to day prices. For the second half of January, as an interim measure, the abattoir paid the producer guaranteed floor prices plus a premium. From the 1st February onwards, the abattoir made an initial payment to producers, on delivery of the cattle to the abattoir, consisting of the floor prices less certain deductions. Following the end of each month, producers then received an additional payment for cattle marketed during that month to bring the total payment up to the actual average auction price, grade for grade, as announced by the Union Meat Board.

At times during the year the abattoir had difficulty in disposing of carcase meat and the producers' slaughter quotas had to be restricted and slaughter cattle on offer had to be held over for subsequent months. Nevertheless, by the end of 1956, all cattle on offer for slaughter had been accepted by the abattoir and, in fact, the abattoir was short of cattle for the latter months of the year.

During the year drilling for water on the Ghanzi cattle route took place for the first time with a new heavy capacity machine capable of boring to a depth of 1,500 feet. The chief purpose was to discover the best route from Ghanzi to Lobatsi through this arid and often saline Kalahari region, but insufficient water supplies had been found by the end of the year to enable a decision to be made as to whether the route from Ghanzi should go via Tsane or direct from Takachwane (some 50 miles south of Ghanzi) to Kang.

In view of the survey which is taking place of further farms in Crown Lands in areas adjoining the present developed farms at Ghanzi and the proposed allocation of partly developed holdings in the area at present leased to the Colonial Development Corporation on the Molopo River, a European Land Settlement Committee was appointed during the year. This Committee, which is composed of both official and unofficial members, will advise the Resident Commissioner not only on the selection of applicants for land but also on general matters of policy regarding the disposal of Crown Lands to Europeans in the Protectorate.

The Ghanzi farm survey is progressing well despite veld fires which have hampered observations. The survey of the western section comprising 50 farms has been completed and work is now proceeding on the eastern section. The survey is an essential condition both of an improvement in the position of the existing farmers and of an extension of the settlement, and its progress has made possible the submission of plans to the High Commissioner for the general development of the area. It is the Government's intention at Ghanzi to help and encourage resident farmers to obtain a good living for themselves and their families, to conserve and improve the land, and to improve the economy of the Territory by increased ranching activities.

Development has gone ahead in the Tuli Block, where more than 4,000 acres are under irrigation on those farms which lie along the Limpopo River. Cotton is now being successfully cultivated and oranges from the Tuli Block are eagerly sought on the Bulawayo market. Tobacco grown in this progressive area already supplies a high proportion of the Territory's leaf demand, and irrigated wheat and dry-land ground nuts are other prominent crops. The cultivation of maize for local consumption is increasing and there is little doubt that, but for its isolated position, this area could be supplying a great many food needs in the Territory. The improvement of communications between the Tuli Block and the railway line is an urgent need and is receiving attention.

Extensive work was undertaken during the year on improving the Territory's roads. Better equipment has been purchased and the standard of the main north-south road has been greatly improved. Work also began on the Maun-Francistown road, where 120 miles had been gravelled, widened and cambered by the end of December.

A new Kalahari bush road was cut and graded direct from Takachwane to Kang, where it joined an existing track via Kukong and Kakia to Bray in the Union. Although this new section is sandy, very

good travelling times have been made over it and it has reduced the distance from Ghanzi to Mafeking by some 70 miles to a figure of about 470 miles.

Mining companies continued to show considerable interest in the mineral potentialities of the Protectorate. This interest is directed mainly towards the Bushman Mine copper deposits north-west of Francistown, the nickel copper occurrence at Magogophate in the north-eastern Bamangwato Reserve, the potential coalfields in the Palapye and Mamabula-Debeeti-Artesia areas and the salt deposits in the Makarikari region. Negotiations have started for rights to prospect in two Tribal Territories.

It has for long been agreed that the inhabitants of the townships of Francistown and Lobatsi, hitherto unrated, should not only contribute more towards the physical development of those townships, but should also be given a greater part in the management of their own affairs. Following, therefore, on the promulgation of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Townships Proclamation, No. 66 of 1955, by which the High Commissioner was empowered to declare any place to be a township (other than a place within a tribal reserve or in the Barolong Farms) and the Resident Commissioner was empowered to make regulations for the good government of such townships, preliminary work was done during the year on draft Township Regulations. The Regulations drafted after consultation with the inhabitants of both Francistown and Lobatsi allowed for a large measure of autonomy of the Township Authorities which were to be constituted, but subsequent study has made it clear that an initial measure of training will be required, and the Regulations, therefore, which are being recommended, will provide for considerable official representation on the Township Authorities.

The Regulations will also provide for the constitution of Village Authorities at Ghanzi and Gaberones, which are developing rapidly, a development likely to accelerate once the sale of land at those centres becomes possible. It is considered that at these places too the public should be brought more into the management of local affairs.

Concurrently with Township Regulations, a Town Planning Proclamation was drafted to give Government control of development in all townships, and of building activities throughout the Territory. This long overdue measure is most necessary: no control has hitherto been possible, with the result that buildings and township lay-outs in the Territory are below the normal standards of neighbouring territories. Under the Town Planning Proclamation, Building Regulations are to be issued, and the most desirable form of such regulations is still being considered.

The imminent creation of townships, and the proposed control of town planning and development, called attention to the fact that the Public Health Regulations at present extant in the Territory are in many cases out of date, inadequate, not easy of reference, and difficult to apply in the new circumstances of Township Authorities. Draft consolidated regulations have therefore been drawn up with the object

of applying adequate public health control measures throughout the Territory in all circumstances, and these are at present being studied.

Although the necessary loan funds for the tele-communications project had not been obtained at the end of the year, approval was given to proceed with the first leg of the construction from Plumtree to Francistown. Plans were in hand at the end of the year to purchase all telegraph and telephone installations in the Territory from the Federal Government and the transfer will take place on the 1st January, 1957, from which date all postal services operated by the Union Government's Department of Posts and Telegraphs will also be taken over by the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government.

The Teacher Training College at Lobatsi was completed during the year at a cost of a little more than £40,000 and staff and students occupied the new buildings during the second half of the school year. The College will accommodate 100 students comfortably. Since almost half of the 600 teachers employed in the Protectorate are unqualified there is a steady and growing demand for the services of trained teachers. It is proposed to introduce a Primary Higher (post Junior Certificate) course in 1958 in addition to the present Primary Lower (post Standard VI) course.

The total numbers of students and pupils enrolled during the year throughout the Territory were as follows:

Teacher Training College	53
Secondary Schools	325
Primary Schools	24,125

Of the total, 14,962 were girls and 9,541 boys. The figures above show an increase of 34 per cent. and 18 per cent. in the number of secondary and primary school pupils respectively.

It was announced by the Secretary of State for Commonwealth Relations in October that Her Majesty the Queen had been pleased to approve the appointment of Sir Herbert Cox to be Chief Justice of the High Commission Territories in succession to Sir Harold Willan, C.M.G., M.C., who has retired. Sir Herbert, who was formerly Chief Justice of Northern Rhodesia and then Chief Justice of Tanganyika, took up his appointment in December.

Kebalepile Montshioa, the young Chief of the Barolong and son of the late Chief Letlomoreng was formally installed at Good Hope in May.

Two sessions of the Joint Advisory Council, two of the European Advisory Council and one of the African Advisory Council were held during the year.

The agenda at the fifth session of the Joint Advisory Council in February was a short one and the session was completed in one day. The principal items on the agenda were two draft laws, the draft Trading Proclamation to replace Proclamation No. 67 of 1953, and the draft Borehole Proclamation, which provided for the submission to the Director of Geological Survey of reports and samples in respect of all boreholes drilled in the Territory.

A special session in committee of the European Advisory Council

was held in April to discuss economic affairs. Discussion took place on the formation of a land bank, the necessity for a second abattoir in the north and the feasibility of establishing a meat canning plant. Agricultural and ranching development was reviewed and the introduction of a maize milling plant discussed. Other items on the agenda concerned income tax rates and a possible air freight service between Maun and Francistown.

The 36th Session of the African Advisory Council took place in June, the principal items for discussion being the constitution of the Council, which has since been drafted on a statutory basis, and a proposed increase in Native Tax. With regard to the latter, the Council recommended that with effect from the 1st January, 1958, the basic Native Tax should be increased from 28s. to 40s. and that simultaneously the rebate payable to Tribal Treasuries should be increased from 35% to 50%. The effect on Government revenues would be an increase of £9,200 a year and, on total Tribal Treasury revenues, an increase of £52,000 a year.

In July there was an extraordinary session of the Joint Advisory Council to discuss meat marketing arrangements.

At the 58th Session of the European Advisory Council in November items on the agenda included the question of stock theft, the control of noxious weeds, the situation of the proposed maize mill, and policy in regard to income tax. The Council also considered a draft Sub-Division of Land Proclamation designed to prevent the sub-division of land into sub-economic units.

The High Commissioner, Sir Percivale Liesching, G.C.M.G., K.C.B., K.C.V.O., and Lady Liesching visited the Protectorate in August. They entered the Territory at Francistown and visited Serowe, Mahalapye, Gaborones, Molepolole, Lobatsi, Mafeking and Tsabong. At Francistown and Serowe His Excellency met members of the Chambers of Commerce and at all stations he had discussions with Government officers and local residents on current problems.

Visitors to the Territory in March included Dr. E. B. Worthington, who is obtaining material for a new book on science and development south of the Sahara, and Miss M. Ingle, Assistant Director of Overseas Branches of the British Red Cross Society.

Sir Gilbert Laithwaite, G.C.M.G., K.C.I.E., C.S.I., Permanent Under-Secretary of State for Commonwealth Relations, visited the Protectorate from the 8th to the 11th April. Sir Gilbert visited five of the principal stations in the Territory in the course of which he had discussions with Government officers and members of the European Advisory Council, Chiefs and other leading inhabitants.

Visitors during May were Dr. E. A. Lewis, World Health Organisation Scientific Consultant, Mr. W. G. M. Lugton, Director of Social Welfare and Probation in Northern Rhodesia, and Professor J. S. Galbraith of the University of California. Mr. Graham Page, Conservative M.P. for Crosby, visited the Bamangwato Reserve at the end of May.

Mr. L. H. Bunker and Mr. T. W. Ellison, members of the Organisa-

tion and Methods Branch of the Treasury, visited the Territory in July.

Miss F. Gwilliam, O.B.E., Assistant Educational Adviser to the Secretary of State for the Colonies, visited the Southern Protectorate in September. In the same month Herr Schmidt-Lademann, the German Consul, accompanied by his wife, visited the Territory in a chartered aircraft piloted by himself.

PART II

CHAPTER 1

POPULATION

A census was taken towards the end of the year for the first time since 1946. The figure for Africans was not available at the time of going to press, but the other figures (with those for 1946 in brackets) were:

Europeans	.	.	.	.	3,173	(2,379)
Coloureds	.	.	.	.	676	(1,081)
Asiatics	.	.	.	.	248	(94)

The number of Africans in the 1946 census was 292,755.

European statistics maintained during the year show that there were 105 births and 18 deaths in 1956, which gives birth and death rates of 33.1 and 5.7 per thousand respectively. The respective 1955 figures were 29.8 and 4.6 per thousand.

The great majority of the people live in the eastern and north-western parts of the Territory; about one-half of the population live in villages of 1,000 or more inhabitants, though many of these spend a large part of their time at outlying cattle posts.

CHAPTER 2

OCCUPATIONS

WAGES AND LABOUR ORGANIZATIONS

Over ninety-five per cent. of the population is engaged in stock raising. A few Africans are employed as herds and drovers by European farmers, but the great majority are themselves the owners of livestock, which are cared for on a family or tribal basis. Native law and custom make it the duty of every male member of the tribe to do his part in the tending of the family livestock, and in consequence, there is little paid employment in the Protectorate. The principal occupations of the small number of African wage earners are:

	<i>Approximate Number</i>	<i>Average Wages per mensem</i>
Government Service	*2,260	£5 to £59
Agriculture	3,000	£3
Building	300	£6
Trade and Industry	2,000	£6
Domestic Service	2,000	£3

*This figure includes approximately 1,000 casual labourers.

Agricultural and domestic workers receive free rations and domestic servants are usually supplied with quarters. The majority of Government African employees are unskilled or semi-skilled, but there are also some clerks, policemen, teachers, nurses, dispensers, artisans, etc.

The normal working week is 45 hours, but there is some variation chiefly among agricultural workers and the hours for domestic servants are longer.

EMPLOYMENT AND WAGES

Government salaries for Europeans vary from £370 to £2,300 a year. There is a cost of living allowance which varies between eight and twelve per cent. of salaries for married men and half those rates for single men. A few Europeans are employed as farm managers and stores assistants.

There is no immigrant labour and little or no unemployment. About 15,200 men left the Territory during the year for work in neighbouring territories. Of these 12,102 went on contract to the Union mines and the remainder went independently to various other forms of employment. Recruitment of labour for the mines is strictly controlled under Cap. 64 of the Laws and is mainly in the hands of two well established firms, the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association and the Native Recruiting Corporation with headquarters in Johannesburg. The former organisation operates north of latitude 20° and the latter south of that parallel. The usual period of contract is nine months, after which most recruits return home. Many return to the mines for second or third periods.

COST OF LIVING

Price indices are not kept. The average prices of the principal commodities, compared with those in 1939 are as follows:

	1939			1956		
	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
Sugar per lb.			4½			7½
Tea per lb.		2	11		9	6½
Coffee per lb.		1	7		6	10
Salt per lb.			1			3½
Tobacco per lb.		2	6		6	6
Rice per lb.			4½		1	6
Maize meal per 180lb.	1	0	7	2	4	9
Maize per 200lb.		17	7	1	13	1½
Sorghum per 200lb.		14	9	2	4	2
Paraffin per 4 gallons		11	10½		19	6
Soap per bar			3½		1	9
Beef per lb.			3		1	8
Mutton per lb.					2	1
Butter per lb.		1	7		3	6½
Eggs per dozen			10½		2	4½
Wheat flour per 200lb.	1	8	0	4	9	5½
Brandy per bottle		6	6		13	2

LABOUR DEPARTMENT

There is no labour department. The care of labour and the administration of the laws relating to labour are in the hands of the District Commissioners.

INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS

There are no employers' organisations. Indeed, the only industries which can be described as such are the Chobe Concessions sawmill at Serondela, a gold mine and a kyanite mine in the Francistown District, an asbestos mine at Moshaneng, a creamery and a bonemeal factory at Francistown and the Colonial Development Corporation's abattoir at Lobatsi. There is one workers' organisation, the Francistown African Employees' Union. Membership is open to all, irrespective of calling, except Government and Railway employees. It has a nominal membership of 200 but has not hitherto been active.

LABOUR LEGISLATION

No labour legislation was enacted during the year.

INDUSTRIAL TRAINING

As the country is almost entirely pastoral there is little demand for industrial training. The Public Works Department trains a few mechanics and artisans and some agricultural teaching is undertaken in the schools.

CHAPTER 3

PUBLIC FINANCE AND TAXATION

The financial position of the Protectorate is as follows:

		£
General Revenue Balance on 1.4.1955		394,987
		1955-56
		<i>Approved Actual</i>
		<i>Estimate Figures</i>
		£ £
Ordinary Expenditure		1,139,493
Ordinary Revenue		1,093,315
		903,878 970,341
		—235,615 —122,974
(Surplus+)		122,974
(Deficit—)		272,013
Colonial Development and Welfare Deficit		1,107
General Revenue Balance on 1.4.1956		270,906
Under-issues from C.D. & W. Fund on 31.3.1956		5,960
		<u>276,866</u>

REVENUE AND EXPENDITURE

Revenue for 1955/56, including receipts from the Colonial Development and Welfare Fund, amounted to £1,153,694 and expenditure, including that on Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes, was £1,277,775. Details are as follows:

REVENUE		EXPENDITURE	
<i>Head</i>	<i>Amount</i>	<i>Head</i>	<i>Amount</i>
	£		£
Customs and Excise	. 200,420	Resident Commissioner	7,292
Taxes and Duties	. 333,975	Administration of	
		Justice	4,406
Licences	. 41,441	Agriculture	26,084
Fees of Court or Office		Air Service	1,295
and Earnings of De-		Allowances to Chiefs	590
partments	. 34,267	Audit	5,318
Posts and Telephones	152,229	Contributions to Native	
Judicial Fines	. 10,127	Treasuries	44,049
Revenue from Govern-		District Administration	51,347
ment Property	. 169,315	Education	63,492

PUBLIC FINANCE AND TAXATION

15

Reimbursements	10,231	Forests	1,834
Interest	4,550	General Clerical Service	51,442
Miscellaneous	13,786	Medical	114,736
		Miscellaneous	90,475
		Pensions and Gratuities	48,504
		Police	139,624
		Posts and Telegraphs	31,854
		Prisons	17,839
		Public Debt	1,335
		Public Works Department	90,240
		Public Works Recurrent	69,462
		Public Works Extraordinary	74,371
		Secretariat	23,873
		Stores Department	7,169
		Treasury	9,901
		Veterinary	101,741
		Contributions to Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes	15,042
Total Ordinary Revenue	970,341	Total Ordinary Expenditure	1,093,315
Colonial Development and Welfare Fund	183,353	Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes	184,460
	<u>1,153,694</u>		<u>1,277,775</u>

Deficit £124,081.

The following reflects the total Ordinary Revenue and Expenditure for the past ten years:

REVENUE

Year	Revenue	Grant-in-aid United Kingdom Treasury	Total
	£	£	£
1946-47	466,757	—	466,757
1947-48	483,029	—	483,029
1948-49	501,344	—	501,344
1949-50	568,438	—	568,438
1950-51	554,161	—	554,161
1951-52	770,043	—	770,043
1952-53	772,089	—	772,089
1953-54	908,255	—	908,255
1954-55	908,515	—	908,515
1955-56	970,341	—	970,341

EXPENDITURE										<i>Amount</i>
<i>Year</i>										£
1946-47	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	404,779
1947-48	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	475,503
1948-49	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	575,683
1949-50	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	570,646
1950-51	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	569,309
1951-52	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	620,087
1952-53	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	765,311
1953-54	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	891,700
1954-55	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	945,148
1955-56	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1,093,315

Expenditure on Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes during the past ten years was as follows:

<i>Year</i>										<i>Amount</i>
										£
1946-47	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	60,098
1947-48	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	47,589
1948-49	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	65,563
1949-50	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	105,399
1950-51	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	117,413
1951-52	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	137,065
1952-53	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	182,698
1953-54	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	123,305
1954-55	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	133,587
1955-56	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	184,460

MAIN HEADS OF REVENUE

The main heads of revenue for 1955/56 were Customs and Excise £200,420; Taxes and Duties £333,975; Posts and Telephones £152,229 and Revenue from Government Property £169,315. All Telegraph revenue accrued to the Southern Rhodesia Post Office who operated the telegraph in the Protectorate until the end of 1956.

PUBLIC DEBT

Public Debt amounted to £100,371 on the 31st March, 1956.

ASSETS AND LIABILITIES

The statement of Assets and Liabilities as at 31st March, 1956, is as follows:

PUBLIC FINANCE AND TAXATION

17

STATEMENT OF ASSETS AND LIABILITIES AS AT 31st MARCH, 1956

[illegible]

The above statement does not include (a) the sum of £5,959 15s. 7d. due from the Colonial Development and Welfare Fund in respect of under-issue as at 31st March, 1956, and (b) Public Debt amounting to £100,370 15s. 1d.

HEADS OF TAXATION

I CUSTOMS AND EXCISE £200,420

In accordance with the agreement concluded between the Governments of the Union of South African and the Bechuanaland Protectorate the latter receives 0.27622 per cent. of the total import and excise duty collected by the former. Import duty on Union-manufactured spirits, sparkling and fortified wine and malt is collected by the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government on import into the Protectorate at the following rates provided for in Proclamation 37 of 1951 and 34 of 1953:

Whisky	£3	0	0	per Imperial Proof Gallon
Brandy	1	7	6	"
Gin 'Class A'	1	7	6	"
Gin 'Class C'	2	0	0	"
Liqueurs	2	0	0	"
Sparkling Wine	9	0		per Imperial Gallon
Fortified Wine	2	11		per Imperial Gallon
Malt	4	0		per Standard Gallon

The total collections for 1955/56 amounted to £19,816.

The following table shows the total collections for the last six years under the Head Customs and Excise:

<i>Year</i>	<i>Total</i> £
1950-51	111,272
1951-52	132,249
1952-53	141,731
1953-54	175,961
1954-55	161,988
1955-56	200,420

The estimate for 1955-56 was exceeded by £14,120.

II TAXES AND DUTIES £333,975

(a) *Native Tax*

Ordinary £135,733: Proclamation 31 of 1949 as amended by Proclamation 81 of 1953 provides for a tax of £1 8s. 0d. per annum payable by every male Native of the apparent age of 18 years or more.

35% of ordinary tax collected in respect of areas where Native Administrations have been established is paid to the respective Native Treasuries.

The following table shows the total collections for the last ten years:

<i>Year</i>	<i>Total £</i>
1946-47	79,803
1947-48	82,564
1948-49	83,221
1949-50	86,425
1950-51	95,933
1951-52	103,531
1952-53	102,702
1953-54	133,818
1954-55	129,320
1955-56	135,733

The estimate for 1955/56 was exceeded by £15,733.

(b) Graded £2,731

Proclamation 16 of 1949 as amended by Proclamation 82 of 1953 provides for a graduated tax payable by all Natives and varying from 5/- per annum (for a taxpayer owning up to 9 head of stock or earning £48 per annum) to £10 per annum (for a taxpayer owning over 300 head of stock or earning over £500 per annum) with the exception of the Batlokwa, Bamalete and Bakgatla tribes who pay a tax based on the above assets varying from 10/- per annum to a maximum of £15 per annum in respect of the former two and £20 per annum in respect of the latter. Women and minors owning less than ten head of stock are not liable for tax nor is any Native under the age of twenty-one years who has attended a recognised school during the year. The estimate for the year was exceeded by £731. Government only receives Graded Tax collected in respect of districts in which there is no Native Treasury; in these areas the tax accrues to the Native Administrations.

Non-Native Poll Tax £3,506

Chapter 75 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws, as amended by Proclamation 23 of 1956, provides for a tax of £3 per annum payable in advance on the 1st July by all males who have attained the age of 21 years, have been resident in the Protectorate for 180 days prior to the beginning of the tax year (1st July) and who are not liable to pay Native Tax. The estimate for the year was exceeded by £406.

Income Tax £110,247

The following were the rates of tax, rebates and surcharges on taxable income for the year ended 30th June, 1955, as amended by Proclamation No. 58 of 1954:

Normal Tax

Public Companies: Five shillings and sixpence per £.

Private Companies and Unmarried Persons: Eighteen pence for each pound, increased by one-thousandth of a penny for each pound of the taxable income in excess of one pound. If the taxable income exceeds £10,000 the rate is 2s 4d. per £.

Married Persons: Fifteen pence for each pound, increased by one-thousandth of a penny for each pound of the taxable income in excess of one pound. If the taxable income exceeds £10,000 the rate is 2s. 1d. per £.

	£	s.	d.
<i>Rebates:</i> Married Person	31	0	0
Unmarried Person	23	0	0
Child under 18 years	10	0	0
Child 18-21 years (dependent)	10	0	0
Dependent	2	10	0
Insurance	1	3	per £ of
			premium with ma-
			ximum of £7 10s.
			(or £4 in the case
			of a contributor
			to a Provident or
			Pension Fund).

Surcharges: Married persons: 35% of the tax. Private Companies and unmarried persons: 45% of the tax.

Super Tax

Private Companies and Individuals: Two shillings in the pound plus one-four-hundredth of one penny for each pound of the income subject to super tax in excess of one pound less a rebate of £210 from the tax payable. There is a surcharge of 40% in the case of married persons and 45% in the case of unmarried persons and private companies. If the income subject to super tax exceeds £10,000 the rate is 4s. 1d. per £.

Public Companies: These are not liable to super tax.

The accompanying tables show the incidence of Income Tax in the Protectorate.

Cattle Export Tax £71,431

Proclamation 10 of 1952 and Government Notice 64 of 1952 provide for a tax of £1 upon every head of horned cattle exported from the Protectorate or slaughtered in the Colonial Development Corporation Abattoir. 2s. of each tax of £1 imposed is paid into the Cattle export Levy Fund which is used for the general benefit of the livestock industry. Collections exceeded the estimate by £8,431.

Transfer Duty £8,087

The Cape Act No. 5 of 1884 provides for transfer duty on immovable property at the rate of 2%. Proclamation 31 of 1944 provides for a surcharge of 1% on the dutiable amount which exceeds £1,000 but does not exceed £2,000, and 2% on the dutiable amount which exceeds £2,000. Collections were below the estimate by £1,413.

NORMAL TAX

Current Classification of Assessments issued in respect of Incomes for the year ended 30th June, 1955, during the year ended 30th June, 1956.

Income Category £	Number of Taxpayers			Amount of Taxable Income			Amount of Tax Payable			Total	
	Individuals		Companies	Total	Individuals		Companies	Individuals			Companies
	Married	Single			Married	Single		Married	Single		
301-400	1	42	9	£ 374	£ 14,073	£ 1,710	£ 1	£ 262	£ 295	£ 558	
401-500	1	47	3	499	22,558	1,395	2	805	122	929	
501-600	18	36	1	10,055	21,162	570	121	1,037	64	1,222	
601-700	23	30	3	16,267	20,828	2,005	359	1,235	226	1,820	
701-800	24	23	2	17,327	15,199	1,535	386	1,018	174	1,578	
801-900	54	21	—	46,467	17,891	—	1,042	1,292	—	2,334	
901-1000	50	10	2	46,687	9,427	1,932	1,198	722	221	2,141	
1001-1250	80	11	1	90,107	12,299	1,074	2,735	986	123	3,844	
1251-1500	59	7	3	80,467	9,647	4,095	3,315	887	682	4,884	
1501-1775	37	5	2	60,116	7,929	3,297	2,836	739	391	3,966	
1776-2000	30	7	—	55,802	12,662	—	3,246	1,248	—	4,494	
2001-3000	40	3	3	91,584	7,691	6,347	6,088	798	1,118	8,004	
3001-4000	15	—	2	52,381	—	6,403	5,563	—	820	6,383	
4001-7000	12	—	2	61,477	—	8,734	6,348	—	1,810	8,158	
Over 7000	3	—	2	23,314	—	24,277	2,751	—	4,760	7,511	
Total	447	242	35	652,924	171,366	63,374	35,991	11,029	10,806	57,826	

SUPER TAX

Current Classification of Assessments issued in respect of Incomes for the year ended 30th June, 1955, during the year ended 30th June, 1956

Income Category £	Number of Taxpayers			Amount of Super Taxable Income				Amount of Super Tax Payable			
	Individuals		Total	Individuals		Total	Compa- nies	Individuals		Total	
	Married	Single		Married	Single			Married	Single		
						£	£			£	£
Not exceed- ing 2000	24	3	27	44,666	5,736	50,402	—	410	84	494	
2001-3000	41	5	48	93,927	11,634	109,635	4,074	4,251	572	4,930	
3001-4000	17	2	21	53,236	6,817	66,456	6,403	6,998	647	8,274	
4001-7000	12	2	15	61,196	9,175	74,541	4,170	9,890	1,357	11,810	
Exceed- ing 7000	3	—	4	23,518	—	39,903	16,385	5,099	—	9,645	
Total	97	12	115	276,543	33,362	340,937	31,032	26,648	2,660	35,153	
			6							5,845	

Death Duties £386

The rates are laid down in Cap. 71 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws and are as follows:

(a) *Estate Duty*: Upon the first £2,000 of dutiable amount $\frac{1}{2}\%$. Upon so much of the dutiable amount as exceeds

£2,000 and does not exceed £3,000 — 1%

£3,000 and does not exceed £7,500 — 2%

£7,500 and does not exceed £10,000 — 3%

Thereafter the rate of estate duty upon each pound of the dutiable amount in excess of £10,000 shall be three-ten-thousandths of a pound for every completed one-hundred pounds or part thereof contained in the dutiable amount, subject to a maximum rate of six shillings and eight pence upon each pound.

(b) *Succession Duty*:

<i>Degree of relationship of Successor to Predecessor</i>	<i>Rate of Duty upon dutiable amount of succession</i>
(1) Where the successor is the direct descendant or ascendant of the predecessor	3%
(2) Where the successor is the brother or sister of the predecessor	5%
(3) Where the successor is the descendant of the brother or sister of the predecessor	8%
(4) Where the successor is otherwise related to the predecessor or is a stranger in blood or is in an institution	12%

Provided that:

(a) so much of any dutiable succession as exceeds ten thousand pounds in value shall be subject to an additional duty of one per cent. on the amount of such excess;

(b) where the successor is married to a person related by blood to the predecessor, the rate of the duty chargeable shall be determined by the relationship of whichever of the two spouses is more nearly related to the predecessor;

(c) where the predecessor was married to a person related by blood to the successor, the rate of chargeable duty shall be determined by the relationship of the successor to whichever of the predecessor and his or her spouse was more nearly related to the successor.

Collections were below the estimate by £614.

Export Duty — Game, Hides, Skins, Meat, etc.:

Chapter 114 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws, as amended by High Commissioner's Notices Nos. 34 of 1953 and 3 of 1954, provide for an export tax on the skins of hoofed game, ivory, game-heads, meat, rhino-horn, hippo tusks and teeth at a rate varying from 2d. per lb. in respect of hippo tusks or teeth to 5s. per lb. on unmanufactured ivory and rhino horn and 10s. per game head.

Export Tax — Bones

Government Notice No. 74 of 1954 provides for a tax of £5 per short

ton of 2,000lbs. on bones exported from the Territory, with the exception of the Ghanzi District and part of the Kgalagadi District.

Auction Tax

Proclamation No. 60 of 1954 provides for auction tax at the rate of £2 for every £100 on movable property and £1 for every £100 on immovable property.

The following table shows the total collections for the last six years under the head Taxes and Duties:

<i>Year</i>	<i>Total £</i>
1950-51	287,229
1951-52	275,060
1952-53	296,648
1953-54	330,731
1954-55	303,989
1955-56	333,975

III LICENCES £41,441

Arms and Ammunition £869

Chapter 87 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws provides for the licence of all firearms and for the control and issue of permits for the purchase of arms and ammunition and for the licence of dealers in arms and ammunition at the following rates:

(a) *Licence to possess an arm:*

Native	Free
Any other person	5s. 0d. per arm

(b) *Permits to purchase ammunition:*

Natives	
For the purchase of cartridges	5s. 0d.
For the purchase of gunpowder and percussion caps	2s. 6d.
For any other person	Free

(c) *Dealers in arms and ammunition* £5 p.a.

Collections exceeded the estimate by £38.

Trading £19,853

Proclamation 67 of 1953 provides for the issue of the following trading licences at the rates shown below:

(a) Aerated or Mineral Water Dealer: £1 10s. 0d. p.a.

(b) Baker: £7 10s. 0d. p.a.

(c) Banker: £50 p.a. for the first and only office and £25 p.a. for each and every other office. Business may also be transacted by an agency of not more than one day per week for fee of £5 p.a. if such agency is outside the districts in which the bank is situated.

(d) Blacksmith: £2 10s. 0d. p.a.

(e) Butcher: £7 10s. 0d. p.a.

(f) (i) Chemist or Druggist; (ii) General Dealer; (iii) Motor Garage; (iv) Wholesale Distributor: £20 p.a. where aggregate sales for pro-

ceeding year did not exceed £3,000, plus £2 10s. 0d. for every £1,000 or portion thereof over £3,000 with a maximum of £65 p.a.

(g) (i) Restaurant: £7 10s. 0d. p.a.; (ii) Restaurant exclusively for Native use: £3 15s. 0d. p.a.

(h) Pawnbroker: £10 p.a.

(i) (i) Produce Buyer, Residents: £3 p.a.; (ii) Produce Buyer, Non-Residents, £3 per quarter.

(j) Auctioneer: £40 p.a.

(k) Broker or Agent (except as to diamonds): £10 p.a.

(l) Commercial Traveller: £5 p.a.

(m) Driller: £5 p.a. per drill.

(n) External Agents, Resident: £20 p.a.; Non-Resident: £25 p.a.

(o) Hawker (Personal): £5 for every 3 months plus £5 for every additional vehicle for the same period.

(p) Insurance Company or Agent: (a) for every Insurance Company, Society or Association, £5 p.a. for the 1st year and 3d. in the pound or part of a pound on premium payable during the preceding year ended on the 31st December, with a minimum of £5 and a maximum of £50 for the second and subsequent years; (b) Agent: £10 p.a.

In addition, the following licences are provided for in the laws shown:

(a) Methylated Spirits Licence: £1 p.a. (Proclamation 18 of 1949).

(b) Livestock (Cap. 86 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws as amended by Proclamation 84 of 1953): (i) Livestock Buyers: £20 p.a. (ii) Livestock Buyers Agents: £10 p.a.; (iii) Livestock and Produce Buyers: £3 p.a.

(c) Hide Buyers (High Commissioner's Notice 22 of 1955) (i) Hide and Skin Buyers: £1 p.a.; (ii) Green Hide Buyers: £1 p.a.; (iii) Hide and Skin Exporters: £20 p.a.

Collections exceeded the estimate by £4,353.

Labour Agents and Runners £652

Chapter 64 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws provides for licences for labour recruiting agents and runners at the following rates:

Agents: £25 p.a.

Runners: £1 p.a.

Collections exceeded the estimate by £52.

Motor Drivers and Vehicles £17,234

Vehicles: Chapter 141 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws, as amended by Proclamation 75 of 1954, provides for the registration and licensing of motor vehicles, tractors and trailers and vehicles plying for hire at the following rates:

	£	s.	d.
Motor Cycle without side car	1	0	0 p.a.
Motor Cycle with side car	1	10	0 p.a.

Motor Vehicles and Tractors:

	£	s.	d.
Weighing 1500 lbs. and under	6	0	0 p.a.
1501 lbs. to 2500 lbs.	7	0	0 p.a.
2501 lbs. to 4000 lbs.	9	0	0 p.a.
4001 lbs. to 6000 lbs.	11	0	0 p.a.
6001 lbs. to 8000 lbs.	21	0	0 p.a.
8001 lbs. to 9000 lbs.	31	0	0 p.a.
9001 lbs. and over	36	0	0 p.a.

Trailers:

Weighing 1500 lbs. and under	3	0	0 p.a.
1501 lbs. to 2500 lbs.	4	0	0 p.a.
2501 lbs. to 4000 lbs.	7	0	0 p.a.
4001 lbs. to 6000 lbs.	12	0	0 p.a.
6001 lbs. to 8000 lbs.	24	0	0 p.a.
8001 lbs. to 9000 lbs.	36	0	0 p.a.
9001 lbs. and over	42	0	0 p.a.

Licence fees in respect of tractors and trailers used solely for the purpose of farming and lumbering operations are reduced by 50%.

No fee is payable on bulldozers. An additional fee of £2 p.a. is payable on vehicles and trailers plying for hire. The registration fee is 5s. per vehicle.

Drivers: Provisional licences: Motor Cycle 2s. 6d.—period of 3 months; Motor Vehicle 5s.—period of 3 months.

Drivers Licences: Motor Cycle 11s.; Motor Vehicle £1 1s. 0d.

Certificate of Competency 5s.

Collections exceeded the estimate by £3,234.

Liquor and Hotel £524

Cape Act No. 28 of 1883 and Chapter 84 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws provide for the following liquor licences:

Retail: £40 p.a.

Wholesale: £30 p.a.

Railways: £60 p.a.

Collections were below the estimate by £126.

Game £2,209

Chapter 114 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws, as amended by Proclamation 2 of 1948 and 3 of 1952, provides for the issue of Game Licences at the following rates:

Royal Game:

	£	s.	d.
Residents: 2 months	15	0	0
Whole Season	30	0	0
Non-Residents: 2 months	50	0	0
Whole season	100	0	0

Large Game:

Residents:	7 days	.	.	.	.	.	2	0	0
	14 days	.	.	.	.	.	4	0	0
	1 month	.	.	.	.	.	8	0	0
	2 months	.	.	.	.	.	12	0	0
	3 months	.	.	.	.	.	16	0	0
	Whole season	.	.	.	.	.	25	0	0
Non-Residents:	7 days	.	.	.	.	.	15	0	0
	14 days	.	.	.	.	.	25	0	0
	1 month	.	.	.	.	.	50	0	0
	2 months	.	.	.	.	.	75	0	0
	3 months	.	.	.	.	.	100	0	0
	Whole season	.	.	.	.	.	125	0	0

Small Game:

Residents:	Whole season	.	.	.	.	1	0	0
Non-Residents:	7 days	.	.	.	.	3	0	0
	1 month	.	.	.	.	6	0	0
	Whole season	.	.	.	.	10	0	0

Collections were below the estimate by £1,291.

Miscellaneous £100

This represents the following licences and fees which are not classified:

Chapter 117 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws: Special Marriage at £5.

High Commissioner's Notice No. 87 of 1955: Air Transport: (a) Licence to convey Mail and Cargo: £10; (b) Provisional licence to convey Mail and Cargo: £2.

Admission Fees: (Proclamation No. 94 of 1955:) Advocate, Attorney, Notary Public or Conveyancer: £5.

<i>Chapter 120 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws:</i>	£	s.	d.
Medical Practitioner	5	0	0
Dentist	1	1	0
Chemist	10	0	
Optician and Oculist	10	0	
Nurse	10	0	
Midwife	10	0	

The following table shows the total collections for the last six years under the head LICENCES:

<i>Year</i>	<i>Amount</i>
	£
1950-51	22,348
1951-52	27,220
1952-53	28,512
1953-54	32,313
1954-55	37,790
1955-56	41,441

IV. FEES OF COURT OR OFFICE AND EARNINGS
OF DEPARTMENTS £34,267

Stamp duty imposed under Chapter 76 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws and the Cape Colony Stamp and Office Fees Act of 1884 accrue to this revenue head and amounted to £9,944 for the financial year 1955-56. The following table shows the collection for the last six years:

<i>Year</i>	<i>Amount</i> £
1950-51	16,551
1951-52	23,209
1952-53	20,357
1953-54	21,619
1954-55	23,268
1955-56	34,267

V. POSTS AND TELEPHONES

The following table shows the revenue and expenditure for the Posts and Telephones Department for the last ten years:

<i>Year</i>	<i>Revenue</i> £	<i>Expenditure</i> £	<i>Surplus</i> £
1946-47	30,084	11,958	18,126
1947-48	76,428	11,904	64,524
1948-49	59,220	13,785	45,435
1949-50	64,572	17,477	47,095
1950-51	69,110	14,707	54,403
1951-52	70,395	14,911	55,484
1952-53	77,731	18,208	59,523
1953-54	127,627	22,388	105,239
1954-55	166,311	25,087	141,224
1955-56	152,229	31,854	120,375

Other Revenue: The following table shows collection for the last six years in respect of other revenue:

VI. JUDICIAL FINES

	£
1950-51	4,106
1951-52	5,678
1952-53	7,390
1953-54	10,708
1954-55	10,073
1955-56	10,127

VII. REVENUE FROM GOVERNMENT PROPERTY

	£
1950-51	23,040
1951-52	*212,758
1952-53	*171,778
1953-54	*167,342
1954-55	*174,848
1955-56	*169,315

*Includes £140,000 wayleave paid by the Rhodesia Railways.

VIII. REIMBURSEMENTS

	£
1950-51	423
1951-52	2,065
1952-53	11,001
1953-54	9,935
1954-55	8,737
1955-56	10,231

IX. INTEREST

	£
1950-51	3,426
1951-52	3,197
1952-53	5,190
1953-54	7,322
1954-55	6,380
1955-56	4,550

X. MISCELLANEOUS

	£
1950-51	16,656
1951-52	18,212
1952-53	11,751
1953-54	24,696
1954-55	15,131
1955-56	13,786

Native Treasuries

	Revenue 1955-56	Expenditure 1955-56	General Revenue Balance on 31.3.1956
	£	£	£
Bakgatla	9,476	8,995	9,150
Bakwena	19,000	18,220	31,189
Bamalete	3,285	3,149	7,347
Bamangwato	57,871	70,348	58,876
Bangwaketse	29,707	28,392	55,710
Baralong	3,117	3,827	9,896
Batawana	17,046	15,087	19,246
Batlokwa	1,879	1,950	2,315
Tati Federated	9,380	9,879	13,534

CHAPTER 4

CURRENCY AND BANKING

Union of South African currency is legal tender in terms of Chapter 77 of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Laws. In the Northern Protectorate Southern Rhodesian currency is used to a large extent and in the Ghanzi area South West African currency is used. Both Rhodesian and South West African currency is accepted at par. The Standard Bank of South Africa, Limited and Barclays Bank (D.C. & O.) each have branches at Francistown and Lobatsi and operate agencies from there.

CHAPTER 5

COMMERCE

A statement of imports and exports is at Appendix III. For the first time since 1953 the total figures reflect an adverse balance of trade, the value of the Territory's imports exceeding that of its exports by £168,033. In 1955 there was a favourable balance of £359,152 and in the previous year this amounted to £370,260. The adverse balance in 1953 was £248,249.

An expanding volume of trade is indicated by the fact that imports and exports were both higher, particularly the former, which rose by £593,147. Since 1954 the value of imports has risen by more than £1,000,000. The rise in the value of exports, however, has not been so marked, the figure for 1956 being £65,962 higher than that for the previous year, an overall increase of £463,926 since 1954.

The rise in imports is largely accounted for by the fact that the value of general merchandise imported increased by more than £402,000, that of vehicles and motor spares by more than £155,000, that of other foodstuffs by nearly £101,000, that of maize and maize meal by nearly £18,000 and that of wheat and wheat meal by more than £16,000. On the other hand, importations of textiles declined by more than £84,000 and those of fertilizers by nearly £12,000.

A mid-season drought in January accounted for the rise in maize imports. However, with the arrangements made for processing this grain in neighbouring territories and for its re-distribution within the Protectorate, the country was self-supporting in maize meal from July onwards. No maize or maize meal was exported.

Despite the adverse effect of aphids on early-planted crops, a good sorghum harvest was reaped and sorghum exports reached the record figure of 135,892 bags worth nearly £271,000. Although more beans and pulses were exported prices were poor, especially in Southern Rhodesia, and the value of these exports actually declined by more than £25,000. The value of groundnuts exported rose by more than £11,000.

The Territory's dependence upon the livestock industry is illustrated by the fact that 79 per cent. of the national income was derived from animals, £2,283,370 of the total exports coming from livestock sources.

The Colonial Development Corporation's abattoir at Lobatsi completed another successful year of operation and 68,715 head of cattle were slaughtered compared with 67,027 the previous year. Beef was the Territory's most valuable export, the value of cattle carcasses exported amounting to £1,555,355 which was an increase over the previous year's figure of nearly £177,000. Abattoir by-products rose by nearly £6,000 to £191,552 and miscellaneous animal products were worth £53,510—more than double the figure in 1955.

There was a good demand in the north for sheep and goats, and exports of these animals to the Rhodesias increased appreciably, their value rising by more than £10,000.

The quality of hides marketed showed considerable improvement. New European markets were found with the result that exports overseas were more than double those of the previous year. The value of hide exports increased by more than £8,000 to £217,738.

In keeping with Government policy, fewer cattle were exported on the hoof, only 3,340 head being sent to Northern Rhodesia compared with 6,307 the previous year. The value of live cattle exports, consequently, declined by some £26,000.

The production of butter fell and in addition more was consumed locally; exports to the Union (the Territory's only customer for this commodity) dropped by nearly 115,000lb., their value declining by more than £17,000.

Timber production ceased almost entirely, the timber company operating in the Chobe Concession having gone into voluntary liquidation the previous year. As a result, the value of timber exports dropped by nearly £74,000.

Having risen in value by some £67,000 in 1955, asbestos exports (from the Moshaneng Mine, near Kanye) fell by nearly £36,000 in 1956. The production of kyanite, gold and silver remained at about the same levels as the previous year.

CHAPTER 6

PRODUCTION

LAND UTILIZATION AND TENURE

(a) *Crown Lands (approximate area 165,175 square miles)*

All Crown Lands are vested in the High Commissioner by Orders-in-Council of the 16th May, 1904, and the 10th January, 1910, which are printed on pages 8 and 10 of Volume I of the Laws of the Bechuanaland Protectorate. They are unalienated with the exception of a number of farms in the Ghanzi District and two areas, one at Matetsi and one on the Molopo River, which have been leased to the Colonial Development Corporation.

(b) *The Native Reserves established as follows*

Barolong Farms (approximately 450 square miles) defined in Cap. 29 of the Laws;

Bamangwato Reserve (approximately 42,080 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws;

Batawana Reserve (approximately 34,500 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws;

Bakgatla Reserve (approximately 3,600 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws;

Bakwena Reserve (approximately 15,000 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws;

Bangwaketse Reserve (approximately 9,000 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws;

Bamalete Reserve (approximately 178 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws;

Batlokwa Reserve (approximately 56 square miles) defined in Cap. 57 of the Laws.

All land in the Reserve is vested in the Chief and Tribe and is allocated by the Chief in his discretion. Land does not pass automatically from father to son and cannot be said to be owned by any one person, though in practice, on the death of a person to whom an area has been allocated by the Chief, his heirs usually continue to occupy the same area. No land may be alienated by a Chief or tribe.

An exception to this system has occurred in the Barolong Farms. Although this Block of farms is reserved to the Barolong tribe, it was parcelled out and allocated by a former Chief to various tribesmen for occupation and the farms pass, on the death of the owners to their heirs on a similar basis. Nevertheless the farms are deemed to be the property of the whole tribe.

(c) *The European Farms*

Certain area of land, known as the Lobatsi Block (approximately 214 square miles), the Gaberones Block (approximately 260 square miles) and the Tuli Block (approximately 1,930 square miles) were granted in perpetuity to the British South Africa Company, with power to sell or lease the land. The boundaries of the blocks are defined in Cap. 92 of the Laws. The blocks have been divided into farms and many of them sold with freehold titles.

(d) *The Tati District*

The Tati District (approximately 2,074 square miles) is owned by the Tati Company Limited, who have full power to sell or lease any portion. Right is reserved to Government to acquire sites for public buildings. Within the Tati District, an area of approximately 320 square miles is set aside as a native reserve for which Government pays to the Company £1,000 a year. No rent is payable by natives living within the reserve. The grant to the Company is governed by Cap. 90 of the Laws.

AGRICULTURE

The climatic conditions experienced during the 1955-56 crop season were generally favourable for crop production. A mid-season drought in January curtailed ploughing operations, especially in the northern Protectorate, but good rains in February and March enhanced crop prospects and a good harvest was reaped in most districts.

Grazing was good at the end of the rainy season except in the over-grazed areas where overstocking prevents natural recovery. Conditions towards the end of winter, however, became increasingly difficult as open water supplies dried up and because of widespread veld fires which devastated many square miles of valuable dry season grazing.

The following table shows the seasonal rainfall in inches at 12 centres in the Protectorate compared with the mean figures.

<i>Place</i>	<i>Mean Rainfall Inches</i>	<i>Season 1955-56</i>
Lobatsi	21.9	26.85
Kanye	20.6	23.27
Gaberones	20.5	24.74
Molepolole	19.2	21.66
Mochudi	18.8	17.78
Mahalapye	18.7	21.90
Serowe	16.9	22.75
Francistown	18.1	15.19
Maun	17.2	17.10
Kasane	26.6	19.40
Ghanzi	17.9	15.86
Tsabong	11.8	13.76

In spite of the January drought experienced in the main producing areas the total maize crop was not far short of the previous season's.

European maize production purchased by Government showed an increase over the previous year while the African crop decreased slightly. The arrangements made for the processing of this grain in neighbouring territories and for its re-distribution within the Protectorate were continued during 1956. This enabled the country to be self-supporting in maize meal requirements from July onwards. Some white maize was used for stock feeding but the use of maize for this purpose has not proved to be altogether economically sound.

Considerable quantities of grain sorghum, beans, and millet which were surplus to local requirements were exported to adjoining territories. Prices obtained were satisfactory but generally lower than for the previous year.

Varying quantities of a wide variety of both field and orchard crops produced by European farmers on both dry and irrigated land were marketed both locally and in adjoining territories. Again, prices obtained were satisfactory but generally lower than for the previous year. These crops include cotton, fodder crops, citrus and flower bulbs.

One outstanding feature of recent years has been the development of irrigation along the Limpopo River where a wide variety of crops is now grown in spite of marketing difficulties.

Aphids infesting sorghum crops constituted by far the most serious pest encountered during the season and considerable damage was caused, particularly to early planted crops. Other pests and diseases were generally of minor importance but, in certain localities, parasitic plants viz. *Striga lutea* and *Scrophulariaceae* sp. caused damage to sorghum and cowpea crops respectively. Quelea finches were not a serious pest during the year.

Extension work was continued in all African reserves in the eastern districts of the country. The main object of this work is to demonstrate to African farmers the fundamental requirements for successful crop production under the conditions which exist in the Territory. Row crop practices are taught to ensure correct espacement of plants, to ensure timely weeding of crops and to conserve moisture, which is more often than not the limiting factor in crop production.

In spite of severe infestation of aphids in certain localities, some excellent yields were reaped from the 3-acre demonstration plots, particularly in the Bangwaketse Reserve where 39½ bags were harvested from one plot, the best sub-plot yielding 14 bags an acre. One farmer co-operator farmer in the same reserve reaped over 700 bags of maize, sorghum and beans; others in the Bamalete Reserve obtained maize yields of over 6 bags an acre. The average yield of sorghums from demonstration plots in the Bamalete Reserve was 789lb. an acre compared with 160lb. an acre obtained from a sample of lands planted in the traditional manner.

Several hundred bags of maize, sorghum and beans were sold on behalf of African farmers wishing to purchase row crop and other implements.

Further progress in the Ranaka Agricultural Scheme is dependent on the provision of further stock water points which are necessary for

the introduction of grazing control measures. Co-operative plot work has continued and a number of sloping lands have been contoured.

The full programme of experimental work planned was carried out at the Mahalapye, Morale and Lobatsi stations. Bulk plantings of different crops for seed multiplication yielded satisfactorily and seed reserves were increased.

Further introductions of varieties of the main crops grown were made from many sources and are being grown to determine their adaptability to local conditions. Varieties of cowpeas grown for fodder production yielded up to 15 tons an acre of green fodder. Several new grain types of cowpeas also yielded very satisfactorily.

Fertiliser trials continued at Lobatsi with the object of testing the residual effect of different dressings of phosphatic fertilizers. These have shown that the yield from control plots is significantly lower than from fertilized plots.

Sixty homozygous lines of *Pennisetum typhoideum* have now been bred.

The veld management work at the Morale Station has been continued at the same stocking rate. In order to study the possible differences in veld utilisation by different breeds of cattle the animals used in the trials are now divided into three sub-groups consisting of indigenous Tswana, Afrikander X, Hereford and Afrikander steers. The previous animals used in the trials were marketed during the year through the Lobatsi abattoir.

Sample botanical surveys were begun at the station to provide comparative data of changes in grass species and cover through different grazing treatments. Data obtained during the year showed that the carrying capacity of veld increased following the reduction of bush and tree cover.

The work done at this station and the results obtained were presented to a regional conference on pastures and water supplies convened by S.A.R.C.C.U.S. in February, 1956.

Surveys were conducted during the year to facilitate the planning of the projected soil conservation work. Several small schemes were started. Soil-moving equipment was received towards the end of the year together with supplies of fencing material. Further funds were made available by the Ngwato Tribal Administration towards the cost of soil conservation fencing works in that reserve.

The 1955-56 dairying season was better than average and production again ceased in July. Butter production at the Tati Creamery amounted to 373,929lb. of which 312,244lb. were exported to the Union.

There has been a steady increase in the amount of butter consumed in the Territory from 1948, when the figure was 41,434lb., to 1956, when the corresponding figure was 67,890lb.

Prices were again fixed at levels to encourage the production of good quality butterfat, and the campaign to improve the standard of dairies and of handling dairy products was continued.

Several new items of equipment including a new automatic butter wrapping machine were installed at the Tati Creamery.

FORESTRY

The liquidators of the Chobe Concessions Limited continued to market a small volume of timber, mainly Mukwa *Pterocarpus angolensis* logs in the round which remained in the forest concession after the company ceased felling operations.

A new forester was appointed in July, when firebreaks were burnt to protect the exploited and unexploited forest areas. This work was rendered more difficult owing to the lateness of the season and the good stands of grass following a good rainy season. Other routine duties carried out in plantations in the Southern Protectorate included fire precautions, thinning and pruning.

Progress has been made towards the re-establishment of the nursery at Pharing in the Bangwaketse Reserve.

VETERINARY AND LIVESTOCK

The January drought, which was almost universal throughout the Territory, caused a temporary setback to the grazing which recovered rapidly, however, following the February rains.

The rapid wilting of the herbage during January resulted in an increased number of cases of prussic acid poisoning among livestock. As is usual in Bechuanaland, the better the grazing, the bigger and better the grass fires, and from early May to October vast areas of potentially good grazing were destroyed. In the Bokalaka and parts of the Kgalagadi district, cattle had to walk as far as ten miles over burnt out areas in search of grazing. Areas not destroyed by fire were rapidly tramped out owing to the concentration of stock upon them. This was particularly true of the southern Bakgatla Reserve, where stock were concentrated following destruction of grazing by fire in the northern part of the reserve. The early rains of September and October led to early growth of grass and by the end of the year the quality of grazing in most areas was good.

In the Lobatsi district, grazing improved steadily during February and March. By May, however, considerable deterioration was apparent, particularly in the Barolong Farms, long subject to overgrazing. Grass fires commenced in July and continued on an increasing scale in August and September. Although there was rain in September, grazing came on very slowly and was well below average at the end of the year.

Grazing was poor in the Bakgatla Reserve, which was badly affected by the January drought. In October the grazing in the Bakgatla Reserve was worse than it had been for many years and the position further deteriorated in November, when less rain fell in this reserve than elsewhere.

Early deterioration of grazing was noted in April in the eastern and north-eastern portions of the Bangwaketse Reserve. Grass fires began in May and it was estimated that two-thirds of the grazing had been destroyed by July. The destruction of grass led to abnormally rapid

growth of poisonous plants, and losses among cattle and small stock from poisoning were heavy.

In the Bakwena Reserve, grazing recovered rapidly in February, only to deteriorate again in March owing to a further dry spell. The overgrazed areas of the eastern reserve were badly affected and by June stock were already having to search for food. In contrast to the eastern reserve, grazing was very much better in the desert areas.

Grazing in the Bamangwato Reserve showed steady improvement until June, when the grazing was said to be much better than in 1955. Deterioration was hastened later in the year by the extensive grass fires, which are reported to have destroyed more grazing in the Serowe district than ever before. The flats at Rakops were unaffected by fire. Fires started near the back line fence, swept through several farms on the Tuli Block and destroyed much valuable grazing.

Grazing in the Francistown district deteriorated in January through lack of sufficient rain. Thereafter improvement occurred and the grazing was fairly good for the remainder of the year.

In Ngamiland the initial setback to the grazing caused by the January drought was reversed in February when heavy rain caused the grass to grow rapidly and become rank. Overgrowth of weed round Lake Ngami through overgrazing choked the water grasses which normally form a welcome supply of food for the cattle. Water in the outlying pans dried up quickly, with the result that from April cattle returned to the river grazing and much overstocking in these parts ensued. By November a combination of overgrazing and grass fires had so reduced the availability of grazing that reasonable grazing was to be found only in the fly-infested marginal areas.

Grazing in the Ghanzi district recovered rapidly in February and subsequently maintained itself well, despite frosts in May and June. Grass fires began in May and continued until September, when a decline in their frequency and ferocity was observed, owing largely to the fact that there was little grass left to burn. Light showers in October resulted in some improvement, but grazing received a severe setback in December through lack of rain, and the local farmers fear a bad year.

After the January drought the grazing in the Kgalagadi district recovered rapidly and remained adequate throughout the year, although much affected by grass fires and trampling in certain localities.

Water supplies were less plentiful than in 1955; pans and dams were not so full and tended to dry up quickly. The lack of rain in January caused a drop in borehole levels in the Tuli Block, resulting in a temporary water shortage. Towards the end of the year water supplies were below average in several districts.

The plan for development of underground water supplies was implemented during the year. After plans had been prepared in each district by technical officers, administrative officers and members of the tribe concerned, sites for new boreholes were selected in the Bakwena and Bakgatla Reserves by officers of the Geological Survey Department and drilling on a contract basis began in the Bakwena Reserve.

A little progress in the field of animal husbandry can be reported from the African areas. A useful object lesson was provided by an African stock owner at Gaberones, who allowed calves to run with their dams instead of keeping them kraaled as is customary. As was to be expected, the condition and rate of growth of the calves kept with their dams was much better than that of calves kept apart. An increased awareness of the beneficial effects of vaccinations was observed among certain Africans in the Bakwena Reserve. In this district alone, a much greater quantity of quarter evil vaccine and paratyphoid vaccine was sold during 1956 than in the previous year. A few Africans in the reserve are now beginning to seek advice on their problems of stock raising. During the year the course of lectures on animal husbandry, given at Kanye College, had to be discontinued following removal of that college to Lobatsi. A new development in the field of veterinary education, however, was seen at Moeng College where a course of lectures was given by a representative of the Veterinary Department on various aspects of animal husbandry and veterinary science. The course was well attended.

Agricultural shows were held at Francistown in May and at Kanye in June. Both were well attended. A pavilion, housing a Veterinary Department exhibit dealing with various aspects of animal husbandry and animal disease, was erected at the Francistown show and a similar exhibition was given at Kanye. These agricultural shows are becoming increasingly popular, both with African and European alike, and since they stimulate interest in the development of better types of livestock and better methods of husbandry, it is hoped that they will continue.

Progress continued in the European farming areas in the form of additional fencing of farms, additional water supplies, the conservation of fodder, the introduction of better types of bulls, and selective breeding for beef. Although European breeds of cattle continue to be imported, there is a definite tendency on the part of some farmers to go in for the indigenous type of animal, such as the Afrikander.

The general trend of livestock is shown in Appendix IV.

At the Leupane Livestock Improvement Centre progress continued throughout the year; extra fencing and gates were erected, and a further strand of wire was added to the existing fences. Grazing and water supplies were good, the Centre being unaffected by grass fires which raged through the reserve. Thirty bulls and forty heifers were sold into the reserve at a nominal price during the year and a further twenty-six animals went to the abattoir.

At the Good Hope Livestock Improvement Centre good grazing and ample water were available throughout the year. A number of animals were sold at an auction sale, cows realising on an average £16 10s. 0d. and oxen £29 10s. 0d. During the year thirty-three heifers and twelve bulls were sold into the reserve.

Progress continued at Ramathlabama. Additional paddocks were demarcated, fenced and provided with water, roads were made and trees planted. A prefabricated steel barn, which will form the basis of the farm buildings, was erected during the year. A prefabricated school

building to house Africans undergoing training as Veterinary Assistants was completed and a start was made on certain ancillary buildings for the school such as staff lines and stores. Fifteen registered Afrikaner heifers were purchased from two well-known breeders in the Union and a pedigree Afrikaner bull from Potchefstroom Agricultural College; the latter was purchased by courtesy of the Union Government Secretary for Agriculture. Grazing and water supplies were ample throughout the year and all classes of stock maintained good condition. An excellent calf crop was obtained, cows calving down towards the end of the year.

The increase in the number of castrations carried out by departmental staff, which was noticed last year, continued during 1956 although on a reduced scale. An interesting trend in the Bakwena Reserve was that 70 per cent. of the bovines castrated were either young bulls or calves, as distinct from old bulls. This very satisfactory development has occurred in response to vigorous propaganda carried on by the Veterinary Officer at Molepolole.

Offerings of cattle to the abattoir were 1,631 higher than in 1955 (68,715 in 1956; 67,084 in 1955). In January and February the numbers offered and killed were nearly twice as many as in the same period of the previous year. Thereafter, up to the end of September, similar numbers of cattle were killed monthly as in the previous year, although offerings in the middle of the year were often as many as 14,000 a month.

The number of preventive inoculations made in the Territory during the year under review amounted to 1,795,631 doses, an increase of nearly 300,000 on the previous year's total. Most of this increase viz. 283,557 doses, was due to an increase in the number of doses of vaccine innoculated free. The number of doses of vaccine purchased by the public showed an increase during the year of 7,226. Approximately half of this increase was in respect of paratyphoid vaccine, which indicates an increased awareness of this disease among the African stock owners and suggests at the same time that the disease is becoming increasingly prevalent.

The year was marked by extensive outbreaks of lumpy skin disease, which assumed epizootic proportions during the earlier part. Although a substantial decline in incidence occurred during the winter months, fresh cases still continued to occur, and other cases dragged on into the summer. Mortality from the virus itself is generally low, but in the absence of appropriate treatment, mortality from the effects of secondary bacterial invasion may be high. This was more especially the case in tribal areas, where the mortality in some cases was considerable.

Although many cases of the disease were seen on the Tuli Block, no deaths were reported from this area.

Rabies again made its appearance, outbreaks occurring at Lobatsi, Serowe, Palapye, Francistown, Maun and Sofala. The outbreak at Lobatsi was the first in the Southern Protectorate since 1948. In all, seven outbreaks were confirmed, two of these at Palapye. One of these latter outbreaks involved a cat, the diagnosis being confirmed by histological and biological examination of the brain. Tie-up orders were

applied, movement restrictions imposed, and an inoculation campaign, combined with destruction of stray dogs, was organised at the scene of each outbreak. An African, bitten by a tsipa cat, later died of rabies in Kanye, and one was attacked by an apparently rabid hyena, which savaged him extensively about the arms; it subsequently killed a calf and injured a cow before making off. Unfortunately no material was obtained in either instance.

Outbreaks of anthrax remained at a low figure during the year, thereby continuing the trend noted in 1955. A total of 1,450,920 doses of vaccine were supplied by the Veterinary Department during the year.

Annual free vaccinations were carried out in the Southern Protectorate against blackwater and contagious abortion. As reported last year, losses from these two disease have decreased considerably in those areas where annual free inoculation is given and this trend was continued in 1956. Now that further funds are available it is planned to extend these free annual inoculations to other parts during 1957.

There were a number of outbreaks of sheep scab, largely in the Bangwaketse Reserve, but control was achieved by dipping. A number of deaths from trypanosomiasis occurred in Ngamiland, infection being largely due to the negligence of the cattle herds, who allow their charges to stray into fly-infected areas.

Apart from quarter evil and lumpy skin disease, which swept the entire country during the year, the principal cause of mortality in cattle was calf paratyphoid. Figures indicate mounting losses from this disease, exceeding those of 1955, which themselves exceeded those of 1954 by 150 per cent. Control of dairying, better methods of calf husbandry and preventive inoculation, in that order, are required in order to gain control of this disease of young stock, which accounts for the death of every second calf.

Among other causes of mortality, plant poisoning was a very real cause of loss during 1956, accounting for the death of well over 1,000 cattle and more than half this number of sheep and goats. Losses from botulism were on a reduced scale during 1956. Sales of botulinus vaccine continued to decline, 4,000 fewer doses being used than in 1955. The use of bonemeal and salt as a mineral supplement became more prevalent, however, as did the supply of phosphates in the drinking water. Tick-borne diseases, of which the most important was heartwater, were responsible for the loss of nearly 2,000 cattle and small stock. It is difficult to convince the stock owner, particularly the African, of the necessity of keeping stock free from ticks by regular spraying and dipping. Treatment once in a while is generally considered by the African and some Europeans to be the most that can be expected; regular dipping at weekly or fortnightly intervals is out of the question.

The bulk of the losses among stock fell, as always, into the category of "killed by vermin," "poverty" and "unknown causes," losses from the latter two causes alone amounting to more than 9,000 cattle and 15,000 sheep. The great distances involved, the lack of sufficient staff and the absence of laboratory services precluded more thorough investigation.



School and hostel at Ghanzi. Additional classrooms are being erected in the background.

Photo: G. J. L. ATKINSON



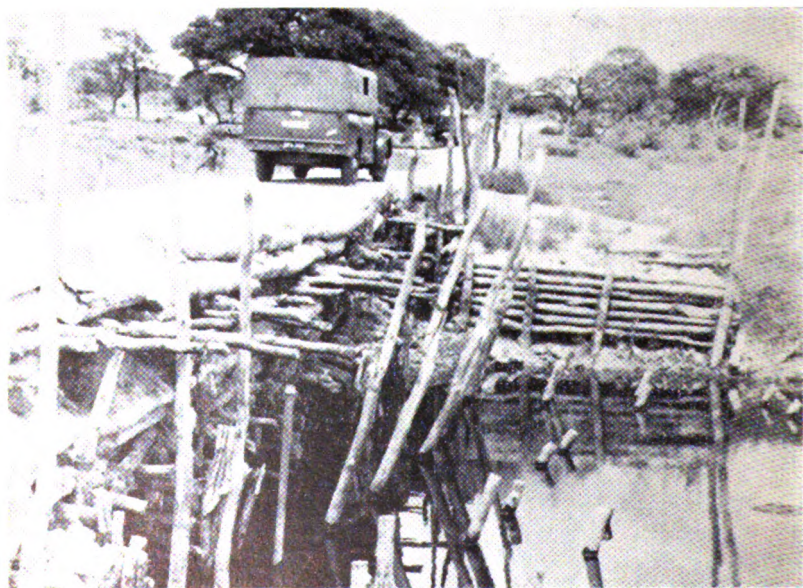
Bride, groom and retinue leaving Magistrate's Court, Francistown, after civil ceremony.

Photo: G. J. L. ATKINSON



Sebitwa Village, near Lake Ngami

Photo: G. J. L. ATKINSON



Bridge over the Nata River at Nata on the road from Francistown to Maun.

Photo: G. J. L. ATKINSON

FISHERIES

A fishing industry was started in Ngamiland by a private concern in December, 1956, when experimental work was undertaken on the Thamalakane River outside Maun. Curing racks were built and nets, boats and other equipment purchased.

About 500 lb. of fish was caught in the first week of operations. The second week yielded 1,000 lb. and the third week well over 2,000 lb. The yield for the whole month was more than 4,000 lb. of which all but 500 lb. went bad owing to faulty curing.

Production is not expected to begin in earnest until the end of March, 1957, when the concern hopes to export four tons of dried fish a month to Rhodesia.

Curing sites have been leased from the Batawana Tribe, who will also benefit by receiving a fixed percentage of the price realised on all sales.

MINING

The Geological Survey, with headquarters at Lobatsi, consists of seven professional officers and is responsible for the mineral development of the Territory. The survey has three main functions which are (1) geological mapping of the whole Protectorate, (2) mineral survey including the preliminary exploration of promising mineral deposits and the survey of the potential coalfields in the Territory, and (3) hydrogeological survey. Geophysical prospecting techniques are used in connection with the mineral survey and hydrogeological work and diamond drilling are in progress in the survey of the potential coalfield areas.

In view of the importance of the cattle industry to the economy of the Protectorate the establishment has recently been increased to allow for the formation of a hydrogeological branch which will devote itself primarily to the development of the ground water resources of the Territory, particularly in the grazing areas in the tribal reserves.

Mineral exports during the year were as follows:

	<i>Amount</i>	<i>Value</i> £
Gold (oz.)	590	6,767
Silver (oz.)	215	63
Kyanite (short tons)	981	8,238
Asbestos (short tons)	1,356	129,679

The gold, silver and kyanite are produced in the Tati Concession, the mineral rights in which are owned by the Tati Company.

The chrysolite asbestos is produced at the Moshaneng Mine near Kanye in the Bangwaketse Reserve. A mining company works the property on a royalty basis, the royalty accruing to the Bangwaketse Tribal Treasury. The Geological Survey advises on the development of

the mines and was responsible for the discovery of the kyanite deposit. Regular inspections of operating mines are carried out by an inspector of mines whose services are lent by the Government of Southern Rhodesia.

Geological field work normally takes place during the dry season from April to November and during the remaining months of the year the geologists are at the Lobatsi headquarters working up the results of the field season. Extensions to the small headquarters office are in progress to meet the needs of the increased establishment. Facilities exist for the examination of specimens and the drafting of maps. There is a small reference library and essential geological and mining periodicals are taken.

A chemical and mineralogical laboratory has been built up in Lobatsi and is in the charge of the Chemist-Petrologist. The laboratory provides the necessary services of analysing and reporting on specimens collected by the public and survey staff. Material sent in by the field officers is examined by the Chemist-Petrologist who reports on the value of the discoveries. Water analyses are carried out and a chemical study of the ground waters of the Kalahari region is in progress. Information from all water boreholes drilled in the Territory as to quantity and quality of the supply and geological strata intersected by the boreholes is collected and indexed. Recent legislation has made it compulsory for all drilling contractors to supply the Geological Survey with sludge samples and relevant particulars for all boreholes drilled in the Territory. Thin sections of rocks and minerals are prepared, and polished sections of ore minerals are made for study in the laboratory. The section-cutting machine is operated by an African technician.

Mining companies continue to display considerable interest in the mineral potentialities of the Protectorate. Interest is mainly displayed in the Bushman Copper Deposits some 70 miles north-west of Francistown, the nickel copper occurrence at Magogaphate in the north-eastern Bamangwato Reserve, the potential coalfields in the Palapye and the Mamabula-Debeeti-Artesia areas and the possible salt deposits in the Makarikari region.

Mineral survey during the year was devoted to the investigation of the coal resources adjacent to the line of the Rhodesia Railways and to a preliminary examination of the known salt deposits near Nata in the Makarikari area. Diamond and rotary shot drilling continued in the potential coalfield areas in the Palapye and Artesia-Debeeti districts. A single borehole was drilled to investigate the coal in the Dukwe area, west of the Bushman Mine, which is the most northerly known occurrence of coal in the Territory. A total of 5,198 feet of core drilling was completed during the year.

In collaboration with the Geological Survey of the Union of South Africa a regional gravimetric survey of the Protectorate was carried out and it is hoped that the results will assist in probing the hidden geology below the Kalahari sands and other recent deposits which blanket 84% of the total area of the Protectorate. The party traversed a total of 1,784 miles.

Regional geological mapping is in progress and in the past year attention was paid primarily to those areas where water borehole site selection was due to take place in connection with the 4-year underground water development scheme. Considerable importance is attached to this scheme and the Geological Survey has mainly concentrated on this hydrogeological work throughout the year. Geophysical surveys were undertaken in connection with the water borehole site selection in the Bakwena Reserve. This Kalahari area is an extremely difficult one in which to locate adequate underground water supplies. In the 4,400 square miles of the Reserve which were surveyed exposures are present over only about 3% of the area. In the remaining 97% the solid geology is concealed by superficial deposits of the Kalahari system which average 110-120 feet in thickness. Contract drilling under the 4-year development scheme commenced in September. Of 39 sites drilled during the year in the Bakwena Reserve in connection with this four-year scheme, 25 were successful, representing a success rate of 62.5% with supplies ranging from 60 to 3,600 gallons per hour. The previous success rate, before assistance was given by the Geological Survey, was 32%.

Assistance in connection with water supply problems was also rendered to villages and townships and to the Rhodesia Railways. Of 42 sites drilled which had been selected by geophysical methods by Survey officers in various parts of the Territory, 28 (67%) were successful.

MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES

There are none.

CO-OPERATIVE SOCIETIES

There are no established societies.

CHAPTER 7

SOCIAL SERVICES

1. EDUCATION

The problems of administration and control of education in Bechuanaland present unusual difficulties resulting from a number of factors, the chief of which are:

- (1) the Territory's great size and the extraordinary difficulties of communication and travel;

- (2) the limited financial resources; and
- (3) the small part played by mission societies and other voluntary agencies in education.

EDUCATION DEPARTMENT

From April, 1956, the administrative and inspectorate establishment of the Education Department has comprised the Director, Deputy Director, five Education Officers, of whom one was an African, two Senior Supervisors of Schools, ten Supervisors of Schools and a Welfare Officer. One female and two male Education Officers were appointed and one Supervisor was promoted to the post of Senior Supervisor. The African Education Officer, Miss G. K. T. Chiepe, was on study leave for the whole year at Bristol University. Vacancies for one Education Officer, one Senior Supervisor and seven Supervisors remain unfilled.

AFRICAN EDUCATION

The Education Department exercises professional control and direction of all education in the Protectorate and is directly responsible for the administration of the Teacher Training College and of schools in Crown Lands. Tribal schools are tribally financed. Moeng College is financed by Government and the four Catholic Mission Schools and the Dutch Reformed Church Homecrafts Centre are Government-aided.

The schools of the Protectorate comprise one Teacher Training College conducted by Government; two secondary boarding schools; 3 junior secondary day schools and 159 primary schools of which 143 are conducted by Tribal School Committees, 13 by Government in Crown Lands and 3 by Missions.

Total numbers of pupils enrolled were as follows: Teacher Training College 53; Secondary Schools 325; Primary schools 24,125. Of the total number of pupils 14,962 were girls and 9,541 boys.

The above statistics indicate that there was a considerable increase in enrolment in primary and in secondary and junior secondary schools. Percentage increases, based on the previous year's figures, are 18% primary and 34% secondary.

This sharp increase, while a welcome indication of appreciation of the value of education, has complicated the problem of providing suitable facilities at all schools, and Tribal Treasuries are finding it difficult to provide funds for essential buildings, equipment and staff. A recent survey revealed that well over 100 permanent classrooms of satisfactory design have been built during the last three years and there is little doubt that this in itself has attracted many more pupils and roused parental interest. As it is estimated that not more than one-third of children of school-going age attend school it is likely that this process will continue and that enrolment will increase proportionately as better facilities are provided.

Average school-going age is difficult to assess with accuracy as many children do not know their ages and the age of admission varies between 6 and 16. An average admission age of 10 years might be approximately correct. Many boys are employed as cattle herds by their parents until ten or twelve years of age, when their younger brothers take over to release them for schooling. There have, however, been signs of an improvement in this direction lately. Comparatively few pupils complete the full primary course, numbers decreasing from about 6,000 enrolled in the first year of school life to 450 in the eighth.

The new Teacher Training College at Lobatsi was completed at a cost of £40,000 and staff and students occupied the excellent new buildings during the second half of the school year. The College will accommodate comfortably 100 students. As almost half of the 600 teachers employed in the Protectorate are unqualified there is a steady and growing demand for the services of teachers trained at the College. It is proposed to introduce a Primary Higher (post Junior Certificate) Course in 1958 in addition to the present Primary Lower (post Standard VI) Course.

For practically all secondary education and for all vocational and higher education, the Bechuanaland Protectorate was dependent on the Union of South Africa. From 1954 the Union ceased to accept any new extra-territorial non-European secondary and vocational pupils, although those already in institutions were allowed to complete the courses for which they had enrolled. A few university students will be admitted by the University College of Fort Hare for science and arts courses and by the University of Natal for medicine until and including 1958. The University College of Rhodesia and Nyasaland will open in 1957 and students from the Protectorate will be eligible for admission. Meanwhile the Protectorate has extended facilities for secondary education and arranged for the admission of students to vocational institutions in Basutoland. The new classroom block at Moeng College is nearing completion. The College is now conducted as a Territorial institution and Government has assumed responsibility for all essential capital and recurrent expenditure. The College is administered by a governing council which includes representatives of tribes, missions and Government. Government has also contributed towards further extensions at St. Joseph's College and is contributing towards the building and equipment of junior secondary day schools in tribal capitals.

The number of Protectorate African students attending university is small, comprising two in the United Kingdom, two at Roma College in Basutoland and three at Fort Hare in the Union.

EUROPEAN EDUCATION

For the small but rapidly increasing European community 9 primary schools are conducted. The only boarding school is at Ghanzi, possibly the most remote European settlement in Southern Africa. This school,

which is now being extended, is run on farm school lines, offering practical rural training as well as the usual academic subjects.

The number of pupils attending school increased from 330 in 1955 to 352 in 1956, with a slight majority of boys. About two-thirds of the pupils come from Afrikaans-speaking homes.

Older children, and those for whom no local primary education exists, attend schools in the Union of South Africa and in Southern Rhodesia. Exact figures are not available but the number must be almost 200, most of whom receive Government grants or bursaries.

COLOURED EDUCATION

The true Eurafrican community in Bechuanaland is small and most of the children attend African Tribal Schools. However, 5 small schools are classified as Coloured and are attended by 243 pupils of mixed race, taught by 10 teachers of whom 4 are qualified.

COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE FUND

Under Scheme D.1045 and subsidiary schemes a sum of £90,090 was made available for capital and recurrent expenditure on improvement of educational facilities in the Bechuanaland Protectorate for the period 1st April, 1948, to 31st March, 1956. Of this sum £3,500 was provided for capital expenditure on the Lobatsi European School and £14,500 for the Ghanzi European Boarding School. Approximately £40,000 has been spent on the African Teacher Training College.

The balance has been in large part devoted to recurrent expenditure in encouraging agricultural and homecrafts education.

Under a separate scheme a grant-in-aid of £1,000 was made to St. Joseph's College. This grant, supplemented by a considerably larger Mission contribution, was used to increase secondary classroom and boarding facilities necessitated by increased enrolment subsequent to the Union ban on non-European Protectorate pupils.

Additional grants of £30,000 and £26,000 were approved for the erection and equipment of a classroom block at Moeng College and for a hostel for the Lobatsi European school.

FINANCE

Estimated expenditure on education in the Protectorate during 1956 was as follows:

	£
From Government sources	70,000
From Tribal sources	73,000
From Colonial Development and Welfare Schemes	90,000
From Missions (approximately)	12,000
	245,000

VISIT

Miss Freda Gwilliam, O.B.E., Assistant Educational Adviser to the Secretary of State for the Colonies, spent a week touring the Southern Protectorate in September. She is especially interested in the education of girls and women and gave valuable advice on this subject and on other more general matters.

2. PUBLIC HEALTH

During 1956, 526,524 attendances by out-patients were recorded at all stations, both Government and mission, compared with 445,689 during the previous year; of the total number 138,857 (1955: 116,442) were first attendances. A total of 12,813 patients were admitted to Government and missionary hospitals compared with 10,498 in 1955.

The classification of diseases in accordance with the World Health Organization's nosological returns is at Appendix VII. This classification, which deals only with first attendances, includes both in-patients and out-patients.

Mining remains the principal occupation of the migratory indigenous male population. Of recruits medically examined by territorial medical officers during the year 1,081 were rejected as unfit, mainly because of poor physique and under-age. These miners proceed mainly to the Rand and Orange Free State gold mines.

67,147 recruits and repatriates passed through the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association depot at Francistown during the year. The air transport of mine recruits and repatriates from and to the Northern Protectorate and Nyasaland and to and from Francistown continues to be a great success and has found much favour among the miners. During 1956, 46,652 miners were transported by air and 1,476,001 miles were flown without mishap.

All mine labourers who are repatriated through illness or injury are notified to the Director of Medical Services who informs the Medical Officer or Medical Missionary of the district from which the recruit originally came. This enables supervision to be maintained for those requiring it and is of particular value in cases repatriated because of pulmonary tuberculosis.

HOSPITALS, HEALTH CENTRES AND DISPENSARIES

The total number of beds available is 631, i.e. European 29, African 516 and cots 86, compared with 584 the previous year. The proportion of beds to population is approximately 2 per 1,000. The accommodation is distributed thus:

<i>Government</i>	<i>Beds</i>		<i>Cots</i>
	<i>European</i>	<i>African</i>	
Lobatsi	11	94	6
Lobatsi Mental Home	—	21	—

Serowe	5	79	33
Francistown	5	67	14
Maun	5	34	4
Mahalapye	—	13	1
Gaberones	—	8	—
	—	—	—
TOTAL	26	316	58

During the year a Health Centre at Gaberones, with accommodation for 8 in-patients, was opened replacing the old dispensary.

Government dispensaries are situated at:

Gabane	*Palla Road	Good Hope
Pilikwe	*Kalamari	Rakops
Kalkfontein	Ramoutsa	Machaneng
*Sefhare	*Makobo's Kraal	*Sehitwa
*Moeng	Shakawe	Nokaneng
Tsau	Palapye	Tsane

*No Government buildings available but accommodation provided for visits which take place at least monthly, usually weekly.

<i>Missions</i>	<i>Beds</i>		
	<i>European</i>	<i>African</i>	<i>Cots</i>
Khale: Roman Catholic Mission	—	5	—
Maun: London Missionary Society (Maternity Centre) . . .	—	12	10
Molepolole: United Free Church of Scotland	—	49	—
Kanye: Seventh Day Adventist Mission	2	64	6
Kanye: United Free Church of Scotland	1	26	6
Mochudi: Dutch Reformed Church Mission	—	31	6
Ramoutsa: Hermannsburg Lutheran Mission	—	13	—
	—	—	—
TOTAL	3	200	28

Mission doctors also visit the following centres at regular intervals:

Ga-Thamaga	Moshupa	Kakia
Tsane	Ranaka	Digiwana
Molapoabojang	Nmathethe	Magweraapitse
Mokgomanen	Pitsani-Molopo	Tshidilamolomo
Moshaneng		

The number of operations performed was 866 major and 2,020 minor; 3,448 x-ray examinations were conducted; 19,369 ante-natal and 5,114 post-natal attendances were recorded and 2,684 babies were born in hospital. Attendances at child welfare clinics numbered 1,555.

During the year new stores were built at headquarters, extensions were made to African staff quarters at Lobatsi and a tuberculosis block at Francistown was completed.

The professional establishment comprises the Director, one Medical Officer of Health, 11 Medical Officers, 1 Matron, 3 Sisters-in-charge, 10 Nursing Sisters, 1 District Nurse, 3 Health Inspectors and 2 Rodent Inspectors.

At the end of the year the Director went on leave pending retirement and one Medical Officer resigned during the year. The nursing staff position remained very difficult, the shortage being more than one-third of the approved establishment.

The training of African nurses remains a three-year course in general medical and surgical nursing and a one-year course in midwifery. Control of nursing staff and affairs is vested in the High Commission Territories Nursing Council on which all three Territories are represented.

The 1956 nursing examination results were as follows:

Final Midwifery examinations: Out of 9 candidates, 8 passed, one with merit; Final General Medical and Surgical Nursing: Out of 15 candidates, 10 passed, one with merit; Second year nursing: Out of 19 candidates, 9 passed, two with merit; First Year nursing: Out of 17 candidates, 12 passed, one with merit.

The Director of Medical Services attended the sixth session of the Regional Committee for Africa of the World Health Organization at Luanda in September.

For 1956-57, financial provision was made in W.H.O. and U.N.I.C.E.F. budgets for assistance in:

- (a) Tuberculosis
- (b) Treponematoses
- (c) Diphtheria-Whooping Cough Prophylaxis
- (d) Development of Health Education
- (e) Nursing and Midwifery Training.

The total allocation during the year 1955-56 was £23,900.

During the year visits were paid by Miss L. Creelman, Adviser on Nursing; Mr. R. Bogue, Adviser on Health Education in connection with projects (c) and (d) respectively; and by Mr. Baity, Adviser on Environmental Sanitation.

A Tuberculosis Survey Team toured the Territory during the year but the report is not yet available.

The extra-venereal treponematoses campaign was continued during the year and extended to the northern part of the Territory. By the end of 1957, 85,775 persons had received prophylactic or curative treatment.

A diphtheria-whooping cough prophylactic campaign was started in September.

Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Scheme D.1037 was concluded, save for capital expenditure on the completion of the Gaberones Health Centre. Scheme D.2835 (Diphtheria-Whooping Cough Prophylaxis).

laxis) was approved and commenced in September. Scheme D.3067 (Development of Medical Services) was started during the year.

The post of Medical Officer of Health remained filled throughout the year. Two Health Inspectors were employed, one being stationed at Lobatsi and the other at Francistown. In addition to the above, two temporary posts were created during the year. A Field Officer was appointed to Gaberones and a Field Survey Officer to Lobatsi. The Field Officer was appointed in connection with Scheme D.2835 (Diphtheria-Whooping Cough) campaign. The Field Survey Officer, paid from Advances Medical Services, has been employed on anti-malarial spraying and the collection of specimens as part of a tick-borne relapsing fever survey and field bilharzia investigation.

Besides routine public health inspections, the Medical Officer of Health visited Ngamiland twice by air and also inspected all hotels. Health Inspectors visited stations at least once monthly. The total mileage travelled by the senior staff amounted to 36,500 miles.

EPIDEMIC AND GENERAL DISEASES

Bilharziasis

In March Dr. R. J. Pitchford, World Health Organization consultant, paid an eight-day visit to the Territory. He stressed the importance of the wide distribution of *Bulinus forskali* and its presence in areas where cases of urinary schistosomiasis have been reported in recent years and where there is an apparent absence of *physopsis*. Dr. Pitchford considered that special attention should be directed towards the possibility of *B. forskali* being a vector in the Territory.

The total number of cases of schistosomiasis reported during the year was 204, distributed thus (1955 figures are in brackets):

Francistown	.	.	.	.	2	(0)
Gaberones	.	.	.	.	6	(4)
Kanye	.	.	.	.	1	(0)
Lobatsi	.	.	.	.	5	(7)
Mahalapye	.	.	.	.	4	(2)
Mochudi	.	.	.	.	93	(21)
Molepolole	.	.	.	.	11	(2)
Serowe	.	.	.	.	82	(5)
					204	(41)

It will be noted that at Serowe a 16-fold increase over 1955 was diagnosed and at Mochudi a 4-fold increase.

Diphtheria

The number of cases notified was 33 (1955: 91) with 6 (1955: 5) deaths. There were no extensive outbreaks. A combined campaign against diphtheria and pertussis was planned during 1955 with U.N.I.C.E.F. and Colonial Development and Welfare assistance. This

overseas help was matched by staff and equipment supplied from Bechuanaland Protectorate sources. The objective is the inoculation with combined pertussis and diphtheria vaccine of all children up to the age of 6 years, and with diphtheria vaccine alone of all children and adolescents between the ages of 6 and 18; it is hoped to reach 80% of the susceptible population. The campaign started, after several unavoidable delays, in September and by the end of the year 33,225 inoculations had been given.

Dysentery

783, (1955: 1,260) cases were notified during the year.

Leprosy

Only 2 (1955: 34) cases were reported.

Malaria

1,964 (1955: 2,109) cases were recorded with 4 (1955: 2) deaths.

Plague

Nil.

Smallpox

Nil.

Trypanosomiasis

9 (1955: 4) cases were seen during the year in Ngamiland.

Tuberculosis

2,286 (1955: 2,279) cases were recorded during the year with 32 (1955: 30) deaths.

SURVEYS

Dr. F. Zumpt of the South African Institute for Medical Research continued his investigations on animal parasites during the year.

3. HOUSING AND TOWN PLANNING

The majority of the people live in the traditional type of hut with mud walls and a thatched roof. The type and soundness of construction vary considerably, but on the whole the huts are maintained in good condition. They are usually constructed by the owner and his family, sometimes with help from friends, on land allocated by the Chief or local headman. Even in towns there is little or no overcrowding and there are no slums.

A few of the wealthier Africans have European-type houses built.

Europeans usually live in detached houses of brick or concrete.

Public Health Regulations, made under Cap. 49 of the Laws, are administered by the Medical Officer of Health and Health Inspectors in the major centres of population. It is not always possible for the smaller centres to be inspected regularly but the absence of overcrowding makes rigid enforcement of many of the regulations unnecessary.

Thirty-four prefabricated houses were completed and other houses, both for Europeans and Africans, were under construction by the Government at the end of the year.

4. SOCIAL WELFARE

Many social problems are satisfactorily solved according to long established tribal custom. The sense of communal obligation is very real and the care of orphans, the aged and infirm, is voluntarily undertaken by relatives according to a definite order of responsibility which is laid down by tribal law.

An annual Government provision of £600 is available if required for the relief of destitution and Government or mission hospitals and clinics are established at strategic points to deal with cases of serious illness or disease.

Throughout the entire sphere of social welfare, official schemes are designed to augment rather than to replace those operating within the tribal framework.

YOUTH MOVEMENTS

The Boy Scout Movement continues to make good progress, the membership of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Association having reached a new record figure of 2,385 members. Sixteen new groups were started in 1956. Nine of the 118 warranted officers have obtained the Wood Badge, and during the year five first class badges have been won by Scouts.

The Bechuanaland Protectorate division of the Girl Guide Association has had a busy year which included a series of visits and training courses by Mademoiselle de Meulemeester of Belgium, and a short tour by Miss Elizabeth Hartley, Training Commissioner from Commonwealth Headquarters. Membership has increased by about 1,000 during 1956 and is now approximately 4,000, of whom 1,438 are enrolled Guides.

Similar progress is reported concerning the Boys' Brigade and Girls' Life Brigade companies of Ngamiland where, in June, the Brigades celebrated the Silver Jubilee of their establishment in the Bechuanaland Protectorate by a week-end rally at Maun. New companies have been formed at Sehitwa and Tsau, and the total membership is now in the region of 200.

BLIND WELFARE

A survey of the ages and distribution of the blind population was begun in preparation for the visit early in 1957 of an expert from the British Empire Society for the Blind, who will advise on the possibility of establishing a village training centre for the Blind.

MOBILE CINEMA

The mobile cinema gave 64 shows during the year to average audiences of about 1,500 people. The shows are exceedingly popular and provide a useful means of preparing the ground for various development campaigns.

COMMUNITY CENTRES

Centres and clubs for Africans are established at Serowe, Mahalapye and Francistown, where members enjoy a wide variety of sports and games and cultural activities. The Maun community is steadily raising funds, which now exceed £1,500, towards the cost of a community hall which it is hoped will soon be erected. A new youth centre is being built on the edge of the Francistown Location.

CHAPTER 8

LEGISLATION

The following were the principal enactments during the year:

- (1) Proclamation No. 108 (of 1955), Cinematograph (Amendment): Amended the law relating to cinematograph pictures.
- (2) Proclamation No. 1, Habit-Forming Drugs (Amendment): Amended the law relating to habit-forming drugs.
- (3) Proclamation No. 3, Staff Quarters Loan: Made provision for the raising of a loan to finance the building of staff quarters.
- (4) Proclamation No. 8, Widows' and Orphans' Pension (Amendment): Amended the law relating to widows' and orphans' pensions.
- (5) Proclamation No. 13, Legal Practitioners (Amendment): Amended the law relating to the admission and enrolment of legal practitioners to practise in the Territory.
- (6) High Commissioner's Notice No. 9: Made provision for the more extensive control of poisonous drugs.

- (7) Proclamation No. 22, Fencing (Amendment): Applied the provisions of the Cape Fencing Act, 1883, to part of the Tati District.
- (8) Proclamation No. 23, Poll Tax (Amendment): Amended the law relating to the payment of poll tax.
- (9) Proclamation No. 24, African Administration: Made provision for the greater participation by Africans in the administration of the Territory.
- (10) High Commissioner's Notice No. 22: Amended Import Control Regulations.
- (11) Proclamation No. 26, Moeng College Constitution: Made provision for the constitution and administration of Moeng College.
- (12) Proclamation No. 30, Excise: Consolidated and amended the laws relating to excise.
- (13) Proclamation No. 32, Police Rifle Association: Made provision for the formation of an association of rifle clubs in the Territory.
- (14) High Commissioner's Notice No. 63: Published a Customs Agreement between the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland and the three High Commission Territories.
- (15) High Commissioner's Notice No. 69: Published revised telephone trunk call charges and supplementary trunk service charges.
- (16) High Commissioner's Notice No. 73: Published revised rates of money order commissions.
- (17) High Commissioner's Notice No. 74: Published revised parcel post rates and cash on delivery charges.
- (18) High Commissioner's Notice No. 87: Amended Court of Appeal Rules.
- (19) Proclamation No. 51, Inquests (Amendment): Amended the law relating to the holding of inquests.
- (20) Proclamation No. 54, Women and Girls' Protection (Amendment): Amended the law relating to the protection of women and girls.
- (21) Proclamation No. 57, Income Tax Amendment: Amended the law relating to Income Tax.
- (22) Proclamation No. 59, Development Loan: Made provision for the raising of a loan to finance the building of European and African staff quarters and the development of railway water supplies.
- (23) Proclamation No. 62, Boreholes: Made provision for the notification of new boreholes in the Territory and the keeping of records and samples relating thereto.
- (24) Proclamation No. 64, Immigration: Amended and consolidated the laws relating to immigration.
- (25) High Commissioner's Notice No. 108: Published immigration regulations.
- (26) Proclamation No. 70, Agricultural Loan (Amendment): Raised the maximum advance from £1,000 to £2,500.
- (27) Proclamation No. 71, Native Reserves (Amendment): Re-defined the boundaries of the Bangwaketse and Bamalete Native Reserves.

- (28) Proclamation No. 73, Widows' and Orphans' Pension (Amendment): Further amended the law relating to widows' and orphans' pensions.
- (29) Proclamation No. 76, Income Tax (Rates and Amendment): Fixed the rates of normal and super income tax to be levied for the year of assessment ended on the 30th June, 1956, and further amended the law relating to income tax.
- (30) Proclamation No. 78, Unlawful Assemblies: Made provision for the prohibition of assemblies of persons which might endanger the public peace, for the dispersal of riotous assemblies, and for matters ancillary thereto.
- (31) High Commissioner's Notice No. 116: Re-defined the Lobatsi District.
- (32) High Commissioner's Notice No. 118: Published telephone tariffs.
- (33) Proclamation No. 68, Customs: Amended and consolidated the laws relating to customs.
- (34) Proclamation No. 80, Trading: Made fuller and better provision relating to trading in the Territory and provided for the granting of licences in connection therewith.
- (35) Proclamation No. 85, Native Graded Taxation (Amendment): Raised the flat rate of tax in respect of mine labourers from 10s. to £1.
- (36) High Commissioner's Notice No. 127: Published revised parcel post rates.
- (37) High Commissioner's Notice No. 129: Published telegram rates.

CHAPTER 9

JUSTICE, POLICE AND PRISONS

1. JUSTICE

In criminal matters the Court of Appeal, High Court and Subordinate Courts are governed by the Criminal Procedure and Evidence Proclamation. This proclamation follows the criminal law in force in the Union of South Africa.

In civil matters, except where native law and custom is involved, the Roman Dutch Common law in force in the Union of South Africa is followed. This is so because in the Bechuanaland Protectorate the Cape of Good Hope Laws promulgated up to the 10th June, 1891, remain in force, except where repealed or altered by Proclamation by the High Commissioner.

The Bechuanaland Protectorate Courts of Law consist of:

COURT OF APPEAL

A Court of Appeal for all three Territories was established on the 15th April, 1955, under the Basutoland, Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland Court of Appeal Order in Council, 1954. This Court is composed of the Chief Justice, who is President, and other Judges of Appeal.

Thus, litigants can appeal from High Court decisions to a local Court of Appeal, instead of having to appeal direct to the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. The further right of appeal to the Judicial Committee is retained.

Circumstances in which an appeal lies to the Court of Appeal, and Court rules governing appeals, are the subject of local legislation.

The Court of Appeal was unable to sit in the Bechuanaland Protectorate as the existing Court House at Lobatsi could not accommodate the Court and in addition the constant interference of the proceedings occasioned by the shunting and passing of trains nearby made it quite impossible for any sustained arguments to be followed. Provision has, however, been made for a new High Court building on rising ground three miles from the present Court House and as work on that building has already commenced it is hoped to open it officially and have it in use towards the end of June, 1957. In the meantime appeals from the Bechuanaland Protectorate to the Court of Appeal have been heard at Mbabane as being more convenient and nearer than at Maseru in Basutoland which would be the alternative.

HIGH COURT

The High Court is a Superior Court of Record and, in addition to any other jurisdiction conferred by local law, possesses and exercises all the jurisdiction, power, and authorities vested in the Supreme Court of South Africa.

Although the decision in every case, civil and criminal, is vested exclusively in the presiding Judge, he generally sits with four Assessors (two Administrative Officers and two Africans) who act in an advisory capacity.

In practice four Assessors sit in every criminal trial and in many criminal appeals.

In civil cases the practice is for the Judge to sit alone where only law, other than native law and custom, and not fact only, is involved. Where native law and custom is involved the Judge sits with four Assessors or with two African Assessors only, depending on the character of each particular case.

SUBORDINATE COURTS OF THE FIRST,
SECOND AND THIRD CLASS

In the twelve districts of the Territory there are Subordinate Courts of the First, Second and Third Class presided over by Administrative Officers.

(a) *Criminal*

(i) *First Class*: Can impose sentences up to a maximum of two years with or without hard labour, or a fine up to one hundred pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum imprisonment of two years is not exceeded. In certain cases and subject to certain safeguards a whipping not exceeding fifteen strokes with a cane may be imposed.

(ii) *Second Class*: The maximum sentence is imprisonment with or without hard labour up to one year, or a fine not exceeding fifty pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum sentence of one year is not exceeded. A whipping not exceeding eight strokes with a cane may be imposed in certain cases and subject to certain safeguards.

(iii) *Third Class*: The maximum sentence is imprisonment with or without hard labour up to six months, or fine not exceeding twenty-five pounds, or both imprisonment and fine, provided that the maximum sentence of six months is not exceeded. A Third Class Court cannot impose a sentence of whipping.

Subordinate Courts have no power to try a person charged with treason, murder, sedition or an offence relating to coinage or currency, nor can they normally try cases of rape though a Subordinate Court of the First Class has jurisdiction to try cases of rape where Africans only are concerned and the Attorney General may, after committal for trial, remit any case of rape to a Subordinate Court of the First Class with or without increased jurisdiction as set out below. This jurisdiction of a First Class Court to try cases of rape where Africans only are concerned is peculiar to the Bechuanaland Protectorate in that the Subordinate Courts of the other two High Commission Territories, Basutoland and Swaziland, do not have such jurisdiction though the Subordinate Court of the First Class in these two Territories will likewise have jurisdiction on remittal to try any case of rape.

(b) *Increased criminal jurisdiction*

The Attorney-General may remit a case (not being treason, murder, sedition or an offence relating to coinage or currency) to a Subordinate Court for trial with or without increased jurisdiction, after the holding of a preparatory examination. When so remitted with increased jurisdiction the powers of punishment are:

(i) *First Class*: Imprisonment up to four years; fine not exceeding two hundred pounds.

(ii) *Second Class*: Imprisonment up to two years: fine not exceeding one hundred pounds.

Note: There is no remittal to a Third Class Court and therefore no increased jurisdiction for such a Court.

(c) Criminal Review

In criminal cases all sentences by Subordinate Courts of the First Class are automatically subject to review by the High Court when the punishment imposed exceeds six months' imprisonment or a fine exceeding fifty pounds.

As regards the Second and Third Class Subordinate Courts they are also subject to a similar review by the High Court when the punishment imposed exceeds three months' imprisonment or a fine exceeding twenty-five pounds.

(d) Civil

In civil cases Subordinate Courts of the First Class have jurisdiction in all actions where both parties are Africans, subject to the right of such Courts to transfer cases to the Native Courts for hearing, and in all other actions where the claim or value of the matter in dispute does not exceed five hundred pounds, and of the Second Class where the matter in dispute does not exceed two hundred and fifty pounds. Third Class Subordinate Courts can try civil action between Europeans when the claim is not more than ten pounds.

NATIVE COURTS

These are governed by Cap. 5 of the Laws.

JUDICIARY AND LEGAL DEPARTMENT

JUDICIARY

The Judiciary is headed by the Chief Justice, who is also Chief Justice of Basutoland and Swaziland. He is resident in Basutoland because there is more work there than in each of the other two Territories.

During 1955 a Puisne Judge was appointed for all three Territories. Like the Chief Justice, he is stationed in Basutoland.

The Chief Justice, now that a Puisne Judge has been appointed, generally confines his activities to the Court of Appeal, Criminal Review cases, the supervision of the work of Subordinate Courts and the administrative side of the Judiciary. A practice has been arranged by which the Chief Justice visits the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland from Maseru quarterly to take civil matters and applications and if necessary civil trials; this being in addition to the normal criminal and civil sessions.

Under the Chief Justice there are the Registrar, High Court, and the various Presiding Officers of the Subordinate Courts — that is the Administrative Officers in their judicial capacity.

During the year the following statistics are of interest:

(a) High Court

In criminal trials twelve persons, including one female, were indicted of whom all were eighteen years or over. There were nine cases in-

volving eighteen charges against those persons on which there were fourteen convictions and four acquittals; eight of those convictions were for murder.

Criminal Review cases from Subordinate Courts totalled one hundred and forty-nine of which twelve were varied. There were four criminal appeals of which three were dismissed, none allowed and one was pending at the end of the year.

There were forty civil cases of which thirty were disposed of and ten were pending at the end of the year.

There were only two civil appeals from Subordinate Courts of which one was dismissed and the other allowed.

(b) Subordinate Courts

For statistics in regard to persons dealt with by the courts, see Appendix VI. Apart from a number of petty offences not classified under any particular heading most of the charges were in respect of liquor offences which totalled 682, theft (common), common assault and traffic offences which together totalled 681 and these are followed by drug offences totalling 123.

Including those pending at the end of 1955, namely, 206, and those registered in 1956 there were 961 civil cases of which 668 were heard leaving 293 to be carried forward, an increase of 87 over the previous year's figure which exactly corresponds with the total increase in civil cases during the year.

LEGAL DEPARTMENT

The Legal Department is responsible for the drafting of the bulk of legislation emanating from the Territory, and the scrutiny and finalisation of legislation drafted departmentally, together with certain other legal duties including the drafting of various instruments required by Government, the control of Crown Leases and the advising of Government on matters of law generally.

The duties of the Legal Department also comprise those of the office of Registrar and Master of the High Court, and of the Registries of Deeds; Patents, Trade Marks and Designs; Births, Marriages and Deaths; and Brands.

During the year 19 new estates were filed in the Master's office, and the following new registrations were affected:

(a) Deeds

(i) 154 transfers of immovable property, the purchase prices or valuations thereof totalling £292,960.

(ii) 53 bonds, the total amount secured being £232,438.

(b) Trade Marks, Patents and Designs

3 Patents

56 Union Trade Marks

56 United Kingdom Trade Marks.

(c) *Births, Deaths and Marriages*

117 births (105 European, 12 Asiatic) 12 were late registrations;
725 Marriages (all races, marriages in Christian form);
19 deaths (18 European, 1 Asiatic) one was a late registration.

(d) *Brands*

461.

2. POLICE

The authorised establishment of the Bechuanaland Protectorate Police was 48 commissioned and subordinate European officers, 4 African warrant officers, 41 non-commissioned officers and 276 constables. Of the three European subordinate officers appointed during the year, one was recruited from the United Kingdom and two from the Union of South Africa.

Police stations are widely distributed throughout the Territory and distances are considerable. For example, Shakawe station on the Okovango river in the north-west is over 1,000 miles by road from the headquarters at Mafeking.

Patrols totalling 1,168,938 miles were carried out by motor vehicle, bicycle, aircraft, canoe, horse, mule, camel, donkey, train and on foot.

Criminal statistics for 1956 reveal that the number of cases investigated and handled by Police was 5,251. Serious crime decreased by approximately 19% compared with the previous year and petty crime by 8%. There was a decrease in cases of stock theft, offences against the person, common theft and possession of habit-forming drugs, and an increase in detection of offences under the liquor laws, motor vehicle regulations and the game laws.

Nineteen police stations are connected by radio link with headquarters, and during the year the Force wireless officer covered 17,499 miles in the Protectorate on maintenance and inspection duties. Certain of the Force's motor vehicles also have V.H.F. wireless equipment installed.

The Commissioner of Police is Chief Immigration Officer and Passport Officer for the Protectorate. All European members of the Force of and above the rank of Sub-Inspector are appointed immigration officers. During the year 58 new passports were issued, 30 renewed and 30 visas issued. In addition, 90 certificates of identity and 468 certificates of residence were issued. Nineteen Europeans and one Indian were declared prohibited immigrants: 211 clandestine African immigrants were returned to Southern Rhodesia, 144 to the Union of South Africa, 9 to Nyasaland and 1 to Portuguese East Africa.

3. PRISONS

There are two gaols in the Territory at Gaberones and Francistown and there are lock-ups at Lobatsi, Mochudi, Tsabong, Maun, Kasane, Serowe, Palapye, Mahalapye, Machaneng, Kanye, Molepolole and

Ghanzi. The prisons and lock-ups are in charge of the District Commissioner in each district; at Francistown and Gaberones gaols there is a European gaoler but all the lock-ups are staffed with African warders. There is a permanent wardress at Francistown and another at Gaberones and if a female prisoner is admitted to one of the lock-ups, temporary wardresses are engaged. At Maun, Serowe and Gaberones there are gaol cooks; at the other prisons and lock-ups the cooking is satisfactorily done by prisoners. The average daily prison population for all gaols was 351.7.

Offences against prison regulations, not including escapes, amounted to 17; 32 prisoners escaped, all from working parties outside the prisons; 24 of them were recaptured.

The health of the prisoners during the year was good, the daily average on the sick list being only 14.7. There are no facilities for the education of prisoners though elementary peasant agriculture is taught on the gaol plot at Gaberones gaol.

Remission of sentences is governed by paragraphs 153 to 158 of the Prison Regulations (Cap. 54 of the Laws) which provide that every prisoner serving a sentence for a period exceeding one month shall, according to his conduct and industry, be allowed an ordinary remission not exceeding one-third of his sentence. Remission can be forfeited for prison offences or generally bad behaviour.

Power is also vested in the High Commissioner to allow special remissions.

There are no approved schools or similar institutions in the Territory nor are there any arrangements for the aftercare of discharged prisoners, but District Commissioners are very ready to render them any assistance possible.

CHAPTER 10

PUBLIC UTILITIES AND PUBLIC WORKS

At Francistown there is an electricity supply owned and operated by the Tati Company. The Colonial Development Corporation at Lobatsi has installed a power station and supplies its own works and buildings, the hotel and a number of private persons. Each Government hospital in the Territory generates its own electricity (all have X-ray apparatus) and a few residents and hotels have installed private electric plants. The Government workshop at Gaberones also has its own plant. At each district headquarters and at Palapye, Mahalapye and Ramathlabama the Government provides a water supply for its own use and for its employees but it is not generally available for the public.

Apart from these services, and from the railway, telegraph and telephone system, there are no public utilities.

The work of the Public Works department covers and includes all activities connected with:

- (a) Construction and maintenance of roads and bridges;
- (b) Construction and maintenance of buildings;
- (c) Provision and maintenance of water supplies.
- (d) Maintenance of waterways;
- (e) Maintenance of Mechanical transport and running of garages and central workshops;
- (f) Construction and maintenance of aerodromes and emergency landing grounds;
- (g) Geodetic and topographical surveys;
- (h) Town planning and development.

WATER SUPPLIES

During the year four new stock dams were constructed in the Bamangwato Reserve giving a total of approximately 388 acre feet. One dam was desilted. An earth dam was constructed at Mheelo in order to augment and sustain two boreholes used for the Kanye water supply.

Work was carried out on a spongy area at Palapye which was in danger of being silted up. After being fenced in by the Agricultural Department a small concrete diversion wall was constructed with piping to feed a cattle trough with a separate compartment for domestic use. This is working well and the flow of water has increased a great deal.

Stock dams in the Batlokwa Reserve are being desilted and minor surface repairs are being carried out.

The following is the position regarding the number of stock dams completed under the Colonial Development and Welfare Fund Surface Water Development Scheme:

Bakgatla Reserve	.	.	.	.	7
Bangwaketse Reserve	.	.	.	.	18
Bakwena Reserve	.	.	.	.	21
Batlokwa Reserve	.	.	.	.	1
Bamalete Reserve	.	.	.	.	1
Bamangwato Reserve	.	.	.	.	20
					68

A twin arch concrete dam at Palapye holding some 60-million gallons was completed at the beginning of the year.

Plans for the building of a 435-million gallon capacity mass gravity concrete dam at Notwani have been prepared and as soon as finality has been reached regarding the land to be inundated work will start on the construction of the dam.

In the field 12,249 feet of new water mains and service piping was laid, 34 water meters installed and 25 house connections made.

Work is proceeding on the extension and augmentation of Lobatsi domestic water supplies.

During the year the total holes drilled numbered 87 of which 36 were drilled by contract and 51 by Government. Of this number 41 boreholes were successful and 36 blank with 10 uncompleted. Three boreholes were cleaned out and deepened. Footage drilled in productive bores was 9,963 feet, blank bores totalled 8,683 feet and uncompleted bores 1,692 feet. The total footage drilled was 20,368 feet and the total yield obtained in gallons per hour 52,378.

Seven drilling machines of contract drillers have been in operation since 19th September. Not all the eight Government drilling machines were in continuous operation during the year owing to lack of drillers, transport delays and leave.

Bamangwato Reserve

Boreholes drilled, 5; Productive, 5; Blank, Nil; Footage drilled 1,025; Yield developed in g.p.h., 5,480.

Bakwena Reserve

Boreholes drilled, 12; Productive, 5; Blank, 7; Footage drilled 3,039; Yield developed in g.p.h., 9,004.

Bangwaketse Reserve

Boreholes drilled, 5; Productive, 2; Blank, 3; Footage drilled, 1,024; Yield developed in g.p.h., 3,320.

Kgalagadi Reserve

Boreholes drilled, 5; Productive, 1; Blank, 3; Uncompleted, 1; Footage drilled, 1,629; Yield developed in g.p.h., 2,240; Boreholes cleaned out, 1.

Bakgatla Reserve

Boreholes drilled, 2; Productive, 1; Blank, 1; Footage drilled, 407; Yield developed in g.p.h., 240.

Bamulete Reserve

Boreholes drilled, 1; Blank, 1; Footage drilled, 53; Cleaned out and deepened, 1; Yield developed in g.p.h., 120.

Veterinary Department

Boreholes drilled, 3; Productive, 1; Uncompleted, 2; Footage drilled, 602; Yield developed in g.p.h., 1,200.

Railway Drilling

Boreholes drilled, 3; Productive, 2; Uncompleted, 1; Footage drilled, 390; Yield developed in g.p.h., 854.

Ghanzi Cattle Route

Boreholes drilled, 7; Productive, 3; Blank, 4; Footage drilled, 1,890; Cleaned out and deepened, 1; Yield developed in g.p.h., 2,100.

Government

Boreholes drilled, 8; Productive, 3; Blank, 4; Uncompleted, 1; Footage drilled, 967; Yield developed in g.p.h., 8,570.

Contract Drilling: Bakwena Reserve

Boreholes drilled, 36; Productive, 18; Blank, 13; Uncompleted, 5; Footage drilled, 9,332; Yield developed in g.p.h., 19,250.

TRANSPORT

The Government Workshops at Gaberones carried out 961 Government jobs, and 103 repairs were effected for the public unable to obtain service elsewhere.

Workshops at Mahalapye and Maun also carried out vehicle and equipment repairs. During the year the carpenter's shop built 7 caravans and 5 cabooses.

SURVEYS

Seventeen more plots were laid out and surveyed and nine houses sited in the Imperial Reserve at Mafeking.

Nine building plots were laid out and surveyed at Gaberones camp. In addition, the security camp was also surveyed, together with the proposed site for the new Police camp.

Forty building plots have been laid out and surveyed at Ghanzi.

An area of 40 square morgen of Bangwaketse Territory has been surveyed. This land is to be ceded to the Bamalete Tribe.

The plan for a proposed site for an extension to the Lobatsi township has been completed.

In order to decide on the position of the centre line of the Molopo River a small portion about 100 miles west of Tsabong has been surveyed.

Approximately $1\frac{3}{4}$ miles of the main road through Lobatsi has been surveyed in detail and 5 plans to a scale of 40 feet to 1 inch have been prepared. This has been done for the purpose of tarring the main road in Lobatsi.

The Athlone Hospital site has been surveyed and a plan prepared. Eight building plots have been pegged out and surveyed at Lobatsi.

All office work and computations for the Moeng College and Lobatsi Crown Lands have been completed and the plans should be completed by the end of January, 1957.

BUILDINGS

Funds to a total of £316,000 were approved for new buildings and maintenance.

During the year under review the following were completed:

Mafeking

11 prefabricated houses;

Additions to Medical Department offices;

New Stores — Medical Department;
Additions to Secretariat;
Additions to Education Department offices;
New Stores Department offices and stores.

Lobatsi

High Court
Seven prefabricated houses;
Teacher Training Centre;
New quarters for African nurses.

Mahalapye

Additions to Public Works Department offices, workshops and stores.

Maun

Additions to Public Works Department offices, workshops and stores.
Four prefabricated houses.

Baines Drift

New Police offices;
Additions to Police Department house.

Francistown

New stores and works area for Public Works Department;
Six prefabricated houses.

Ramathlabama

Farm School, Veterinary Department;
Quarters for staff, Veterinary Department.

Gaberones

Additions to Public Works Department offices;
Additions to Public Works Department workshop;
New barracks for Public Works Department artisans;
Police Department — Security Camp;
Four prefabricated houses;
Health centre and staff quarters.

Ghanzi

New Police station;
Nursing sisters' quarters.

Serowe

One prefabricated house.

The following work was started and is still under construction:

Lobatsi

Four prefabricated houses;
New divisional offices;
New offices for Geological Survey Department.

Palapye

New Post Office.

Moeng

New classrooms and staff housing.

Ghanzi

Additional classrooms — European school;

Two prefabricated houses;

New District Administration offices.

CHAPTER 11

COMMUNICATIONS

RAILWAYS

The main railway line from Cape Town to Rhodesia passes through the Protectorate entering at Ramathlabama, 886 miles from Cape Town, and leaving at Ramaquabane, 394 miles further north. The single track line runs roughly parallel to the eastern boundary of the Protectorate at an average distance from it of about 50 miles. The railway within the Protectorate formed part of the undertakings owned and operated by the Rhodesia Railways Limited which have been transferred to a statutory body established under the Laws of Southern Rhodesia and operating under the laws of the three territories of Southern Rhodesia, Northern Rhodesia and the Bechuanaland Protectorate.

ROADS, BRIDGES AND VEHICLES

The roads in the Protectorate are of earth or sand formed to shape and camber, the only exceptions being where they pass through townships and have been gravelled (and in two cases tarred) for short lengths. The aggregate length of gravelling is a fraction of one per cent. of the total road mileage and the roads must therefore be classified as earth roads only.

The sum of £30,000 was voted for road maintenance. This is an increase on the amount provided in the previous year.

The Public Works Department maintained approximately 670 miles of arterial gravel roads.

During the year two special gangs were employed on the provision of adequate drainage on the main roads. Work was concentrated on the worst sections and culvert construction on these is almost complete. Special attention was given also to the construction of mitre drains on all sections.

Enough concrete grid gate sections have now been cast for reconstruction of the old grid gates on the Ramathlabama-Lobatsi section of the main road. It is expected that site work will commence early in April, 1957.

All road signs purchased during the financial year have been erected at the more dangerous places and all bends have been demarcated by suitably placed whitewashed stones.

District and by-roads are given as much attention as possible by District Commissioners who receive small allocations of funds to carry out essential maintenance and road repairs. Of the total £30,000 voted, £10,000 was spent on district road maintenance.

Under a Colonial Development and Welfare Fund grant a new scheme was started in October, 1956. This provided for extensive reconstruction and improvement of some of the more important arterial roads. Although deliveries of most capital equipment were delayed and supervisory staff was difficult to obtain the work is proceeding rapidly on this new scheme and on the Maun-Francistown road, a distance of 320 miles, 120 miles had been gravelled, widened and cambered by December, 1956, to the same standard as the main arterial road. This road has fallen into a bad state of repair because the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association, who had previously maintained it, had ceased work a year previously.

The tarring of the Lobatsi main road has begun and it is expected that the work will be completed by March, 1957.

The Matlapaneng bridge was reconstructed during the period of low water in the Thamalakane River and three of the existing culverts were completely rebuilt. It was thought expedient to construct the culverts in concrete with adequate cut-off walls. An additional culvert was built as it was obvious that the existing combined waterway was insufficient to cope with the flood which damaged the bridge. One culvert remains to be repaired. The condition of this culvert has been under observation and it is intended to rebuild it at the end of March, 1957, when the river is low and suitable heavy machinery will be available.

The Shashi bridge at Maun was repaired and sufficient additional culverts were built into the bridge to cope with the expected flow of water.

Extensive repair work was carried out on the Nata bridge as it was revealed on inspection that the flood waters had undermined the foundations to such an extent that the flood waters were being forced through under the foundations of the bridge. A cut-off wall was built on the upstream face and extended to bedrock. Damage caused on the downstream side by scour and erosive action of floodwater was also repaired.

The numbers of registered motor vehicles in use at the end of the year were 719 cars, 676 commercial vehicles, 102 tractors, 29 trailers, and 17 motor cycles.

RIVER AND LAKE TRANSPORT

There is no public service but canoe transport is used to some extent on the Okovango and Chobe Rivers.

AIR

There are aerodromes at Gaborones, Mahalapye, Francistown, Maun, Serowe, Tsabong, Ghanzi, Lobatsi, Molepolole, Palapye and Rakops and emergency landing strips at Makalamabedi, Mosetse, Odeakwe, Artesia and Mabeleapudi.

Normal maintenance of all Government airfields was continued. The proposed site for a new aerodrome at Maun was surveyed and a plan prepared.

POSTS AND TELEGRAPHS, TELEPHONES AND
WIRELESS COMMUNICATIONS

The main centres of population adjacent to the railway line are connected to the South African and Southern Rhodesian telegraph systems. Up to the end of 1956 lines north of Lobatsi were operated by the Southern Rhodesian Government and those south of that town by the Union Government.

There is a telephone service between Lobatsi in the Southern Protectorate and the Union of South Africa and at Francistown, in the north, there is another telephone network with the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland. About 120 subscribers benefit from these inter-territorial services. In addition there is a restricted telephone service, confined to some 25 subscribers, between Palapye and Serowe. A number of smaller villages have a local telephone network with no trunk outlets.

Plans were made during the year to purchase all telegraph and telephone installations from the Federal Government and the transfer will take place on the 1st January, 1957, from which date all postal services operated by the Union Government's Department of Posts and Telegraphs will also be taken over by the Bechuanaland Protectorate Government.

There is an extensive wireless service in the Protectorate. The first installations were erected in 1935 and the system was originally intended only for official administrative communication with stations remote from the telegraph line. Public demand, however, soon made it necessary to accept telegrams from the public for transmission over the system, which is now linked with the telegraph services of the Union and Southern Rhodesia through the Government wireless network controlled from Mafeking. Some years later a Police wireless system was established and though this is primarily for the transmission of Police and other official messages, telegrams from the public are accepted at those stations at which there is no other form of telegraphic communication.

Altogether there are 44 stations, 32 of which are owned by Government and are controlled by the Commissioner of Police. There are 12 commercial stations, four of which are owned by the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association and one by the Moshaneng Asbestos Mine. At Maun, the South African Government controls a large aeradio

station with several transmitters. In addition there are a number of amateur stations in the Protectorate.

There are ten Post Offices in the Territory at Francistown, Palapye, Serowe, Mahalapye, Gaborone, Lobatsi, Kanye, Maun, Mochudi and Ghanzi at which money order and savings bank business is transacted. In addition there are 23 postal agencies at the smaller centres.

During the year 51,319 telegrams were sent and 39,647 were received through the post offices and agencies in the Territory. Money orders issued totalled 21,894 worth £66,133 7s. 1d. Money orders paid numbered 960 and were worth £9,835 4s. 0d. There were 4,359 savings bank deposits totalling £57,466 11s. 10d. and 4,148 withdrawals totalling £59,655 7s. 2d. Union and British Postal Orders issued totalled 34,749 worth £17,363 16s. 6d. The number of these postal orders paid was 7,292 and they were worth £5,288 3s. 9d.

CHAPTER 12

PRESS, BROADCASTING, FILMS AND GOVERNMENT INFORMATION SERVICES

No newspapers are published in the Protectorate. South African and Southern Rhodesian newspapers circulate.

The Government wireless station in Mafeking, in addition to providing the link between the Protectorate wireless system and the South African and Southern Rhodesian telegraph systems, broadcasts light musical programmes twice a day by arrangement with the South African Broadcasting Corporation and relays the South African news twice a day.

There are no cinemas in the Protectorate though in the larger centres films are shown in a local hall or hotel. There is a Government-owned mobile cinema van of which the operations are recorded in Chapter 7 (4).

There is no information service but the Government Secretary and Heads of Departments issue monthly news letters, to officials, suitable portions of which are conveyed to the public.

CHAPTER 13

LOCAL FORCES

There are none.

PART III

CHAPTER 1

GEOGRAPHY AND CLIMATE

The Territory of the Bechuanaland Protectorate is bounded on the south and east by the western boundary of the Union of South Africa, which follows the Notwani, Marico and Crocodile or Limpopo rivers, on the north-east by Southern Rhodesia and on the north and on the west by the Caprivi Zipfel and by the Territory of South West Africa, with the Kalahari desert extending over most of the western areas west and south of N'gamiland as far as latitude 27 degrees. This is not a desert in the commonly accepted sense of the word, but consists of vast expanses of undulating sand-belts with out-crops of lime-stone here and there. Large areas are wooded like park lands studded with camelthorn and other indigenous trees. In the limestone belts water is sometimes found at depths from 30 to 100 feet so that it is possible that under the deep over-burden of sand there may exist untapped reservoirs of water. The northern and south-western corners of the Kalahari have the least vegetation and most sand dunes but elsewhere the grasses are excellent, and this is the natural habitat of the true aboriginal bushmen who lead a primitive nomadic existence, living chiefly on the flesh of game shot with poisoned arrows, supplementing this with wild fruits and roots.

The Protectorate has not been surveyed as a whole but its area is estimated at 275,000 square miles. The mean altitude is about 3,300 feet.

There is beautiful scenery in the north-western part of the Protectorate, in the Okovango delta into which the great Okovango River, flowing inland from the north-west, benevolently pours its flood waters, which, in seasons of heavy rainfall, flow as far south-east as the Makarikari salt lake and south and south-west into Lake Ngami. The Chobe area is also notable for its scenic beauty especially along the Chobe river, which flows into the Zambesi 60 miles west of the Victoria Falls.

The eastern portion of the country also has some fine hill scenery. The remainder, though it appears at first sight to be very flat, is in reality undulating and is rich in grasses, shrubs and trees. The south-eastern half is similar to the bushveld of the northern Transvaal. There are occasional outcrops of limestone and the surface is generally sandy and, except where boreholes and dams have been established, waterless. Old

and well defined river courses which nowadays flow only during the annual rains, indicate, however, that at one time the country was well watered, as is still the case north and north-east of Lake Ngami. In certain areas elsewhere good underground waters exist and are being developed as funds permit.

The Protectorate as a whole is a natural game reserve for most species of the fauna and Government policy is aimed at their preservation.

Only four towns have a population of over 10,000 according to the 1946 census; they are Kanye 23,000; Serowe 16,000; Molepolole 15,000; and Mochudi 12,000.

CLIMATE

The climate of the country, on a whole, is sub-tropical, but varies with latitude and altitude.

Latitude 22 degrees South passes through the centre of the country, and the northern areas of the Protectorate accordingly lie within the tropics.

The average rainfall in the Territory is 18 inches, but this varies from nearly 27 inches in the north to 9 inches or less in the western Kalahari.

By far the greatest area of the more populated portion of the Protectorate lies within an extensive saucerlike depression having an altitude of 3,000 feet bounded by higher ground at the extreme south (Hildavale) and the north-east (Southern Rhodesia) where the altitudes are over 4,000 feet. There are also elevations at Kanye, Serowe and Ghanzi of 4,000 to 5,000 feet.

The climate of the higher parts of the Territory is sub-tropical, varying to temperate. During the winter the days are pleasantly warm and the nights cold, with occasional frosts. The summer is hot but relief is sometimes obtained by a prevailing north-east breeze which generally springs up in the early part of the night. In the more low-lying parts during the winter, lasting from the beginning of May to the middle of August, it is pleasantly warm by day and comfortably cool at night, but in summer, which commences properly in October, the days are very hot and the nights uncomfortably warm. In August, as a rule, the annual seasonal winds from the west coast commence and, dessicated by the sand of the Kalahari, they resemble a "Simoon" and often continue until the equinox in September, sweeping across the whole country and carrying volumes of sand and dust.

The atmosphere throughout the year is very dry and this helps to mitigate the high temperatures, though to Europeans this dryness and strong sunlight week after week, without clouds to soften it, has the effect of producing nervous irritability, particularly in Europeans whose occupation is sedentary and does not permit of enough outdoor life.

If the necessary precautions are taken to guard against malaria, which is universal in the low-lying areas of the Territory, and provided sufficient outdoor exercise is taken, the climate is well suited to Europeans and their families.

CHAPTER 2

HISTORY

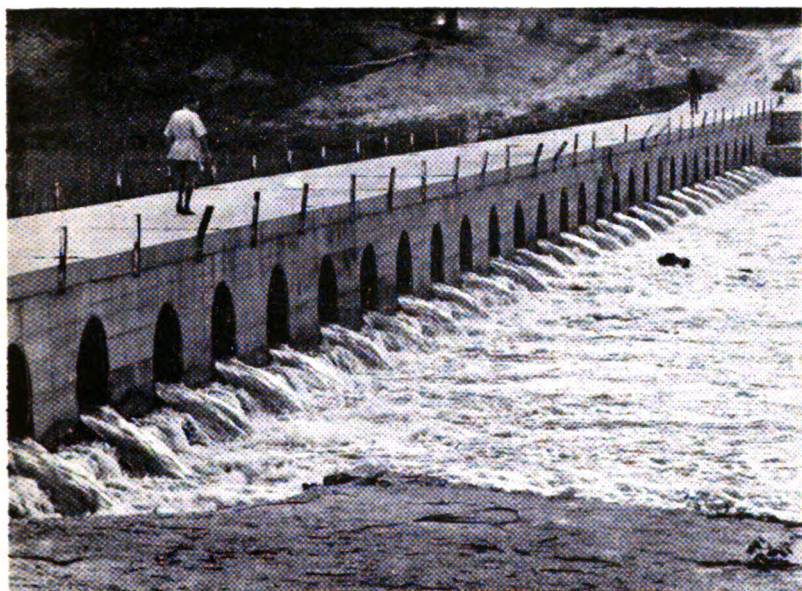
The picture presented by Southern Africa in the first quarter of the 19th century, north of the narrow strip which then comprised the extent of the European settlement, was a dismal one of savage tribal wars, pillage and bloodshed. The primary cause of these conditions was the expansion of the Zulus who, under Chaka, a military genius who had created out of a comparatively insignificant people a disciplined and war-like nation, waged incessant and merciless war on those people unfortunate enough to be within their reach. These activities, like a stone thrown into a pond, created waves far beyond the impact of Zulu warriors. In order to escape the Zulus, tribes on their borders fled to all points of the compass, despoiling on their way the tribes in their path and thereby setting up a general movement of destructive migration.

The most ferocious of these predatory bands were the followers of an amazon called Nma-Ntatisi and her son Sekonyela. These marauders—part refugees and part banditti—came from tribes living in the neighbourhood of what is now Basutoland. They banded themselves together into some sort of cohesive army and advanced northwards and westwards, harrying and destroying everything that stood in their way.

In a different category were the Matabele. These were originally a group of Chaka's people under Mzilikazi, one of Chaka's principal captains. On one of his raids Mzilikazi embezzled the booty and deemed it prudent not to return home. He moved north-westwards and, after a destructive march, established himself in the neighbourhood of what is now Zeerust, where he conducted bloody and profitable raids in systematic fashion on the tribes within his reach. The forays of Chaka's disciplined and merciless impis, the wholesale pillage of the hordes of Mma-Ntatisi, the murderous exodus of the Matabele as well as endless migrations by other less important tribes, themselves torn by internecine quarrels, had reduced the country to a pitiable state of misery and confusion. Yet it was at this time, in 1820, that Robert Moffat of London Missionary Society, undaunted by the dangers of such an undertaking, established his mission at Kuruman in the country later to become British Bechuanaland, and now incorporated in the Cape Province of the Union of South Africa.

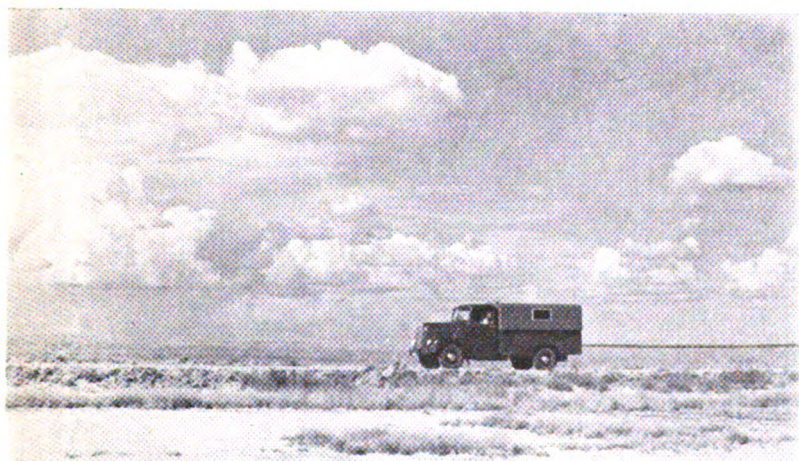
Among the people most conveniently situated to receive Mzilikazi's onslaughts were those known as Bechuana, of Sotho stock—and hence related to the people of what is now Basutoland, and to several other tribes—who lived in the western Transvaal and westwards towards the Kalahari. Like other Basuto people their early history is shrouded in legend.

As regards the principal tribes of the group the generally accepted tradition is that they are descended from a people ruled by a chief named Masilo who may have lived about the middle of the 17th century.



Bridge over the Toteng River, near Toteng, Ngamiland.

Photo: G. J. L. ATKINSON



Northern edge of the Makarikari Salt Lake.

Photo: G. J. L. ATKINSON



Before: Badly eroded lands in the Mabalapye area.

Photo: DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE



After: The same lands after reclamation.

Photo: DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE

Masilo had two sons, Mohurutshe and Malope. The former founded the line of the chiefs of the Bahurutshe, while the latter had three sons, Kwena, Ngwato and Ngwaketse. Ngwato and Ngwaketse at different times broke away from Kwena's tribe and went with their followers to live at a distance from each other. The Bahurutshe were set upon first by Mma-Ntatisi's horde and then by the Matabele. The home of this tribe is in the western Transvaal but scattered elements have attached themselves to the present ruling tribes of the Protectorate. A small group maintains some sort of independent existence near Francistown. The Bangwaketse, after several migrations, finally settled in their present country around Kanye while the Bamangwato founded a colony in the vicinity of Shoshong in the country occupied by the tribe today. The descendants of the Kwena section now live around Molepolole. Among the Bamangwato a further split occurred; Tawana, one of Chief Mathiba's sons, seceded at the end of the eighteenth century, and formed a new settlement in N'gamiland. The Batawana are still the ruling community in that area. Other important tribes of the Bechuana are the Bakgatla, the Bamalete and the Batlokwa. These are fairly recent immigrants into the Protectorate from the western Transvaal having arrived here in the nineteenth century. The Barolong, the greater number of whom today live in the Union, trace the genealogy of their chiefs to one Rolong, who lived at a time even more remote than did Masilo. The Barolong are settled along the southern border of the Protectorate and round Mafeking.

Soon after Moffat's arrival the existence of the tribe and of the mission was threatened by a horde of Bahlakwana and Maphuting, Sotho marauders from the east like the followers of Mm-Ntatisi, and set in motion by the same causes. Moffat acted with much vigour and enlisted the help of the Griqua half-casts who lived about 100 miles to the south of his station. These came to his aid and inflicted much execution on the invaders who had by then outrun their supplies and were not used to firearms. In the following year Moffat obtained an extraordinary ascendancy over Mzilikazi and, though the Matabele ceaselessly and mercilessly raided the unhappy Bechuana tribes to the north (among the worst sufferers being the Bakwena) the Mission at Kuruman and the peoples in its immediate surroundings remained inviolate.

The 50 years between 1820 and 1870 were periods of chaos and anarchy, of internecine quarrels and struggles which it would be tedious to recapitulate in detail. Internal and inter-tribal difficulties were complicated by the impact on these borders of the Boer trekkers. To the latter, however, belongs the credit of ridding the immediate neighbourhood of the Matabele; after several engagements with the Boer, disastrous for his tribe, Mzilikazi removed himself northwards in 1838, preying whenever he got the chance on the weaker people on the way, Bechuana and Makalanga. To these tactics few of the Bechuana chiefs made effective resistance with the exception of Chief Sekgoma of the Bamangwato who was made of sterner stuff than the rest, and who in 1840 inflicted several minor reverses on Matabele raiding parties. In

the meantime David Livingstone who had married Robert Moffat's daughter, Mary, established a mission among the Bakwena where he stayed until the early fifties.

In 1872 there acceded to the chieftainship of the Bamangwato (descendants, it will be remembered, of the adherents of Ngwato, son of Malope) the most remarkable African of his time and possibly one of the most remarkable of any time. This was Khama III, the son of Sekgoma I. His youth had been troubled by dissensions within the tribe and by the ever present peril of the Matabele. During the first few years of his reign he much enhanced the standing of his tribe until the Bamangwato were amongst the most prominent of the people of this part of Africa. He was no mean strategist, had a well trained and well equipped little army and earned the respect of Lobengula, son of Mzilikazi, and with it some assurance of immunity from the depredations of that potentate. A lifelong and rigid adherent of Christianity, he introduced numbers of reforms into the life of the tribe, one of the most important, and the one on which Khama himself set most store, being the total prohibition of alcoholic liquor. No detail of tribal administration escaped his attention and he devoted himself with energy and singleness of purpose to the uplifting of his people. Though the weaker tribes still had to submit to the ravages of Lobengula's Matabele, by the middle "seventies" there was some stability and order in the life of these regions, and the Bamangwato, under Khama's domination, and for that matter the other Bechuana tribes, enjoyed conditions less turbulent and chaotic than at any other time earlier in the century.

It was at this time, however, that the Bechuana began to feel the effect of forces that were entirely to alter their lives and to remould their destinies. Hitherto they had seen little of the white man. A few traders and hunters had indeed penetrated into their territories but these expeditions had been few and far between and, except at large centres like Shoshong, no permanent relations had been established. The only Europeans who had lived among them were the missionaries, men like Moffat and Livingstone and that remarkable missionary-administrator, MacKenzie. Now began the exploration of Africa, the division of the continent among the nations and the exploitation of its resources. Embittered relations between the Boers from the Transvaal and the Bechuana tribesmen (particularly the Barolong and the Bathaping) prompted the latter to address appeals for assistance to the Cape authorities while Khama, shortly after his accession, made representations to the High Commissioner that his country be taken under British protection. These appeals were powerfully seconded by Cecil Rhodes, who appreciated the importance of Bechuanaland as the "Suez Canal to the North" and was determined to keep it open for the furtherance of his plans for the occupation and development of the land beyond the Limpopo. But the British Government showed no anxiety to assume such new responsibilities and it was not until 1884 that the Home Government sent the Missionary John MacKenzie to these territories as Deputy Commissioner. Finally in 1885 Sir Charles Warren, with the concurrence of Khama and the other principal chiefs, proclaimed the whole of Bechu-

analand to be under the protection of Her Majesty the Queen. The southern part of the Territory, which included Mafeking, Vryburg and Kuruman, was later constituted a Crown Colony and eventually became part of the Cape Colony. It is now in the Cape Province of the Union of South Africa and is known as Bechuanaland and sometimes as British Bechuanaland. The northern part, thenceforward known as the Bechuanaland Protectorate, which stretches as far north as the Zambesi river, has remained to this day under the protection of the British Crown.

Meanwhile British expansion northwards continued and, with the occupation of what is now Southern Rhodesia, Rhodes's description of Bechuanaland as the "Suez Canal to the North" was fully justified.

In 1895 the British Government showed itself in favour of handing over the Administration of the Protectorate to the British South Africa Company. Chiefs Khama of the Bamangwato, Bathoen of the Bangwaketse and Sebele of the Bakwena went to England to protest against the suggested transfer and an agreement was reached that if they gave up a strip of land on the eastern side of the Protectorate for the construction of a railway (through which the railway runs today) they should remain, as they desired, under the protection of the British Crown.

So began the modern era in the Protectorate. The country is administered by a Resident Commissioner who lives in Mafeking and is responsible to the High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuanaland Protectorate and Swaziland (formerly styled the High Commissioner for South Africa). In the areas reserved for the occupation of their tribes the chiefs exercise a large measure of independent administration, with the advice of District Commissioners and technical officers of the Central Government.

Kkama died in 1923. The Native Authority of the tribe is Rasebolai, the grandson of Khama's younger brother, Kgamane. The tribal capital is at Serowe. Bathoen of the Bangwaketse and Kgari of the Bakwena are grandsons respectively of chiefs Bathoen and Sebele who visited England in 1895.

Of the other descendants of Masilo, Moremi III, chief of the Batawana of N'gamiland and descendant of Tawana, son of Mathiba, died in 1946. His son, Letsholathebe, is still a minor and the tribe is administered by a regent. The chiefly line of the Bahurutshe, if indeed it is represented at all, has no political importance in the Protectorate though this tribe is generally respected as the senior tribe among the tribes of the Bechuana.

CHAPTER 3

ADMINISTRATION

The constitutional position in the Bechuanaland Protectorate is governed by various Orders in Council and Proclamations, of which the most important is the Order in Council of Her Majesty Queen Victoria dated the 9th May, 1891. That Order in Council empowered the High Commissioner to exercise on Her Majesty's behalf all the powers and jurisdiction which Her Majesty at any time before or after that date of the Order had or might have within the Protectorate and to that end empowered him further to take or cause to be taken such measures and to do or cause to be done all such matters and things within the Protectorate as are lawful and as in the interest of Her Majesty's Service he might think expedient, subject to such instructions as he might from time to time receive from Her Majesty or through a Secretary of State.

Other provisions of the Order in Council empowered the High Commissioner:

- (1) to appoint administrative and judicial Officers and to assign their functions to them subject to the preservation of his own powers and authorities in their entirety; and
- (2) to provide by proclamation from time to time for the administration of justice, the raising of revenue and generally for the peace, order and good government of all persons within the Protectorate including the prohibition and punishment of acts tending to disturb the public peace.

In issuing this proclamation the High Commissioner was instructed by the Order in Council to respect any native laws and customs by which the civil relations of any native Chiefs, tribes or population under Her Majesty's protection were at that time (*viz.* in May, 1891) regulated except in so far as the same might be incompatible with the due exercise of Her Majesty's power and jurisdiction or which were repugnant to humanity.

The Order in Council required the High Commissioner to publish his proclamations in the Gazette and reserved to Her Majesty the right to disallow any such Proclamations. The Order in Council provided also that, subject to any proclamation lawfully issued by the High Commissioner, any jurisdiction exercisable otherwise than under this Order in Council of 1891, whether by virtue of any Statute or Order in Council or of any treaty, or otherwise, should remain in full force.

Her Majesty reserved the power to revoke, alter, add to or amend this Order in Council at any time.

All references to Her Majesty in the Order in Council were declared by it to include Her Majesty's Heirs and Successors.

The Protectorate is administered by a Resident Commissioner under the direction of the High Commissioner for Basutoland, the Bechuana-

land Protectorate and Swaziland (formerly styled the High Commissioner for South Africa).

The Territory comprises Crown Lands, European Blocks of farms, and Native Reserves and is divided, for administrative purposes, into the following districts, under District Commissioners who are assisted by a force of police:

Ngamiland (including the Batawana Reserve) Headquarters at Maun.
Ngwato (including the Bamangwato Reserve and some Crown Lands) and the Tuli Block — Headquarters at Serowe.

Gaberones (including the Gaberones Block and the Batlokwa and Bamalete Reserves) Headquarters at Gaberones.

Francistown (including the Tati Concession and some Crown Lands) Headquarters at Francistown.

Kgatleng (Bakgatla Reserve) Headquarters at Mochudi.

Kweneng (Bakwena Reserve) Headquarters at Molepolole.

Ngwaketse (Bangwaketse Reserve) Headquarters at Kanye.

Lobatsi (including the Lobatsi Block, the Barolong Farms Native Reserve and some Crown Lands) Headquarters at Lobatsi.

Kgalagadi (Crown Lands) Headquarters at Tsabong.

Ghanzi (Ghanzi Farms and Crown Lands) Headquarters at Ghanzi.

Kasane (Crown Lands) Headquarters at Kasane.

In the native areas the method of administration is that generally known as "indirect rule." Native Administrations were formerly established and the powers and rights of Native Authorities were defined in the Native Administration and Native Courts Proclamations, Chapters 56 and 5 of the Laws of the Bechuanaland Protectorate. In 1938 Native Treasuries were successfully established in 8 out of 9 Native Reserves, and a Treasury was established in the ninth in 1951. Government pays 35 per cent. of each Native Administration's collection of Native Tax to the Tribal Treasury concerned; other sources of revenue are tribal levies, rates and stand-rents in addition to graded tax.

In the preparation of estimates and the general management of their treasuries the chiefs and finance committees, under the guidance of District Commissioners, display an intelligent and keen appreciation of their responsibilities.

There is an African Advisory Council which meets once a year under the presidency of the Resident Commissioner, and this is attended by the Chief and tribal representatives from the various Native Reserves and non-tribal areas.

A European Advisory Council meets under the presidency of the Resident Commissioner, usually twice a year. There are eight non-official members who are elected to represent the interests of the European residents in the eight electoral areas into which the Protectorate is divided.

A joint Advisory Council, consisting of eight non-official members of the European Advisory Council and eight members from the African Advisory Council, usually meets twice a year.

CHAPTER 4

WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

The weights and measures in use in the Bechuanaland Protectorate are those which are in use in the Union of South Africa.

CHAPTER 5

READING LIST

- DORNAN, S. S. *Pygmies and Bushmen of the Kalahari*. Seeley Service, London: 1925.
- HAILEY, LORD. *Native Administration in the British African Territories, Part V*. Her Majesty's Stationery Office, London: 1953.
- LIVINGSTONE, D. *Missionary Travels and Researches*. 1895.
- MOLEMA, S. M. *The Bantu Past and Present*. An Ethnological and Historical Study of the Native Races of South Africa. W. Green and Sons, Ltd.
- *Chief Moroka*. His Life, His Times, His Country and His People. Methodist Publishing House, Cape Town.
- POLE EVANS, I. B. *A Reconnaissance Trip through the Eastern Portion of the Bechuanaland Protectorate and an Expedition to N'gamiland*. Government Printer, Pretoria: 1948.
- PERHAM, M. & CURTIS, L. *The Protectorates of South Africa*. (The question of their transfer to the Union). Oxford University Press, Humphrey Milford: 1953.
- SCHAPER, I. *The Bantu Speaking Tribes of South Africa*. George Routledge & Sons, Ltd., London. Maskew Miller Ltd., Cape Town: 1937.
- *A Handbook of Tswana Law and Custom*. Oxford University Press; 1939.
- *Migrant Labour and Tribal Life*. Oxford University Press: 1947.
- *Married Life in an African Tribe*. Faber and Faber, London: 1940. 364 pp.
- *Native Land Tenure in the Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Loveday Press: 1943. xiv + 283 pp.
- SILLERY, A. *The Bechuanaland Protectorate*. Oxford University Press: 1952.
- *Sechele*. George Ronald, Oxford: 1954.

APPENDICES

APPENDIX I
STATEMENT OF COLONIAL DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE GRANTS AS AT 31st MARCH, 1956

I Scheme	II Due to C.D. & W. Fund at 31.3.55	III Due from C.D. & W. Fund at 31.3.55	IV Receipts 1955-56		V Repayments to C.D. & W. Fund 1955-56	VI Credited to C.D. & W. Revenue 1955-56	VII Debited to C.D. & W. Expendi- ture 1955-56	VIII Due to C.D. & W. Fund at 31.3.56	IX Due from C.D. & W. Fund at 31.3.56
			From C.D. W. Fund	Other					
	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
D.678 & 678A Underground Water Develop- ment 679A	7,692 3 4		47,124 0 0	2,203 12 6		48,032 0 6	48,032 0 6	8,987 15 4	
D.679 & 679A Extension of live- stock and Agricul- tural services 680A		137 2 3	17,843 0 0			8,033 3 9	7,896 1 6	9,809 16 3	
D.680 & 680A Development of African Agricul- ture 681B		2,565 14 6	9,664 0 0			9,664 0 0	8,775 2 3		1,676 16 9
D.681, 681A & 681B Control of Tsetse Fly 940B	53 6 2		34,714 0 0	Dr.4 0 11		25,513 9 8	25,517 10 7	9,249 15 7	
D.940, 940A, 940B & 940C. Geologi- cal Survey 990A	4,652 7 1		17,539 0 0	14 5 0		22,205 12 1	25,877 3 2		3,671 11 1
D.990 & 990A Surface Water Development 1036	1,286 16 3		33,689 0 0	1,009 11 5		23,360 3 8	23,360 3 8	12,625 4 0	
D.1036, Erection of Bridges 1037	880 13 5		3,340 0 0			4,220 13 5	4,832 1 2		611 7 9
D.1037. Develop- ment of Medical Services 1045A, 1045B, & 1045C		56 2 4	9,412 0 0			8,935 19 0	8,879 16 8	476 1 0	
D.1045, 1045A, 1045B, & 1045C Development of Education	471 6 3		40,903 0 0	141 19 6		5,892 4 11	5,892 4 11	35,624 0 11	

D.1180, 1180A, 1180B, 1180C, 1180D, & 1180E. Topographical Survey ..	2,092 15 10	8,931 0 0	7 10 0	2,382 18 6	7,862 11 11	5,769 16 1	1,075 18 1
D.1409 & 1409A. Water Development ..	2,382 18 6						
D.1412. Ngamiland Waterways ..	553 3 5	1 0 0	552 3 5		1 0 0		
D.1805, 1805A, & 1805B. Foot and Mouth Disease Control ..	9,606 11 5	11,958 0 0			17,167 2 7	17,167 2 7	4,397 8 10
D.1930. St. Joseph's College, Khale ..	1,000 0 0				1,000 0 0	1,000 0 0	
D.2014. Treponematosis Control ..	15 16 4	670 0 0			451 11 8	451 11 8	234 4 8
D.2069. Geological Investigations ..			2 10 8				
D.2515. Soil Conservation ..	2 10 8	1,795 0 0			1,009 9 9	1,009 9 9	785 10 3
D.2543. European Boarding School, Lobatsi ..							
D.2553. Development of Surface Water Supplies ..							
D.2573. Development of African Education ..							
D.2632. Road Making Machinery and Vehicles ..							
D.2639. Development of Underground water supplies ..							
D.2677. Reservoirs —Ghanzi/Lobatsi Cattle Route ..							
D.2744. Aerial Survey ..	28,041 18 9	5,407 9 0	237,583 0 0	3,927 11 7	2,382 18 6	183,349 2 11	83,265 14 10
						184,460 4 6	5,959 15 7

Notes: Revenue as per Votes Ledger

Revenue as per Votes Ledger		£183,353	3 10
Less adjustment of misallocation in 1954-55 under C.D. & W. Scheme D 681, 681A and 681B debit to revenue		4	0 11

£183,349 2 11

APPENDIX II

REPORT ON THE PROGRESS OF COLONIAL
DEVELOPMENT AND WELFARE SCHEMES

FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30th SEPTEMBER, 1956

*Schemes D.678, 678A, D.2639 and 2639A — Underground Water Development**Schemes D.678 and 678A*

	£	£
Scheme value		259,265
Expenditure to 30.9.1955	209,734	
Expenditure to 30.9.1956	29,079	
Total Expenditure		238,813
Balance unspent		20,452

These schemes closed on the 31st March, 1956. Operations were at a reduced level during this final six months owing to resignations among drilling staff to take up employment on better terms of service with other employers. Revised terms of service sanctioned during the year have done something to remedy this and the staff position under Scheme D.2639 (see below) which is a continuation of these schemes has improved.

The following is a resume of the drilling carried out during the six month period under review:

<i>Locality of holes drilled or purpose</i>	<i>No. of Holes</i>		<i>Footage</i>		<i>Yield in G.P.H.</i>
	<i>Success-ful</i>	<i>Blank</i>	<i>Success-ful</i>	<i>Blank</i>	
Bamangwato	9	1	1,247	208	9,880
Bakwena*	2	3	261	747	2,004
Government	5		1,074		13,970
Railway	2	5	566	664	354
	18	9	3,148	1,619	26,208

*Includes one hole cleaned and deepened. Altogether 27 holes were

drilled with a footage of 4,767 feet and 261 feet must be added for 2 uncompleted holes which were not included.

(On an average 4 drills out of the eight available were out of commission owing to lack of drillers, leave and breakdowns. Four holes with generous yields had to be declared blanks owing to the water being so highly contaminated with mineral salts as to render it unfit for both human and animal consumption).

A resume of the work carried out under the scheme is as follows:

	£
Total funds provided	259,265
Total funds expended	238,813
Total No. of boreholes drilled	502
Total footage drilled	105,900
Total successful boreholes	269
Total yield in gallons per hour	290,292

Estimated nett cost of drilling:

Total expenditure	238,813
Less residual value of capital equipment plus value of pumping plant installed and ex- penditure on improvements to existing water supplies	75,000

163,813

Say 165,000

Add 10% overheads 16,500

Cost of drilling 181,500

Cost per foot drilled = $\frac{181,500}{105,000}$ = £1 14s. 6d. per foot.

Schemes D.2639 and 2639 A.

	£	£
Scheme value		588,978
Expenditure to 30.9.1955	—	
Expenditure to 30.9.1956	16,695	16,695
Total expenditure		572,283

These schemes came into operation on the 1st April, 1956, after the closure of D.678 on the 31st March, 1956, and can be considered as a continuation of the development of underground water supplies.

The following is a resume of the drilling carried out during the six-month period from the 1st April to the 30th September, 1956:

<i>Locality of holes drilled or purpose</i>	<i>No. of Holes</i>		<i>Footage</i>		<i>Yield in G.P.H.</i>
	<i>Success-ful</i>	<i>Blank</i>	<i>Success-ful</i>	<i>Blank</i>	
Batlokwa . .		1		101	
Bakwena . .	3	3	310	734	7,120
Bangwaketse . .	1	2	210	147	320
Kgalagadi . .	1	2	404	482	2,240
Government . .	2	2	151	182	2,720
Railway . .	1	—	93	—	750
Ghanzi Cattle Route	—	5	—	1,620	—
	8	15	1,168	3,266	13,150

Altogether, 23 holes were drilled with a total footage of 4,434 feet and, for 3 uncompleted holes not included, must be added 586 feet. Drilling attempted in the Batawana Reserve was brought to a standstill through heavy sand at appreciable depths forcing its way up the casing. A sand line pump has recently been imported to cope with these conditions, and drilling operations will be resumed in that reserve in the near future.

£190,000 has been allocated for the drilling by private contract of a large number of boreholes in tribal reserves, for the primary purpose of stock watering. It was expected that the contract price would be about 37s. per foot, allowing for about 400 holes. The tender accepted was, in fact, at 44s. per foot, and the number of holes will be reduced accordingly. Drilling commenced in the last fortnight of the period under review.

Improvements undertaken to existing water supplies are as follows:

- (a) additional borehole equipped with 19,000 gallon tank for water supply to Athlone Hospital area, Lobatsi;
- (b) two boreholes equipped, using main installed and a 14,000 gallon tank for the Teacher Training College, Lobatsi — almost completed; and
- (c) extensions and improvements to the reticulation at the Government Reserve, Mafeking.

Before further drilling can be undertaken in the Bakgatla Reserve, sites will have to be selected by the Geological Department, as the formations in this area are extremely hard and present many difficulties to the successful development of underground water supplies.

It is hoped to resume drilling operations in the Batawana Reserve soon following the acquisition of a sand line pump to deal with sand obstructions.

The development of the cattle export route from Ghanzi to Lobatsi

remains a difficult project. Drilling will continue with the heavy rig in use, but there were no signs of any successful supplies at the end of the year. Two additional heavy rigs will be in use soon, and it is hoped that these will aid the search for suitable supplies. By the end of 1957 it should be possible to determine where this route can best be established, and the extent of cattle traffic that can use it.

Generally, the drilling programme will proceed as before over a wide area, and will cover drilling for cattle watering in tribal reserves cattle-raising areas on Crown Lands, Veterinary Department camps and for Government and Railway supplies. On this type of work a fixed programme is not possible, as locality is governed by the proving of supplies as drilling proceeds, and urgent needs take priority from time to time. With improved conditions of service, additional rigs and mechanical equipment, the rate of drilling will be enhanced.

The drilling to be carried out by contract will accelerate the development of underground supplies. For the immediate future this will cover the Bakwena Reserve only, and the contractor's rigs will be kept to as small a geographical distribution as possible.

The next most important improvements to be carried out are as follows:

Equipping of an additional borehole, installation of centrifugal pumping equipment and construction of balancing and reservoir tanks for the Lobatsi water supply; and a new 17,000-gallon reservoir tank on the existing tower at Gaberones.

Scheme D.679—Livestock and Agricultural Development

Veterinary: The Veterinary School has been erected and furniture has been provided. Work on ancillary buildings is at present taking place and in the near future construction of the labour lines will commence. Considerable difficulties have now arisen because of the fact that water can only be found at one extremity of the farm and this will have to be piped to the paddocks over considerable distances. Difficulties have been encountered in regard to the drains for the school since it was found that the ground was solid rock and drains have now to be carried very large distances to dispose of the effluent in areas where absorption can take place. It is probable that all the funds provided for this scheme will be spent before the end of the calendar year.

Recurrent expenditure continued until the 31st March on the employment of one Veterinary Officer and two Livestock Officers, who continued to be employed within the framework of the Department and were thereafter paid from Scheme D.3047, Development of Veterinary Services 1956-1960, which from the 1st April also provided for the continued upkeep of the school and farm and for the preparation expenses of training courses being commenced at the school.

Agriculture: Agricultural extension work continued until the 31st March, after which operations continued under D.3064 (see below). The Agricultural and Livestock Officer employed under the scheme was also responsible for the supervision of Schemes D.680 and 680A (see below). The Agricultural Officer's post remained vacant.

Schemes D.680 and 680 A—Development of African Agriculture

These schemes also expired on the 31st March, by which date the post of Agricultural and Livestock Officer was not filled. All but five of the 48 Agricultural Demonstrators' posts were filled and extension work in new areas such as the Barolong Farms and Bokalaka district continued with favourable results.

Attacks of aphids, especially in the Southern Protectorate, damaged many of the demonstration plots but, in spite of this, yields of up to 14 bags (200 lb.) of grain sorghum per acre were harvested in the Bangwaketse Reserve. Demonstration plots in the Bamalete Reserve showed an increase of four times the amount of grain harvested over the traditional methods of crop production.

Schemes D.681, 681A and 681B—Control of Tsetse Fly

All matters of policy throughout the year have been discussed by the local Tsetse Development Committee under the chairmanship of the District Commissioner.

Arising out of the annual report for 1955 (page 78) there is the need to correct an error made in the acreage calculations for bush cleared. It has been discovered that only 700-800 acres were cleared and not between 2,500 and 3,000 acres as stated. The rate of clearing is proportionately slower and the cost higher. The mistake occurred in the use of the instrument which measures acreages on the map.

Dr. E. A. Lewis, W.H.O. Scientific Consultant, paid his second visit to Ngamiland in April and reported favourably on the progress made in implementing the objects of Scheme D.681B. Dr. Lewis reviewed the period June 1955 to April 1956 between his two visits. Administration had improved, clearings had been made with an impressive reduction of the fly population in the actual areas cleared, fly-round records were being kept and analysed systematically, supervision of game destruction had increased, fence repairs were being effected, communications had been improved, additional accommodation for both Europeans and Africans was provided and transport facilities were now adequate. Much had still to be done in the following spheres: a closer study of the tsetse fly's vegetational requirements, the extension of clearing work, surveys and reconnaissance patrols, and the mapping of areas of tsetse fly habitat. He reaffirmed the view expressed on his first visit — that the organisation needed help from an ecologist trained in mapping techniques to assist in the production of a vegetation map on which should be based all future estimates for further financial aid. This has been arranged through the kind assistance of the World Health Organization, a grant from which has enabled the scheme to have the assistance of Mr. R. D. Pilson from East Africa for some three months.

Although it can safely be said that there has been no regression in the situation since April, progress has been slow and in fact work in certain spheres has marked time. The investigational and observational aspects have suffered particularly. The cause of this was the resignation of the Field Officer after a long period of illness.

Discriminative clearing by hand labour, though hampered by no direct European supervision and an acute labour shortage, has continued slowly. About 1,100 acres have been cleared at the rate of 5.7 man-days per acre costing £1 per acre. Clearing by mechanical saws was commenced in April under the direct supervision of a European mechanic and some 400 acres have been treated at the rate of .64 saw-days per acre costing £3 11s. 0d. per acre. One saw-day at present is equivalent in working potential to 9-man days. This slow rate and high cost have been the result of an irregular spares supply. As permanent, well-paid African operators are employed, the expenditure on wages when individual saws have been idle for months at a time becomes disproportionate to the numbers of saws in action.

The six fly-rounds in the operational area were patrolled regularly. Four of these have now been subjected to discriminative clearing. An examination of the figures shows encouraging results. Two rounds outside the outer fence, which, by their fairly close proximity to the fence have been influenced indirectly by game destruction, were cleared in October, 1955. Since then the apparent density, measured in the number of adult male tsetse per 10,000 yards, has fluctuated according to the seasonal trend between 0 and 12. The control round of the area has been as high as 90. The other round in this particular vicinity, which is inside the fence and therefore subject to the effects of direct game destruction, was cleared in June, 1956, and has not exhibited the same favourable result. The density immediately increased sharply on clearing to a higher figure than was shown on the control round. An explanation of this could be that not all the alternative concentration sites here have been treated and are therefore providing refuge for flies that would otherwise die. The other game destruction round situated in another part of the operational area, which was completely cleared in July, 1956, now has an apparent density of 5, whereas the control round there is 69.

The 1955 preliminary conclusions on the fly-vegetation pattern have in general been confirmed. The tsetse maintains a persistent medium to high density population in the double-canopied acacia woodland throughout the year, shows a distinct tendency to retreat to the edges of the thick fringing forest away from the waterways during the hot months, and to disperse into the very open single-canopied mopane woodland during the rains and the cool months.

Reconnaissances have again confirmed the low density but persistent fly population in the Naragha valley inside the inner fence. No permanent infestation nearer Maun was detected. Unfortunately, however, this work had to be severely curtailed and some danger spots which should have been visited were not reached.

Two new departmental Land Rovers arrived in April and it has been necessary to make new tracks for them, because, with their unusually narrow spoor, they make the sandy roads very heavy for other vehicles. About 40 miles have been completed.

The flood waters finally receded enough by January for work on bridges to be undertaken. Two pole bridges were completely rebuilt and

partial construction was done on two large bridges and two causeways. This work was very timely as entry to all areas except one was assured when the present flood season started in June. The lesson of the previous year's record floods was well learnt and extra large and strong structures were made.

The respite from the floods made it possible to effect major fence repairs on the inner and outer lines except for one very short stretch which did not dry up sufficiently. The two transverse fences were also strengthened. The total length of fencing involved was 84 miles.

The average number of hunters employed each month on game destruction was 39 compared with 27 for the corresponding period in 1955. Every effort has been made to increase supervision. The total of 1,775 head shot shows an overall increase of 518 over the total of 1,257 in 1955. This is not, however, quite proportionate to the increase in hunters. The following tentative deductions should be regarded as an indication of the position: Compared with 1955, the 1956 total is less than it should be proportionally by 56. There is a decrease of 100% in the buffalo numbers, which points to better fence maintenance; 50% fewer wart-hogs were shot, which is encouraging as this animal has been shown in other parts of Africa to be the most important source of food for *Glossina morsitans*. Figures for all other large species show decreases except that for kudu which stays the same; but small buck were five times as numerous. The kudu stability is to be expected, since the kudu is a very secretive animal. On the other hand, as the larger species which provide more meat become scarce, the hunter will naturally turn his attention to the smaller buck which have for this reason been hitherto relatively neglected. Although the stage is being reached where most species are on the decline in the fenced area, it will be many years at the present rate of shooting before final elimination is achieved. This, however, is likely to become of less significance, since the new method of discriminative clearing shows great promise.

Much has been done in the building line to improve the accommodation of Tsetse Fly Control Officers. Two prefabricated houses have been erected in Maun for Europeans, in addition to which three double-prefabricated rondavels have been purchased and transported to the area of operations. These will be erected for occasional European field accommodation. Wattle and daub rondavels have been built in the main camps for African staff.

The training of African field personnel has been persevered with but has been handicapped by the shortage of European staff.

Schemes D.940, 940A, 940B, 940C and D.2894 — Geological Survey

Schemes in the D.940 series terminated on the 31st March, 1956, the small amount of savings being used in Scheme D.2894, which as a new 4-year scheme for 1956-1960 was approved in principle in July, together with a grant to cover expenditure until March, 1958. The new scheme allows for the establishment of a hydrogeological branch to enable the Geological Survey to devote more attention to water supply problems

with particular emphasis on the use of geophysical methods for the selection of water borehole sites.

The work of the Geological Survey has followed the same lines as during previous years and includes the following main objectives:

- (1) Reconnaissance geological mapping of the Territory;
- (2) Mineral Survey;
- (3) Hydrogeological Survey.

The programme of reconnaissance geological mapping, started in 1955, has continued with particular attention being paid to those areas where water borehole site selection is due to take place and areas in which coal exploration is being carried out. Some 7.700 square miles of reconnaissance geological mapping was carried out in the Kweneng district. Quarter degree sheet mapping in the Dikgomo di Kae area, west of Kanye, has disclosed extensive outcrops of Lobatsi Volcanic, the Dolomite and Pretoria series in a desert area where they were previously unknown. Reconnaissance mapping was started in Ngamiland during August.

Prominent mining houses continue to display an interest in the possible mineral resources of the Protectorate, with particular reference to the Bushman Mine. Owing to an acute shortage of staff it has not been possible to undertake detailed surveys of known mineral deposits. An exception was the survey of the potential salt deposits of the Makarikari region in the Nata area. The examination disclosed the mode of salt deposition and will provide a pointer to the assessment of the potentiality of the Makarikari region as regards evaporite deposits. A preliminary geochemical investigation of the Bushman Mine was carried out in March. Work on the coal deposits has continued west of Palapye, where drilling is taking place in the Morapule area in an attempt to locate a favourable spot to sink a shaft for the bulk sampling of the "main-seam," and emphasis is now being placed on the northern margin of this area. In the south, drilling is being carried out to locate a fault which has the effect of limiting the easterly extension of the good coals. Core drilling has commenced in the Dukwe Quarantine camp in the northern Protectorate. The coals located here during water borehole drilling form the most northerly known occurrence of coal in the Protectorate.

Since April the work of the Geological Survey has been mainly concentrated on the hydrogeological survey in connection with the underground water development scheme in the Bakwena Reserve. The shortage of staff has added to the difficulties of the programme and it was not possible to undertake preliminary regional reconnaissance surveys. Electrical resistivity geophysical methods have been used in the northern and north-western Kweneng district where the greater portion of the area is blanketed by thick superficial deposits of the Kalahari system. A total of 55 sites was selected from June to September and contract drilling has recently commenced. It is not expected that the initial boreholes will show a high percentage success rate as the previous overall success rate was 28% and in the Kalahari sandveld

areas, where most of the sites have to be selected, the previous success rate was only 10%.

A regional gravimetric and magnetic survey of the Protectorate was carried out in June and July and it is hoped that the results of this survey will assist in probing the hidden geology below the Kalahari sands and other recent deposits which blanket 84% of the total area of the Protectorate. The survey was undertaken in collaboration with the Geological Survey of the Union of South Africa who loaned a geophysicist and instruments. The Anglo American Corporation of South Africa lent a surveyor and survey instruments. In all, the party traversed a total of 1,784 miles and the final results are now awaited.

The laboratory has continued to provide chemical and petrological services and studies are being continued on the groundwaters of the Kalahari region. Sludge samples from percussion water boreholes continue to be examined and classified and the compilation of borehole information upon a degree square basis is being carried out.

Work in the drawing office has consisted in the preparation of some 22 maps, plans and diagrams by geologists illustrating their work. A new provisional geological map, incorporating the most recent geological information was prepared and exhibited at the International Geological Congress. A reduced version has been published in the Annual Geological Report for 1955.

Schemes D.990 and 990A and D.2553 — Surface Water Development

<i>D.990 and 990A</i>	£	£
Scheme value		153,022
Expenditure to 30.9.1955	125,276	
Expenditure to 30.9.1956	13,205	
Total Expenditure		138,481
Balance unspent		14,541
<i>D.2553</i>		
Scheme value		128,242
Expenditure to 30.9.1955	—	
Expenditure to 30.9.1956	13,009	
Total expenditure		13,009
Balance unspent		115,233

Three new stock dams were completed as follows:

	<i>Capacity</i>
Rancheng	88 acre feet
Motolo	250 acre feet
Leribane	57 acre feet
	395 acre feet

(approximately 107½ million gallons).

Repairs and desilting were carried out as follows:

Rebuilding of Mamarontshwe dam following severe damage after exceptional floods in 1954;

desilting of large pan at Kgaswe, near Serowe;

clearing out and improvements to tribal dam, Serowe.

Work is in hand on the construction of two new dams at Mheelo and Lebale.

At Palapye, a sponge area, which was in danger of being trampled out by cattle, was fenced in by the Agricultural Department. This Department provided a small concrete diversion weir, piped supply, cattle trough and water point for African use. As a result of these measures, the flow from the sponge has been maintained for longer periods than before.

The Palapye dam, a combined concrete arch buttress and mass gravity wall was completed during the year except for the paving of the cattle drinking areas. This 60-million gallon supply will largely be utilised by the railways, but also serves for watering large numbers of stock.

An extended survey of the Notwani River at the proposed dam site near Notwani Siding was carried out. The original scheme has been redesigned and enlarged to provide for a domestic water supply to Gaborones.

Preliminary aerial and foot investigation was made of possible sites for a dam in connection with a comprehensive water supply scheme for Lobatsi. Two sites have been selected for further detailed survey.

The supply of equipment is satisfactory. Additional transport has been ordered to give more effective control over the work.

At the end of the year, the posts of second Field Engineer, Field Maintenance Mechanic and Construction Foreman remained open, but it is expected that the first two will be filled within a few months.

A stock dam programme will go ahead and sites will be selected and investigated by the staff employed under this scheme, with the officers of other interested departments in the districts. In addition, every possible help will be given to improving existing stock dams.

Scheme D.1036 — Construction of Bridges

This scheme ended on the 31st March, 1956.

	£	£
Scheme value		35,700
Expenditure to 30.9.1955	31,863	
Expenditure 30.9.1955 to 31.3.1956	1,947	
		33,810
Balance at close of scheme		1,890

The programme for bridging was continued on the new road serving the Tuli Block. Staff difficulties delayed progress and account for the full amount not being spent.

Scheme D.1037 — Development of Medical Services

The Gaberones Health Centre, named the Lady Liesching Health Centre, was completed during the year. In-patient accommodation for 6-8 persons has also been provided.

No further vehicles were purchased in the year under review as all funds were exhausted. A number of vehicles originally purchased under this scheme are still in use but have had to undergo fairly extensive overhauls.

The salaries of one Senior Service Health Inspector, one Sanitary Inspector, one lorry driver and one lorry labourer, all Junior Service, continued to be paid until the 31st March, 1956, when the scheme terminated.

A sum of £281 was expended on insecticides for the control of malaria, plague and relapsing fever. This was shown as a new item, the money being utilised from savings under recurrent expenditure from the previous year.

Schemes D.1045, 1045A, 1045B, 1045C — Development of Education

(a) Items involving capital expenditure:

- (i) Lobatsi European School — completed and occupied 1953.
- (ii) Ghanzi European School — completed and occupied, 1955.
- (iii) Government Teacher Training College: This has been re-sited near Lobatsi where adequate water is available. Buildings were completed and occupied in July, 1956, and further equipment is to be purchased. An additional free grant of £3,000 has been made (as scheme D.1045D) and a virement approved of £850 from savings of recurrent expenditure under Scheme D.1045. The total cost of the College and equipment will therefore amount to £41,850.

(b) Items involving recurrent expenditure: £34,000.

The scheme terminated on the 31st March, 1956, all the services previously provided from Colonial Development and Welfare funds then being taken on to the Protectorate estimates.

Schemes D.1180 and 1180A to E — Topographical Survey

These schemes are fully controlled by the Directorate of Colonial Surveys and no details of operations are available.

Schemes D.1805, 1805A, 1805B — Animal Disease Control

All funds provided have been spent on these schemes and the fencing and quarantines were completed in 1955. (Work continues to take place in the quarantines departmentally to provide amenities which were not included in the schemes). The schemes can be regarded as closed and successfully completed.

Scheme D.1930 — Development of Education, St. Joseph's College

Building of the new class-rooms and dormitories at a cost of £3,000, of which the Mission provided £2,000, has been completed.

Scheme D.2014 — Treponematosi Control

It was not possible to recruit a medical officer when the services of the World Health Organization-sponsored Field Officer terminated on the 29th February, 1956. A Government medical officer was seconded to take charge on the 1st March, 1956. All the Junior Service personnel detailed as items 3-7 of Head 12 B. of the 1955-56 estimates continued to be employed.

The mass treatment campaign was continued and by the end of the year under review nearly 200,000 persons, or roughly two-thirds of the total population of the territory, had received treatment, either curatively or because they were potentially at risk.

This scheme terminated on the 31st March, 1956, after which date the costs were borne entirely from territorial funds.

Scheme D.2515 — Soil Conservation

Further funds from this scheme were made available for completing the fencing work along the Molopo river in the Werda area and for the erection of a stock drinking reservoir. The fenced camp has been sub-divided into paddocks to hasten rehabilitation and to permit later introduction of rotational grazing.

Reports on the extent of soil erosion in each administrative district have been received and the Chiefs in two districts have given their support to the soil reclamation and conservation works projected in the areas under their control.

Equipment including two tractors with bulldozing sub-soiling and scoop attachments has been ordered. Hand tools and other specialised small items required for erecting fences have already been received.

A caravan for the use of a Works Foreman has been constructed and received from the Public Works Department.

Scheme D.2543 — European Boarding School, Lobatsi

The site of the school has been selected and building will begin in December, 1956.

Scheme D.2573 — Development of African Education

The first half of the Moeng class-room block has reached roof-level and the foundations of the second half have been laid.

Scheme D.2632 — Road-making Machinery

	£	£
Scheme value		20,000
Expenditure up to 30.9.1955	—	
Expenditure up to 30.9.1956	10,419	
Total Expenditure		10,419
Balance unspent		9,581

This was an advance grant, made late in the year, for the purchase of plant in anticipation of additional funds for general road development.

The following items have been supplied:

2 diesel powered road graders — medium size,

1 10-12 ton diesel powered road roller.

The following item has been recommended to the Central Tender Board for purchase:

1 diesel powered crawler bulldozer.

These items completed the programme.

Scheme D.2632A — Construction of Main Roads and Bridges, 1956-1960.

This was formally approved after the end of the period under review and the only item for which it was responsible during the period was the improvement of the Matlapaneng bridge at Maun. Heavy floods had rendered the earlier structure unusable.

Scheme D.2677 — Reservoirs, Ghanzi-Lobatsi Cattle Route

	£	£
Scheme value		5,000
Expenditure to 30.9.1955	—	
Expenditure for year ending 30.9.1956	486	
Total expenditure		486
Balance unspent		<u>4,514</u>

Material for the construction of two distinct types of reservoirs has been ordered and the total quantity is due for delivery early in 1957.

Four of the reservoirs are designed to make use of concrete where suitable stone can be found and the remaining six will be almost entirely of protected prefabricated steel and will be erected where the use of concrete would be both difficult and expensive.

To provide some immediate assistance a number of cattle drinking troughs fed from a 3,000 gallon tank mounted on a 10-foot stand are to be installed at the most important watering points until a permanent arrangement can be completed.

Scheme D.2744 — Aerial Survey of Bechuanaland Protectorate

	£	£
Scheme value		13,000
Expenditure up to 30.9.1955	—	
Expenditure for the year ending 30.9.1956	—	
Balance as at 30.9.1956		<u>13,000</u>

This contract is being controlled by the Directorate of Colonial Surveys in England; acceptance of all work and instructions for payment come from that Directorate.

It is understood that photographs for block "A" covering more than one-third of the work, have been forwarded by the Aircraft Operating Company (Aerial Surveys) Limited to the Directorate for acceptance. It is also understood from the Company that the aircraft engaged on the photography is being directed to West Africa for higher priority work.

Scheme D.2835 — Anti-Diphtheria and Whooping Cough Campaign

The necessary equipment was ordered in June when this scheme was approved. African staff were trained during August. The campaign operators began on the 3rd September with the first inoculation of the series in the Bakgatla Reserve. This area was completed during the month and inoculations then began in the Bakwena Reserve.

Scheme D.3046 — Development of Education

This was formally approved after the end of the period, but preliminary action during the period was as follows:

Item 1, Building and equipment, European schools. The Public Works Department has drawn plans and taken out quantities for boarding schools at Lobatsi and Francistown, and for class rooms at Francistown.

Item 3, Class rooms and hostel, Indian School, Lobatsi. The Indian community has collected £7,500 of the £12,500 which it undertook to contribute towards this project.

In addition the Deputy Director of Education, two Education Officers, two Headmasters and a Senior Supervisor were appointed and most of them commenced duties in the period under review.

Scheme D.3047 — Development of Veterinary Services

This was formally approved after the end of the period and was used for the continuation of services and veterinary school and farm maintenance provided under Scheme D.679, which terminated as far as recurrent provision was concerned on the 31st March, 1956; apart from this some preliminary expenses of the new African staff training courses at the school were met.

Scheme D.3064 — Development of Agriculture

(For the period 1st April, 1956, to 30th September, 1956).

All the staff recruited under the expired schemes D.679, D.680 and D.680A were employed under this new scheme. One new Agricultural and Livestock Officer assumed duty in September and vacancies for two similar posts exist as well as for two Agricultural Officers. Applications are being considered for these vacancies.

With regard to Agricultural Demonstrators, 45 out of the 98 posts have been filled. Further recruitment is governed by the filling of Senior Service staff posts to ensure proper employment, supervision and organization of the Junior Service staff.

Extension of work in all areas has been consolidated and expanded; as soon as the peasant farmers in an area have been converted to accept the improved methods, it is possible to maintain and improve the work with less staff in that area. Work in the Ranaka Unit Agricultural Project progressed satisfactorily.

Scheme D.3067 — Development of Medical Services, 1956-60

This was formerly approved after the end of the period under review; only recruitment and other steps to implement it were possible during the period.

APPENDIX III

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE: IMPORTS - 1954, 1955, 1956

U: From Union of South Africa — N: From Northern Rhodesia — S: From Southern Rhodesia — O: From other countries

Commodity	From	1954		1955		1956	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Sorghum (Bags)	U Total	78 78	126 126	263 263	738 738	— —	— —
Maize and Maize meal (Bags) .	U Total	12,100 12,100	30,576 30,576	13,938 13,938	26,134 26,134	24,980 24,980	43,975 43,975
Wheat and Wheat meal (Bags) .	U S O Total	19,577 340 3 19,920	64,629 725 7 65,361	17,235 — — 17,235	58,612 — — 58,612	24,199 — — 24,199	74,623 — — 74,623
Horses, Mules and Donkeys .	U S Total	796 41 837	13,012 233 13,245	25 — 25	608 — 608	12 — 12	317 — 317
Cattle	U S Total	231 85 316	7,290 2,790 10,080	120 12 132	3,849 360 4,209	31 — 31	2,603 — 2,603
Sheep and Goats	U S Total	1,408 55 1,463	4,224 148 4,372	471 — 471	1,491 — 1,491	2 — 2	20 — 20
Pigs	S Total	4 4	6 6	— —	— —	— —	— —
Butter (lb.)	U Total	— —	— —	— —	— —	8,750 8,750	1,367 1,367

IMPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	From	1954		1955		1956	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Poultry	U S Total	423 150 573	106 37 143	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —
Vehicles and Spares	U S O Total	— — — —	78,649 6,723 — 85,372	— — — —	150,115 70,946 4,222 225,283	— — — —	288,368 85,244 7,040 380,652
General Merchandise	U S N O Total	— — — — —	895,380 265,336 19 29,254 1,190,489	— — — — —	980,438 270,466 13,484 29,676 1,294,064	— — — — —	1,234,702 415,915 2,547 43,132 1,696,296
Other foodstuffs	U S N O Total	— — — — —	193,620 21,910 — 383 215,913	— — — — —	194,612 24,783 307 282 219,984	— — — — —	284,263 36,136 — 154 320,553
Textiles	U S N O Total	— — — — —	321,302 111,117 — 3,628 436,047	— — — — —	429,502 177,354 4,162 7,006 618,024	— — — — —	400,767 129,276 473 3,164 533,680
Fertilizers	U S Total	— — —	1,693 — 1,693	— — —	13,103 245 13,348	— — —	1,556 — 1,556
GRAND TOTAL		—	2,053,423	—	2,462,495	—	3, 055,642

BECHUANALAND PROTECTORATE: EXPORTS — 1954, 1955, 1956

U: To Union of South Africa — N: To Northern Rhodesia — S: To Southern Rhodesia — O: To other countries

Commodity	To	1954		1955		1956	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Sorghum (Bags)	U	81,393	121,150	101,631	254,078	131,550	262,364
	S	2,400	3,600	1,450	3,704	4,342	8,609
	N	—	—	890	2,158	—	—
	Total	83,793	124,750	103,971	259,940	135,892	270,973
Citrus (Pockets)	U	—	—	—	—	4,500	1,750
	S	—	—	—	—	4,500	1,750
	Total	—	—	—	—	9,000	3,500
Beans and Pulses (Bags)	U	61,690	111,700	34,299	77,174	77,287	125,591
	S	21,000	33,000	36,117	90,292	31,288	20,114
	N	—	—	1,450	3,300	—	—
	O	—	—	270	603	—	—
	Total	82,690	144,700	72,136	171,369	108,575	145,705
Groundnuts (Bags)	U	8,280	12,400	2,100	3,150	6,075	14,500
	Total	8,280	12,400	2,100	3,150	6,075	14,500
Wheat (Bags)	U	—	—	3,230	8,075	4,150	10,582
	Total	—	—	3,230	8,075	4,150	10,582
Butter (lb.)	U	2,86608	44,543	427,000	66,405	312,244	48,778
	O	105,250	17,103	—	—	—	—
	Total	391,858	61,646	427,000	66,405	312,244	48,778
Butterfat (lb.)	U	228,848	34,000	335,543	50,953	130,603	16,039
	O	—	—	—	—	213,344	31,318
	Total	228,848	34,000	335,543	50,953	343,947	47,357

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	To	1954		1955		1956	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Eggs (doz.)	U S Total	3,422 4 3,426	428 1 429	2,747 — 2,747	343 — 343	2,952 — 2,952	370 — 370
Cattle (live)	U S N O Total	26,031 2,744 30,958 9,046 68,779	572,682 61,448 614,496 194,970 1,443,596	— — 6,307 — 6,307	— — 100,125 — 100,125	— — 3,430 — 3,430	— — 73,447 — 73,447
Cattle (carcasses) (lb.)	U S N O Total	800,776 — 1,126,928 740,614 2,668,318	35,008 — 49,994 33,469 118,471	13,976,191 — 12,109,064 6,127,420 32,212,675	577,284 — 535,491 265,766 1,378,541	15,928,241 219,298 9,797,927 7,616,120 33,561,586	691,936 11,063 489,027 363,329 1,555,355
Sheep and Goats	U S N O Total	4,757 13,374 2,365 65 20,561	14,271 38,115 7,744 182 60,312	6,862 6,991 831 — 14,684	20,586 17,655 2,456 — 40,697	4,529 8,032 4,797 260 17,618	12,723 23,486 13,873 650 50,732
Pigs	U S N O Total	712 131 197 141 1,181	4,282 884 1,330 952 7,448	— 738 314 265 1,317	— 5,535 3,611 3,048 12,194	— 1,416 653 2,069 —	— 10,908 5,836 — 16,744
Poultry	U S N Total	21,045 15 41 21,010	5,261 4 14 5,279	21,440 — — 21,440	5,360 — — 5,360	13,134 — — 13,134	3,284 — — 3,284

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	To	1954		1955		1956	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Hides (lb.)	U S N O Total	919,162 135,910 14,637 99,514 1,169,223	50,781 6,397 924 6,219 64,321	4,825,771 142,399 — 535,919 5,504,089	164,603 14,487 — 30,426 209,516	2,758,911 35,533 — 2,237,867 5,032,311	100,652 1,949 — 115,137 217,738
Skins (Sheep and Goats) (Pieces)	U S O Total	32,616 28,667 — 61,283	11,997 10,516 — 22,513	20,808 295 3,761 24,864	7,543 107 1,363 9,013	8,623 640 13,780 23,043	2,445 188 5,923 8,556
Skins and Karosses (Wild animal) (Pieces)	U S N O Total	21,604 3,283 — 19 24,906	11,309 3,376 — 190 14,875	23,086 101 2 6,344 29,533	18,978 1,010 3 1,591 21,582	17,234 184 2 5,556 22,976	9,500 319 16 5,052 14,887
Miscellaneous animal products .	U S N O Total	— — — — —	10,111 898 5,713 4,286 21,008	— — — — —	16,191 7,293 660 709 24,853	— — — — —	29,074 4,140 1,225 19,071 53,510
Abattoir by-products	U S N O Total	— — — — —	— — — — —	— — — — —	32,533 39,672 69,422 44,056 185,683	— — — — —	61,556 30,317 59,287 40,392 191,552

¹In 1954 this included biltong, ostrich feathers, hair, horns and hooves, reins and strops, wool, ostrich skins, wildebeest tails, hippo strops and whips, calf skins, ivory, ostrich eggshell, game trophies, one lion cub, casein, game meat, offal, hide trimmings tallow, bone meal, gail and casings, but, for 1955, Abattoir by-products are shown separately. Miscellaneous products in 1955 include in addition reptile skins, quills, fat, live game and compost. In 1956 they also included processed meat, dripping and crocodile skins.

EXPORTS (Cont.)

Commodity	To	1954		1955		1956	
		Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £	Quantity	Value £
Bones (lb).	U O Total	2,351,670 — 2,351,670	15,600 — 15,600	102,185 — 102,185	402 — 402	40,000 172,029 212,029	200 860 1,060
*Timber (cubic feet)	U S N Total	— 210,832 — 210,832	— 122,020 — 122,020	— 133,994 — 133,994	— 74,672 — 74,672	— — 1,809 1,809	— — 1,031 1,031
Gold (oz.)	S Total	1,216 1,216	14,956 14,956	560 560	6,845 6,845	590 590	6,767 6,767
Silver (oz.)	S Total	292 292	90 90	189 189	62 62	215 215	63 63
Asbestos (short tons)	U Total	885 885	98,400 98,400	1,560 1,560	165,634 165,634	1,356 1,356	129,679 129,679
Kyanite (tons)	O Total	2,054 2,054	18,513 18,513	840 840	8,400 8,400	981 981	8,238 8,238
Other articles	U S N O Total	— — — — —	10,237 2,150 4,476 1,493 18,356	— — — — —	10,473 439 6,921 — 17,833	— — — — —	1,505 6,747 4,949 — 13,201
GRAND TOTAL		—	2,423,683	—	2,821,647	—	2,887,609

*The 1954 and 1955 totals are for exports to the Union and the Rhodesias. Exports in 1956 were to Northern Rhodesia only.

APPENDIX IV

LIVESTOCK CENSUS 1956

Year	Bulls	Cows and Heifers	Oxen and Steers	Calves	Total Cattle	Sheep	Goats	Horses	Mules	Donkeys	Pigs	Poultry	Dogs
1944	22,688	448,536	237,386	188,292	896,902	—	568,276	4,102	142	22,566	4,508	—	—
1945	22,509	446,157	244,464	190,045	920,175	—	555,778	4,126	111	17,912	3,536	—	—
1946	22,715	463,101	274,327	198,646	958,789	—	—	3,999	147	20,670	3,487	96,601	—
1947	22,187	472,936	272,312	199,505	966,940	187,728	426,738	3,399	139	21,157	3,140	84,783	—
1948	24,000	478,875	283,625	192,000	978,500	198,569	440,000	4,154	154	22,000	2,497	88,569	—
1949	25,012	468,786	273,145	216,008	982,951	214,229	443,993	4,329	138	18,292	3,445	107,764	—
1950	25,543	515,698	282,556	266,169	1,049,966	217,288	477,277	5,053	133	19,938	3,457	96,040	—
1951	22,841	526,108	288,108	189,033	1,026,845	197,798	475,271	6,618	269	19,915	2,731	74,390	—
1952	26,891	532,057	287,886	207,462	1,054,296	216,000	509,015	7,048	285	22,488	3,676	148,710	—
1953	42,757	544,439	289,196	221,289	1,097,681	227,941	497,654	6,674	308	24,812	4,029	156,044	—
1954	44,772	583,968	276,823	198,840	1,104,403	191,519	442,224	7,183	376	25,871	5,184	169,037	26,507
1955	45,401	596,613	296,115	214,345	1,152,494	152,660	304,641	7,356	429	26,581	4,651	78,804	27,517
1956	49,996	640,121	316,331	229,256	1,235,704	125,323	361,575	8,102	416	28,435	3,808	177,286	31,954

POLICE CASES

103

	Pending at 31.12.55	Total Reported in 1956	Pending Investigation at 31.12.56	Referred to Native or Local Courts	Not taken to Court			Taken to Court							
					Total	Civil: no case in law or found false	Evidence insufficient trial or undetected	Accused dead or insane	Total	Convicted	Dismissed	Nolle Prosequi	Awaiting trial 31.12.56		
<i>Against Lawful Authority</i>															
Escape	19	71	22	46	21	1	20	—	47	46	1	—	—	—	—
Perjury	1	4	—	1	4	—	4	—	1	1	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Against Public Morality</i>															
Abortion	—	1	—	—	1	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Bestiality	—	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Concealment of Birth	—	4	—	—	4	4	—	—	3	3	—	—	—	—	—
Incest	—	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Indecent Assault	—	13	2	9	2	—	2	—	2	1	1	—	—	—	—
Rape	15	38	16	26	11	6	5	—	10	9	1	—	—	—	—
Rape, Attempted	2	12	1	10	1	—	1	—	12	9	3	—	—	—	—
Sodomy	—	2	—	1	—	—	—	—	1	1	—	—	—	—	—
Sodomy, Attempted	—	1	—	1	—	—	—	—	1	1	—	—	—	—	—
Women & Girls Protection Act	2	6	—	5	2	—	2	—	6	5	1	—	—	—	—
<i>Against the Person</i>															
Assault common	42	327	34	285	43	8	35	—	290	276	14	—	—	2	—
Assault, G.B.H.	17	132	12	126	10	4	6	—	127	120	7	—	—	—	—
Culpable Homicide	1	12	1	9	3	3	—	—	9	9	—	—	—	—	—
Murder	13	14	7	7	11	4	7	—	8	5	3	—	—	1	—
Murder, Attempted	2	5	1	3	1	1	—	—	5	3	2	—	—	—	—
<i>Against Property</i>															
Arson	2	11	2	7	4	—	4	—	7	7	—	—	—	—	—
Fraud	—	2	1	1	—	—	—	—	1	1	—	—	—	—	—
Housebreaking with intent	—	6	1	1	1	1	—	—	4	3	1	—	—	—	—
Housebreaking and theft	66	139	50	81	69	3	62	—	86	75	11	—	—	—	—
Malicious injury to property	1	31	4	25	3	2	1	—	25	23	2	—	—	—	—
Receiving stolen property	—	8	—	—	5	—	5	—	3	3	—	—	—	—	—
Robbery	1	8	4	5	—	—	—	—	5	4	1	—	—	—	—
Stock Theft	62	137	42	87	70	24	46	—	87	81	6	—	—	—	—
Theft	98	396	84	283	122	23	99	—	288	270	18	—	—	—	—
Theft by Conversion or false pretences	7	61	6	53	8	—	8	—	54	50	4	—	—	—	—
<i>Against Local Laws</i>															
Liquor Laws	11	783	29	756	9	5	4	—	756	751	5	—	—	—	—
Road Traffic	6	131	6	119	12	1	11	—	119	115	4	—	—	—	—
Other	185	2890	196	2578	292	61	231	—	2585	2522	63	—	—	—	—
TOTALS	554	5251	523	4536	709	156	553	—	4568	4413	155	—	—	—	3

APPENDIX VI
PERSONS DEALT WITH BY THE COURTS: 1956

District	Total arrested to court or summoned to court	Acquitted	Notie prosecut	Awaiting trial at 31.12.56	Convicted										First offenders Act or warning
					Total	Death		Imprisonment		Whipping		Fine			
						M	F	M	F	J	M	J	M	F	
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)		(7)		(8)		(9)			(10)	
Chobe	183	6	—	1	176	—	—	20	—	—	4	131	17	—	3
(Headquarters Kasane)	1413	23	17	—	1375	—	—	500	38	1	2	18	521	163	132
Francistown	302	12	1	—	289	—	—	30	—	—	—	5	196	21	35
Gaborone	407	8	—	—	402	—	—	70	7	—	3	8	283	13	7
Ghanzi	194	7	2	1	184	—	—	40	5	—	—	1	117	17	11
Kgalegadi	176	7	—	—	169	—	—	35	3	—	—	—	118	12	4
(Headquarters Tsabong)	246	18	—	—	228	—	—	24	6	—	—	4	92	102	1
Kweneng	253	16	—	1	236	—	—	48	8	—	—	4	115	55	—
(Headquarters Molepolole)	118	4	—	1	114	—	—	71	1	2	—	5	35	—	2
Lobatsi	870	18	5	—	847	—	—	214	16	3	—	7	431	140	2
(Headquarters Maun)	41	4	—	2	35	—	—	9	—	—	1	—	25	—	34
Ngwato	259	27	—	1	231	—	—	60	—	—	—	—	170	—	—
(Headquarters Serowe)	4462	150	25	7	4286	—	—	1121	84	11	7	56	2234	540	—
Ngwaketse	183	6	—	1	176	—	—	20	—	—	4	131	17	—	222
(Headquarters Kanye)	1413	23	17	—	1375	—	—	500	38	1	2	18	521	163	132
Tuli Block	302	12	1	—	289	—	—	30	—	—	—	5	196	21	35
(Headquarters Mochudi)	407	8	—	—	402	—	—	70	7	—	3	8	283	13	7
(Headquarters Molepolole)	194	7	2	1	184	—	—	40	5	—	—	1	117	17	11
(Headquarters Maun)	176	7	—	—	169	—	—	35	3	—	—	—	118	12	4
(Headquarters Serowe)	246	18	—	—	228	—	—	24	6	—	—	4	92	102	1
(Headquarters Kanye)	253	16	—	1	236	—	—	48	8	—	—	4	115	55	—
(Headquarters Mochudi)	118	4	—	1	114	—	—	71	1	2	—	5	35	—	2
(Headquarters Molepolole)	870	18	5	—	847	—	—	214	16	3	—	7	431	140	2
(Headquarters Maun)	41	4	—	2	35	—	—	9	—	—	1	—	25	—	34
(Headquarters Serowe)	259	27	—	1	231	—	—	60	—	—	—	—	170	—	—
(Headquarters Kanye)	4462	150	25	7	4286	—	—	1121	84	11	7	56	2234	540	11
(Headquarters Mochudi)	TOTAL														222

M: Male Adults — F: Female Adults — J: Juveniles (under 18)

• Francistown: 2 male adults were sentenced to both imprisonment and whipping.
• Ghanzi: 3 male adults were sentenced to both imprisonment and whipping.
• Ngamiland: 1 male juvenile was sentenced to both imprisonment and whipping.

APPENDIX VII

**RETURN OF DISEASES, INJURIES AND CAUSES OF DEATH FOR THE
YEAR 1956**

DISEASES	Remaining in Hos- pital at end of 1955	Yearly Total		Total Cases Treat- ed	Remaining in Hos- pital at end of 1956	Male	Female
		Admissions	Deaths				
1955-6							
1. Tuberculosis of respiratory system	77	381	27	458	96	556	542
2. Tuberculosis of meninges and central nervous system	2	7	2	9	—	4	7
3. Tuberculosis of intestines, peritoneum and mesenteric glands	4	28	2	32	4	42	41
4. Tuberculosis of bones and joints	11	63	—	74	15	48	46
5. Tuberculosis, all other forms	4	76	1	80	6	146	201
6. Congenital syphilis	—	12	2	12	—	605	880
7. Early syphilis	—	20	—	20	—	784	984
8. Tabes dorsalis	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
9. General paralysis of insane	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
10. All other syphilis	1	28	1	29	2	1578	2745
11. Gonococcal infections	1	55	—	56	3	2860	3536
12. Typhoid fever	—	4	2	4	—	1	2
13. Paratyphoid fever and other Salmonella infections	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
14. Cholera	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15. Brucellosis (undulant fever)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
16. (a) Bacillary dysentery	2	23	—	25	1	441	397
(b) Amoebiasis	2	31	1	33	—	27	25
(c) Other unspecified forms of dysentery	—	15	—	15	—	155	185
17. Scarlet fever	—	—	—	—	—	194	185
18. Streptococcal sore throat	—	42	—	42	—	308	440
19. Erysipelas	—	2	1	2	—	1	1
20. Septicaemia and pyaemia	—	5	1	5	—	2	1
21. Diphtheria	1	29	7	30	—	13	16

This form is adapted in accordance with the "Manual of the International Statistical Classification of Diseases, Injuries and Causes of Death, World Health Organization, Geneva, 1948.

22. Whooping cough	2	38	1	40	2	755	877
23. Meningococcal infections ..	—	14	3	14	—	17	10
24. Plague	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
25. Leprosy	1	3	—	4	1	15	18
26. Tetanus	—	8	3	8	—	2	1
27. Anthrax	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
28. Acute poliomyelitis	—	8	—	8	7	2	5
29. Acute infectious encephali- tis	—	1	—	1	—	—	—
30. Late effects of acute polio- myelitis and acute infec- tious encephalitis	—	2	—	2	—	—	2
31. Smallpox	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
32. Measles	6	73	2	79	3	383	473
33. Yellow fever	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
34. Infectious hepatitis	—	25	2	25	—	24	18
35. Rabies	—	1	1	1	—	1	—
36. (a) Louse-borne epidemic typhus	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(b) Flea-borne epidemic typhus (murine)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(c) Tick-borne epidemic typhus	—	—	—	—	—	3	4
(d) Mite-borne typhus	—	2	—	2	—	2	3
(e) Other and unspecified typhus	—	2	—	2	—	18	7
37. (a) Vivax malaria (benign tertian)	—	30	1	30	—	169	134
(b) Malariae malaria (quartan)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(c) Falciparum malaria (malignant tertian) ..	2	154	2	156	3	677	627
(c) Blackwater fever	—	1	1	1	—	1	—
(e) Other and unspecified forms of malaria	—	23	—	23	—	60	86
38. (a) Schistosomiasis vesical (S. Laematobium)	—	23	—	23	1	127	79
(b) Schistosomiasis intes- tinal (S. mansoni)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(c) Schistosomiasis pulmo- nary (S. japonicum)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(d) Other and unspecified schistosomiasis	—	1	—	1	—	—	—
39. Hydatid disease	—	1	—	1	1	—	—
40. (a) Onchocerciasis	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(b) Loiasis	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(c) Filariasis (bancrofti) ..	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(d) Other filariasis	—	1	—	1	—	1	—
41. Ankylostomiasis	—	1	—	1	—	1	—
42. Tapeworm infestation and other cestode infesta- tions	—	25	—	25	—	165	219
(b) Ascariasis	—	2	—	2	—	163	178
(c) Guinea worm (dracun- culosis)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(d) Other diseases due to helminths	—	1	—	1	—	35	35
43. (a) Lymphogranuloma ve- nereum	—	—	—	—	—	2	—
(b) Granuloma inguinale, venereal	—	—	—	—	—	1	—

43. (c) Other and unspecified venereal diseases	—	2	1	2	—	4	—
(d) Foodpoisoning infection and intoxication	—	1	—	1	—	7	14
(e) Relapsing fever	—	15	—	15	4	7	7
(f) Leptospirosis icterohaemorrhagica (Weil's disease)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(g) Yaws	—	4	—	4	—	11	12
(h) Chickenpox	1	11	—	12	1	114	125
(i) Dengue	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(j) Trachoma	—	10	—	10	—	38	72
(k) Sandfly fever	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(l) Leishmaniasis	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(m) a Trypanosomiasis gambiensis	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
b Trypanosomiasis rhodesiensis	2	10	—	12	2	1	—
c Other and unspecified Trypanosomiasis	—	—	—	—	—	11	7
(n) Dermatophytosis	—	1	—	1	—	106	132
(o) Scabies	—	13	—	13	—	1228	1494
(p) All other diseases classified as infective and parasitic	—	6	—	6	—	68	83
44. Malignant neoplasm of buccal cavity and pharynx ..	—	1	1	1	—	1	1
45. Malignant neoplasm of oesophagus	—	4	1	4	—	1	1
46. Malignant neoplasm of stomach	—	1	—	1	—	1	—
47. Malignant neoplasm of intestine, except rectum ..	—	3	2	3	—	2	4
48. Malignant neoplasm of rectum	—	4	—	4	—	1	—
49. Malignant neoplasm of larynx	—	1	—	1	—	2	—
50. Malignant neoplasm of trachea, and of bronchus and lung not specified as secondary	—	1	—	1	—	1	—
51. Malignant neoplasm of breast	—	3	—	3	—	—	6
52. Malignant neoplasm of cervix uteri	1	8	1	9	—	—	13
53. Malignant neoplasm of other and unspecified parts of the uterus	1	1	—	2	—	—	6
54. Malignant neoplasm of prostate	—	1	—	1	—	1	—
55. Malignant neoplasm of skin	3	13	—	16	1	5	7
56. Malignant neoplasm of bone and connective tissue ..	—	9	1	9	—	3	2
57. Malignant neoplasm of all other and unspecified sites	1	11	1	12	—	14	24
58. Leukaemia and aleukaemia	—	—	—	—	—	—	2
59. Lymphosarcoma and other neoplasms of lymphatic and haematopoietic system	—	—	—	—	—	18	31

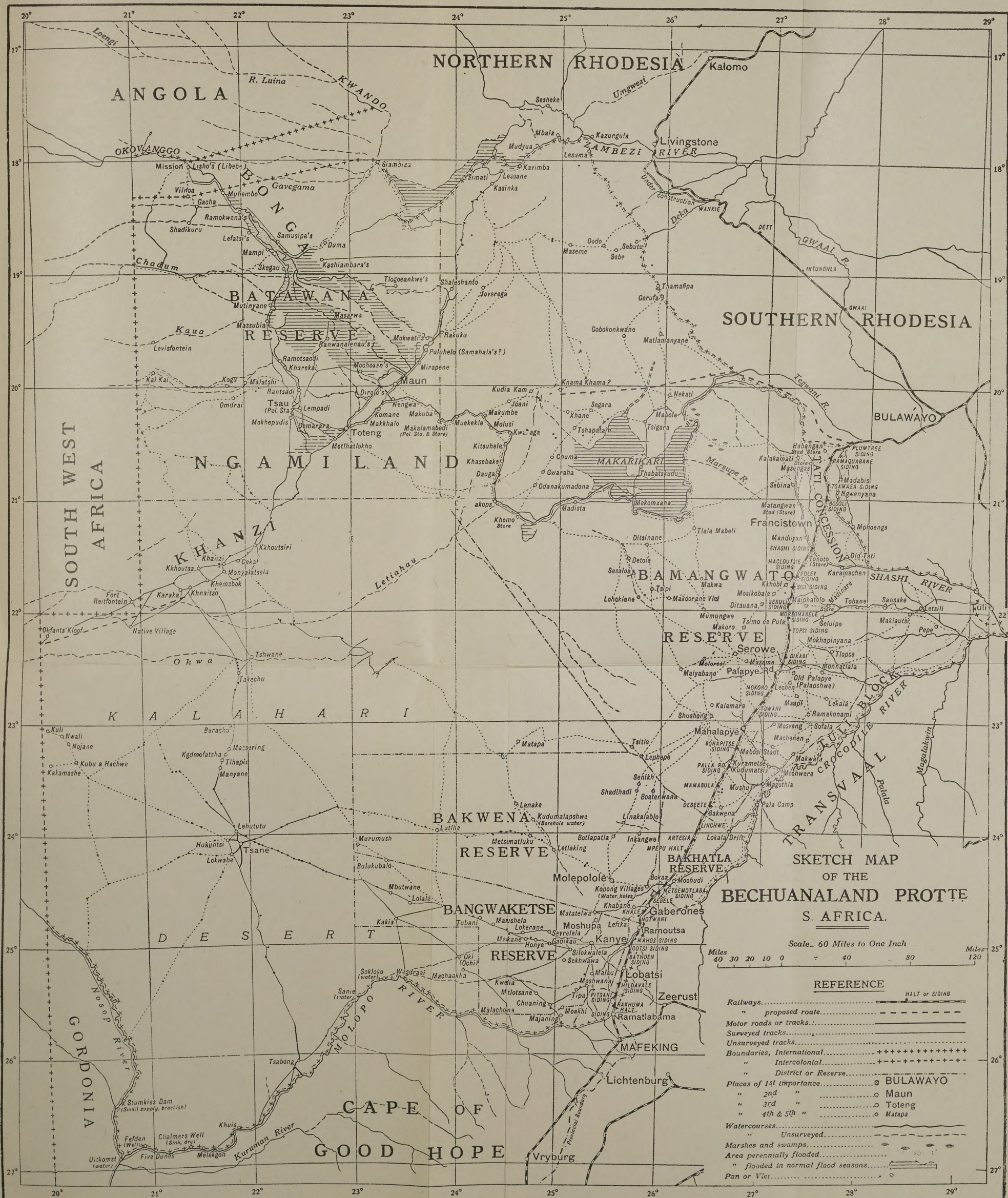
60. Benign neoplasms and neoplasms of unspecified nature	4	102	—	106	4	97	253
61. Nontoxic goitre	—	2	—	2	—	9	64
62. Thyrotoxicosis with or without goitre	—	1	—	1	—	—	4
63. Diabetes mellitus	—	3	—	3	—	—	4
64. (a) Beriberi	—	7	—	7	—	23	45
(b) Pellagra	—	7	—	7	—	77	98
(c) Scurvy	—	3	—	3	—	131	184
(d) Other deficiency states	3	68	9	71	1	769	1277
65. (a) Pernicious and other hyperchromic anaemias	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
(b) Iron deficiency anaemias (hypochromic)	3	12	—	15	—	221	732
(c) Other specified and unspecified anaemias	—	7	1	7	—	221	160
66. (a) Asthma	—	100	—	100	—	468	857
(b) All other allergic disorder, endocrine, metabolic and blood diseases	3	67	3	70	—	657	871
67. Psychoses	24	13	—	37	25	36	37
68. Psychoneuroses and disorders of personality ..	1	18	1	19	2	70	148
69. Mental deficiency	—	3	—	3	—	19	16
70. Vascular lesions affecting central nervous system ..	—	23	2	23	—	21	23
71. Nonmeningococcal meningitis	—	8	5	8	—	8	2
72. Multiple sclerosis	—	2	—	2	—	—	2
73. Epilepsy	1	18	2	19	2	90	71
74. Inflammatory diseases of eye	3	92	—	95	5	1612	2081
75. Cataract	1	22	—	23	1	44	54
76. Glaucoma	—	14	—	14	—	18	16
77. (a) Otitis externa	—	7	—	7	—	315	356
(b) Otitis media and mastoiditis	2	28	—	30	1	410	479
(c) Other inflammatory diseases of ear	—	2	—	2	—	285	435
78. (a) All other diseases and conditions of eye ..	1	25	—	26	—	372	398
(b) All other diseases of the nervous system and sense organs	1	18	—	19	2	160	201
79. Rheumatic fever	—	33	1	33	3	49	70
80. Chronic rheumatic heart disease	2	41	7	43	1	38	67
81. Arteriosclerotic and degenerative heart disease ..	—	20	4	20	1	22	26
82. Other disease of heart	—	34	2	34	3	95	190
83. Hypertension with heart disease	2	14	1	16	1	97	82
84. Hypertension without mention of heart	—	18	—	18	—	58	111
85. Diseases of arteries	1	6	1	7	—	17	14
86. Other diseases of circulatory system	1	41	5	42	4	46	63
87. Acute upper respiratory infections	3	157	1	160	—	2776	3620
88. Influenza	—	134	1	134	2	849	1084
89. Lobar pneumonia	5	331	6	266	9	266	279

90. Bronchopneumonia	6	401	29	407	5	482	465
91. Primary atypical, other and unspecified pneumonia . .	—	99	—	99	1	218	380
92. Acute bronchitis	—	74	3	74	2	2147	2548
93. Bronchitis, chronic and unqualified	—	119	3	119	3	1904	2264
94. Hypertrophy of tonsils and adenoids	3	132	—	135	4	673	939
95. Empyema and abscess of lung	1	9	2	10	1	28	52
96. Pleurisy	1	43	—	44	—	90	92
97. (a) Pneumoconiosis	—	—	—	—	—	15	14
(b) All other respiratory diseases	—	11	—	11	—	376	424
98. (a) Dental caries	—	4	—	4	—	1288	1600
(b) All other diseases of teeth and supporting structures	—	19	—	19	2	408	396
99. Ulcer of stomach	—	5	—	5	—	7	6
100. Ulcer of duodenum	—	5	—	5	—	10	10
101. Gastritis and duodenitis . .	—	24	—	24	1	648	764
102. Appendicitis	2	107	1	109	5	46	95
103. Intestinal obstruction and hernia	—	34	5	34	3	107	105
104. (a) Gastro-enteritis and colitis between 4 weeks and 2 years	3	149	17	152	2	1610	1845
(b) Gastro-enteritis and colitis, ages 2 years and over	—	137	7	137	1	1094	1286
(c) Chronic enteritis and ulcerative colitis	—	3	1	3	—	69	69
105. Cirrhosis of liver	—	15	3	15	—	17	9
106. Cholelithiasis and cholecystitis	—	9	—	9	—	26	56
107. Other diseases of digestive system	2	98	—	100	2	3491	7840
108. Acute nephritis	—	17	3	17	1	68	72
109. Chronic, other and unspecified nephritis	1	6	1	7	—	193	63
110. Infections of kidney	1	12	—	13	—	122	256
111. Calculi of urinary system . .	—	2	—	2	—	7	11
112. Hyperplasia of prostate . .	1	6	—	7	1	24	—
113. Diseases of breast	—	32	—	32	1	1	220
114. (a) Hydrocele	—	19	—	19	—	45	—
(b) Disorders of menstruation	—	49	—	49	2	—	4875
(c) All other disease of the genoto-urinary system . .	11	436	3	447	5	956	5778
115. Sepsis of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium	1	57	—	58	4	—	62
116. Toxaemias of pregnancy and the puerperium	—	20	—	20	—	—	11
117. Haemorrhage of pregnancy and childbirth	1	56	2	57	1	—	20
118. Abortion without mention of sepsis or toxæmia	6	169	—	175	1	—	283
119. Abortion with sepsis	1	10	—	11	1	—	43
120. (a) Other complications of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium . .	7	310	10	317	5	—	1790

120. (b) Delivery without complications	60	2429	—	2489	57	—	642
121. Infections of skin and subcutaneous tissue	3	240	4	243	2	1812	2671
122. Arthritis and spondylitis . .	2	55	—	57	2	423	587
123. Muscular rheumatism and rheumatism, unspecified	1	70	—	71	—	2924	3954
124. Osteomyelitis and periostitis	3	52	1	55	2	67	78
125. Ankylosis and acquired musculo-skeletal deformities	1	8	—	9	—	8	11
126. (a) Chronic Ulcer of Skin (including tropical ulcer)	—	13	—	13	—	57	89
(b) All other diseases of skin	—	60	—	60	1	1485	2005
(c) All other diseases of musculo-skeletal system	1	33	—	34	2	452	798
127. Spina bifida and meningocele	—	2	—	2	—	2	—
128. Congenital malformations of circulatory system	—	7	—	7	—	8	6
129. All other congenital malformations	—	24	—	24	1	25	25
130. Birth injuries	—	8	1	8	—	—	1
131. Postnatal asphyxia and atelectasis	—	93	13	93	—	2	3
132. (a) Diarrhoea of newborn (under 4 weeks)	—	9	6	9	—	67	41
(b) Ophthalmia neonatorum	—	11	—	11	—	3	1
(c) Other infections of newborn	—	2	—	2	—	16	13
133. Haemolytic disease of newborn	—	2	—	2	—	1	2
134. All other defined diseases of early infancy	—	57	1	57	3	218	191
135. Ill-defined diseases peculiar to early infancy and immaturity, unqualified . .	3	149	5	152	5	112	130
136. Senility without mention of psychosis	—	16	1	16	—	37	47
137. (a) Pyrexia of unknown origin	—	39	1	39	3	71	66
(b) Observation, without need for further medical care	26	2286	—	2312	27	1547	5131
(c) All other ill-defined causes of morbidity . .	1	119	—	120	—	1950	2552
Accidents, Poisoning, and Violence (External Cause)							
A.E.							
138. Motor vehicle accidents . .	—	26	1	26	—	36	22
139. Other transport accidents . .	2	44	—	46	8	92	34
140. Accidental poisoning	—	22	1	22	1	19	9
141. Accidental falls	10	152	3	162	5	378	286
142. Accident caused by machinery	2	42	—	44	4	80	9
143. Accident caused by fire and explosion of combustible material	7	75	6	82	5	425	491

144. Accident caused by hot substance, corrosive liquid, steam and radiation ..	2	89	6	91	—	131	171
145. Accident caused by firearm	—	5	—	5	—	3	—
146. Accidental drowning and submersion	—	—	—	—	—	1	—
147. Foreign body entering eye and adnexa	1	31	—	32	—	104	54
Foreign body entering other orifice	—	9	1	9	—	102	78
Accidents caused by bites and stings of venomous animals and insects ..	4	54	—	58	3	120	115
Other accidents caused by animals	5	73	1	78	10	157	71
All other accidental causes	12	331	—	343	5	1510	721
148. Suicide and self inflicted injury	—	3	—	3	—	3	1
149. Homicide and injury purposely inflicted by other persons (not in war) ..	3	96	—	99	2	183	138
150. Injury resulting from operations of war	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
TOTAL	383	12430	266	12813	422	53261	85596

PRINTED BY DIAMOND FIELDS ADVERTISER, KIMBERLEY



PRINTED BY DIAMOND FIELDS ADVERTISER, KIMBERLEY

ANNUAL REPORTS

BASUTOLAND	GOLD COAST	N. RHODESIA
BECHUANALAND	HONG KONG	NYASALAND
PROTECTORATE	JAMAICA	SARAWAK
BRITISH GUIANA	KENYA	SIERRA LEONE
BR. HONDURAS	FED. OF MALAYA	SINGAPORE
BRUNEI	MAURITIUS	SWAZILAND
CYPRUS	NIGERIA	TRINIDAD
FIJI	NORTH BORNEO	UGANDA

BIENNIAL REPORTS

ADEN	GIBRALTAR	ST. VINCENT
*BAHAMAS	*GILBERT AND	*SEYCHELLES
*BARBADOS	ELLICE IS.	SOLOMAN IS.
BERMUDA	*GRENADA	*SOMALILAND
CAYMAN IS.	LEEWARD IS.	*TONGA
DOMINICA	NEW HEBRIDES	TURKS AND
*FALKLAND IS.	*ST. HELENA	CAICOS IS.
*GAMBIA	ST. LUCIA	ZANZIBAR

*These territories will produce a Report for 1955-56 and the remainder for 1956-57.

A standing order for selected Reports or for the complete series will be accepted by any one of the Bookshops of H.M. Stationery Office at these addresses:

†York House, Kingsway, London W.C.2;

†423 Oxford Street, London, W.1;

13a Castle Street, Edinburgh 2;

39 King Street, Manchester 2;

2 Edmund Street, Birmingham 3;

109 St. Mary Street, Cardiff;

Tower Lane, Bristol 1;

80 Chichester Street, Belfast.

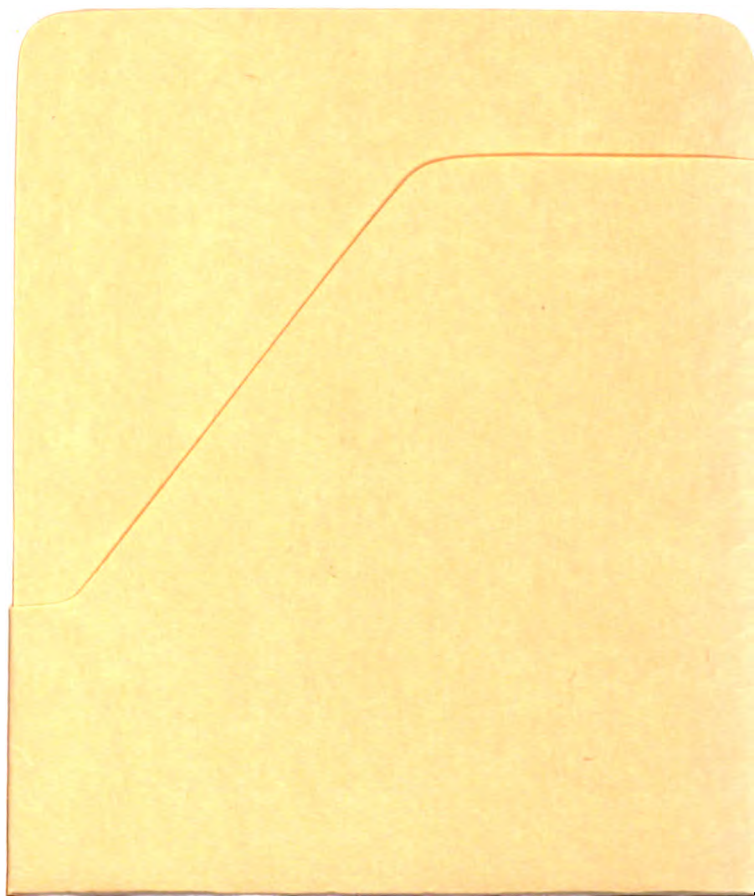
A deposit of £6 (six pounds) should accompany standing orders for the complete series.

†Post Orders for these Bookshops should be sent to P.O. Box 569, London, S.E.1.

Orders may also be placed through any bookseller



S.O. Code No. 58-1-5-56



UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA
wils 1953-56
316.81 G798
Great Britain. Office of Commonwealth Re
Annual report on the Bechuanaland Protec



3 1951 002 275 474 7



Minnesota Library Access Center

9ZAR03D11S15TIE